













GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES  
UPON THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE  
COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH.

CONTAINING

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| I. A Vocabulary of the French Words most frequently used.   | III. All the Rules of the Syntax placed in numerical Order, with instructive and moral Exercises appended to each; together with a recapitulatory Exercise, at the end of every Chapter, upon all the Rules contained in it. |
| II. An Explanation of the different Parts of Speech, followed by the Declension of Nouns and the Conjugation of all Verbs, regular and irregular; with Exercises upon them. |  |
- IV. Free Exercises upon the nine Parts of Speech.

BY  
NICOLAS HAMEL

AUTHOR OF A FRENCH GRAMMAR

*And several other School-Books.*

NEW EDITION  
CAREFULLY REVISED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.

LONDON  
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, LONGMANS, & ROBERTS  
AND  
WHITTAKER & CO.



## EDITOR'S PREFACE.

---

As one of the two most troublesome tasks connected with the writing of French Exercises is that of ascertaining the Gender of the Nouns, I have deemed it expedient, in order to save the pupil the inconvenience of having constantly to refer on that point to his Dictionary or Grammar, to insert in this work as well as in the Grammar my New Tables of the Rules on Genders (page 12. and following).

Several treatises on the subject have from time to time made their appearance before the public, and I have made it my duty to become acquainted with most of them; but, I am sorry to say, the result of my investigation has only served to show me that for want of simplicity of method, and proper arrangement of matter, much labour is often expended in vain.

I have therefore taken great care that my rules should not be found wanting in these respects.

Their comparative simplicity, the regular order and symmetrical arrangement under which they are exhibited to the eye, cannot fail to assist the Student's memory in retaining them, whilst each example being preceded by *le* or *la* (none being allowed to begin with a vowel or *h* mute), stands as a rule of itself *l'écho*, as an example, has nothing to remind the learner that those nouns ending in *o* are masculine, but *le numéro* will have this effect. Again, the facility of

referring from the rules to the exceptions, by means of the numbers affixed to each, or of referring from the exceptions to the rules, will no doubt save much time.

With regard to their accuracy and completeness, not only do these rules extend to all sorts of French nouns, but the lists of exceptions are all complete, and have been put to the test of almost daily examination for many years; so that I can assert from my own experience that the Student may place an implicit dependence upon them.

I trust therefore that this additional help to the Student, together with the various other improvements and corrections which I have effected in the present edition, will be duly appreciated, and somewhat contribute to render this work still more useful to the public.

A. THIBAUDIN.

*Queen Elizabeth's School,  
Ipswich, 22nd Nov. 1852.*

## AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

SOME apology is deemed necessary by writers of every description on introducing their labours to the public, more especially when they have been preceded by others in the same line. If the following sheets exhibit but little that is useful, or nothing that is new, the author is convinced that apology would be improper, and that he has laboured in vain; but should they be found to smooth the path of instruction, he trusts that the same criticism, which awarded the meed of praise to his Grammar, will discriminate the improvements he has made in the means of acquiring the French language.

It is not necessary for him to point out the utility of a Book of Exercises; the value of this mode of teaching is already appreciated: he is less inclined to decry his predecessors, for defect is natural to man; yet, if the arrangement be obvious; the style concise and clear; the examples apt; the exercises moral, and appropriate; and the manner of working them easily comprehended; he may presume upon the merit of a few improvements, while he has availed himself of all that was useful in others.

The different Parts of Speech are explained with order and precision; Syntax is fully treated of in a series of short and accurate Rules, with examples, and each is succeeded by a select Exercise, entertaining and instructive. No rule is anticipated; the principles depend successively on each other; and a knowledge of the preceding usually leads to the understanding of those which follow. Care has been taken to render the Exercises *progressively* difficult. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. interspersed through the Syntax underneath many English words, indicate the rule in which they are explained; this kind of reference, which becomes more frequent as we proceed, will in a short time make

the student perfect, master of his principles, and enable a man of understanding to learn French with very little assistance from his master.

To complete his task, and to render these Exercises worthy of the public approbation, the author has spared no trouble. He has found them essentially useful in the course of his own practice; and he trusts, from the solititude with which he has constantly amended whatever appeared to require it, that they will greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil, and diminish the trouble of the master.

## EXPLANATION

• OF THE

## MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS

USED IN THIS WORK.

(m. f. s. pl.)..... Denote that the substantive is masculine, feminine, singular, or plural.

(ir.)..... Marks a verb irregular, of which every tense and person will be found in the pages following 29.

(A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H,) indicate what tenses of the verbs are to be used, whenever it becomes difficult to know them, for which see the note, page 23.

(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c.)..... These figures placed in the French line in the third part have reference to the rules, which show how to express in French the English words under which they are placed.

The same figures placed at the top of some English words indicate the order of the French words.

..... This star has two significations : when it is placed after an English word, it has reference to some observations made at the bottom of the page ; but when it is put under an English word, it denotes that it is not to be expressed in French.

..... This hand marks the rules which are the most essential, and which are to be learnt by heart.

..... Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the first or the last syllables.

..... When several words are included between two parentheses, they must be translated by the words only which are placed under them.

N. B. In the following exercises the substantives are put in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive mood, to exercise the learner in putting them in their proper gender, number tenses, and persons, according as the case may require.

• The English words in Italics, in the exercises of the Syntax are those to which the rule prefixed to each of them must be applied.





## TABLE

OF

## THE CONTENTS.

## PART I.

	Page
Alphabet - - - - -	1
Vocabulary - - - - -	1
Sounds of Animals - - - - -	8

## PART II. — PARTS OF SPEECH.

Of the Article - - - - -	9
Definitive Article - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Indefinite Article - - - - -	10
Partitive Article - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Declension of Proper Names and Pronouns - - -	11
Of the Gender of Nouns - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
New Set of Rules on Genders - - - - -	[5]
Exercise upon the Gender of Nouns - - - - -	13
Of Adjectives - - - - -	14
Exercise upon the Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives	15
Exercise upon the Plural of Nouns - - - - -	16
Of Personal Pronouns - - - - -	17
Of Possessive Pronouns - - - - -	19
Of Demonstrative Pronouns - - - - -	20
Of Relative Pronouns - - - - -	21
Of Interrogative Pronouns - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Of Indeterminate Pronouns - - - - -	22
The Auxiliary Verb AVOIR - - - - -	23
The Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE - - - - -	24
The First Regular Conjugation - - - - -	25
The Second Regular Conjugation - - - - -	27
Conjugation of Irregular Verbs - - - - -	29
Irregular Verbs in ER - - - - -	30
Irregular Verbs in IR - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Verbs in MIE, TIE, VIE - - - - -	33
Verbs in FAIE, VIT - - - - -	35

	Page
Verbs in <i>ENIR</i>	36
Verbs in <i>OIR</i>	37
Verbs in <i>VOIR</i>	40
Verbs in <i>FAIRE</i>	42
Verbs in <i>AÎTRE</i> and <i>OÎTRE</i>	45
Verbs in <i>OIRE, URE, IRE</i>	47
Verbs in <i>CRIRE</i>	50
Verbs in <i>UIRE</i>	51
Verbs in <i>CRE, DRE, PRE, TRE, VRE</i>	52
Verbs in <i>INDRE</i>	56
Verbs in <i>NDRE</i> and <i>RDRE</i>	57
Exercise upon the Compound Tenses	58
Several Manners of using Verbs	60
Of the Reflected Verbs	64
Exercise upon the Simple Tenses of the Reflected Verbs	65
Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of the Reflected Verbs	67
Exercise upon the Formation of Adverbs	68
Place of Adverbs	69

### PART III. — OF SYNTAX.

#### CHAP. I. — SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

Rule 1. Indefinite Article <i>un, une</i>	70
R. 2. Definite Article <i>le, la, les</i>	71
R. 3. <i>A, an</i> , rendered by <i>le, la, les</i>	72
☞ 4. <i>Le, la, les</i> , not <i>the</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 5. <i>Le, la, les</i> , before Names of Kingdoms	73
R. 6. <i>Le, la, les</i> , before Adjectives	74
☞ 7. Partitive Article <i>du, de la, des</i> , some	75
☞ 8. <i>De</i> instead of <i>du, de la, des</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 9. Where the Article is required	76
☞ 10. The Articles must be repeated	<i>ib.</i>
R. 11. <i>The</i> , not, <i>le, la, les</i>	77
R. 12. <i>A</i> , not, <i>un</i> or <i>une</i>	78
R. 13. <i>A</i> , not, <i>un</i> or <i>une</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 14. No Article before Proper Names	79
R. 15. No Article before Pronouns	80
☞ 16. <i>De</i> after <i>sorte, genre, &amp;c.</i>	<i>ib.</i>
☞ 17. Transposition of Words	81
☞ 18. Preposition <i>de</i>	82
☞ 19. <i>De</i> after an Adjective	83
R. 20. The Article in several other Cases	84
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Articles	85

#### CHAP. II. — SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

☞ 21. Two Substantives in the same Case	87
☞ 22. Genitive Case	<i>ib.</i>

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Page
R. 23. Nouns in the Dative - - -	88
R. 24. Nouns Collective General - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 25. Nouns Collective Partitive - - -	89

## CHAP. III. — OF ADJECTIVES.

26. Adjectives are declinable	90
R. 27. The Adjective agrees with the last Noun -	91
R. 28. Adjectives relating to several Nouns -	92
R. 29. Place of Adjectives - - -	<i>ib.</i>
29. Adjective put before the Substantive -	93
30. Adjectives put after the Substantive -	94
31. Adjectives which govern the Genitive -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 32. Adjectives which govern the Dative -	95
R. 33. Adjectives followed by <i>à</i> and <i>envers</i> -	96
34. How to express the Adjectives of Dimension -	<i>ib.</i>
35. Adjectives of Dimension take <i>à</i> or -	97

## OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

37. <i>As</i> expressed by <i>que</i> - - -	98
R. 38. <i>By</i> expressed by <i>de</i> - - -	99
39. <i>Than</i> expressed by <i>que</i> , or by <i>de</i> - -	<i>ib.</i>
40. <i>Than</i> expressed by <i>que de</i> , <i>que ne</i> -	100
41. <i>The more</i> expressed by <i>plus</i> - - -	101
42. Precedency of <i>plus</i> and <i>moins</i> - -	<i>ib.</i>
43. The Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive - - -	102
R. 44. The Superlative takes an Article -	103
Recapitulatory Exercise upon Adjectives, Comparatives, and Superlatives - - -	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAP. IV. — OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

R. 45. Personal Pronouns in the Nominative -	105
R. 46. Personal Pronouns in the Genitive -	106
47. Personal Pronouns in the Dative - -	107
48. Personal Pronouns in the Accusative -	108
R. 49. Pronouns after a Preposition - -	109

### *Pronouns used with Reference to Animals and Things.*

R. 50. The Pronouns <i>it</i> , <i>they</i> , <i>them</i> - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 51. <i>En</i> for <i>it</i> or <i>them</i> - - -	110
R. 52. <i>Lui</i> , <i>leur</i> , <i>y</i> , <i>it</i> , <i>them</i> - - -	111
R. 53. Pronouns <i>it</i> and <i>them</i> left out - -	112
R. 54. Supplying Pronouns <i>le</i> , <i>la</i> , <i>les</i> - -	<i>ib.</i>

### *Placing of Personal Pronouns.*

R. 55. Place of <i>je</i> , <i>tu</i> , <i>il</i> , &c.' - - -	114
R. 56. Pronouns after the Verb - - -	<i>ib.</i>

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Page
57. Pronouns before the Verb . . . . .	115.
58. Order of the Pronouns before the Verb . . . . .	116.
59. Pronouns <i>je, tu, il, &amp;c.</i> repeated . . . . .	117
60. Pronouns <i>me, te, se, &amp;c.</i> repeated . . . . .	118
61. Pronouns <i>himself, herself, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	119
62. <i>Itself</i> expressed by <i>lui</i> , or <i>soi</i> . . . . .	120
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Personal Pronouns . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAP. V. — OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

63. Possessive Pronouns are repeated . . . . .	122
64. Possessive Pronouns used in French and not in English . . . . .	123
65. <i>Monsieur, &amp;c.</i> before <i>votre</i> or <i>vos</i> . . . . .	124
66. Possessive Pronouns rendered by the Personal <i>il, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
67. Possessive Pronouns left out . . . . .	125
68. <i>Its</i> , expressed by <i>son</i> or <i>en</i> . . . . .	126
69. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>le mien, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	127
70. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>mes, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	128
71. <i>Mine</i> , expressed by <i>à moi</i> . . . . .	129
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAP. VI. — OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

72. <i>Ce, celle, ces</i> . . . . .	131
73. <i>Ceci, cela</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
74. <i>Ce qui, ce que</i> . . . . .	132
75. <i>Celui-ci, celui-là, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	133
76. <i>Celui, celle, that</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
77. <i>Celui qui, he who</i> . . . . .	134
78. <i>Celui</i> and <i>qui</i> must be joined . . . . .	135
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAP. VII.—OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

79. <i>Qui, que, who, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	137
80. <i>Dont, de qui, du quel</i> . . . . .	138
81. <i>Qui, or lequel, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	139
82. <i>Où, or lequel, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
83. Relative Pronouns never suppressed . . . . .	140
84. Place of Relative Pronouns . . . . .	141
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Relative Pronouns . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>

## CHAP. VIII.—OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

85. <i>Qui? who?</i> . . . . .	143
86. <i>Lequel? laquelle? which?</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
87. <i>Quel? what?</i> . . . . .	144
88. <i>Que? what?</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
89. <i>Quot? what?</i> . . . . .	145

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	CHAP. IX. — OF INTERROGATIONS.	Page
R.	90. <i>Où, d'où, comment ?</i> &c. - - -	145
Q	91. Pronouns after the Verb - - -	146
Q	92. Substantive before the Verb - - -	ib.
R.	93. <i>Est-cela ? n'est-ce pas là ?</i> - - -	148
R.	94. <i>Est-ce que ? n'est-ce pas ?</i> - - -	ib.
	Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Interrogative Pro- nouns, &c. - - -	149

	CHAP. X. — OF THE DIFFERENT USES OF <i>que</i> .	
R.	95. <i>Que</i> , admirative - - -	152
R.	96. <i>Que</i> , conditional - - -	ib.
R.	97. <i>Que</i> , conjunctive - - -	153

	CHAP. XI. — OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.	
Q	98. Use of the Particle <i>on</i> - - -	154
R.	99. <i>I'on</i> for <i>on</i> - - -	155
R.	100. <i>Le même</i> , the same - - -	ib.
R.	101. <i>Plusieurs</i> , many, several - - -	156
R.	102. <i>Un autre</i> , another - - -	ib.
R.	103. <i>Chacun</i> , every one - - -	157
R.	104. <i>Quelqu'un</i> , somebody - - -	158
R.	105. <i>Le tout</i> , the whole - - -	159
R.	106. <i>Tout le</i> , all, the whole - - -	ib.
Q	107. <i>Tout ce qui</i> , a that - - -	160
Q	108. <i>Tout</i> , quite - - -	161
R.	109. <i>Quelque</i> , indeclinable - - -	ib.
R.	110. <i>Quelque</i> , declinable - - -	162
R.	111. <i>Quel que</i> , in two words - - -	163
R.	112. <i>Quelque chose que</i> , whatever - - -	ib.
R.	113. <i>Quiconque</i> , whoever - - -	164
Q	114. <i>L'un l'autre</i> , one another - - -	165
R.	115. <i>L'un, et l'autre</i> , both - - -	ib.
Q	116. <i>Ne</i> and <i>personne</i> , nobody - - -	166
Q	117. <i>Pas un, aucun</i> , and <i>ne</i> , none - - -	ib.
Q	118. <i>Ne rien</i> , nothing - - -	167
	Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Indeterminate Pro- nouns - - -	ib.

	CHAP. XII. — SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.	
Q	119. <i>Ni, ni ne</i> , neither - - -	169
Q	120. <i>Ne jamais</i> , never - - -	170
Q	121. <i>Ne aucun, non</i> , no - - -	ib.
Q	122. <i>Ne pas, or non</i> , not - - -	171
R.	123. <i>Ne</i> without <i>pas</i> , not - - -	172
R.	124. Distinction between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> - - -	173
Q	125. <i>Que ne</i> , than - - -	ib.

	Page
126. <i>Ne</i> after <i>craindre</i> , &c. - - - -	173
127. <i>Ne</i> after <i>à moins que</i> - - - -	174
128. <i>Ne que</i> , but, only - - - -	ib.
Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Negations - -	175

### CHAP. XIII.—OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

129. Verbs which govern the Genitive - -	176
R. 130. Verbs which govern the Dative - -	177
R. 131. Verbs which govern the Accusative - -	178
R. 132. Accusative and Genitive - - - -	ib.
R. 133. Accusative and Dative - - - -	179
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Government of Verbs -	180

### CHAP. XIV. — OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *Of the Present.*

R. 134. Infinitive without Preposition - -	181
135. Infinitive with <i>de</i> - - - -	182
136. Infinitive with <i>à</i> - - - -	185
R. 137. Infinitive with <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> - - - -	187
138. Infinitive with <i>pour</i> - - - -	188
139. Infinitive instead of the Gerund - - -	ib.
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Infinitive, with <i>de</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>pour</i> , <i>sans</i> , &c. - - - -	189

#### *Of the Gerund.*

140. Gerund indeclinable - - - -	190
R. 141. Indicative used instead of the Gerund - -	191
142. <i>By</i> expressed by <i>en</i> - - - -	192

#### *Of the Participle.*

143. Cases in which the Participle is declinable -	193
144. Cases in which the Participle is indeclinable -	194
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Gerunds and Participle - - - -	195

#### *Of the Concord of Verbs.*

R. 145. The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case -	196
R. 146. The Verb with Nominatives of different Persons - - - -	197
R. 147. The Verb after the Relative Pronoun <i>qui</i> -	198

### CHAP. XV. — OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

R. 148. Use of the Present Tense - - - -	ib.
149. ——— Imperfect of the Indicative - - -	199
150. ——— Preterite of the Indicative - - -	200
R. 151. ——— Future and Conditional - - -	201

	Page
¶ 152. Neither Future nor Conditional after <i>si</i> -	202
R. 153. Compound of the Present - - -	203
R. 154. Other Compound Tenses - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Tenses of the Indicative Mood - - -	204

## CHAP. XVI. — OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

¶ 155. Superlatives and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive - - -	205
R. 156. Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood after the Conjunction <i>que</i> - -	207
R. 157. Impersonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive - - -	<i>ib.</i>
R. 158. Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive -	208
<i>Verbs and Conjunctions which govern sometimes the Indicative and sometimes the Subjunctive.</i>	
¶ 159. Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one sense, and the Indicative in another - -	209
R. 160. Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive - - -	210
R. 161. Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive - - -	<i>ib.</i>
¶ 162. Which Tense must be used - - -	211
R. 163. Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive -	212
R. 164. Cases in which the Preterite of the Subjunctive is used - - -	<i>ib.</i>
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the Use of the Subjunctive - - -	213

CHAP. XVII. — OF THE AUXILIARIES *would, could, should, &c.*

R. 165. <i>Would, could, should</i> , expressed by <i>vouloir, pouvoir, devoir</i> - - -	214
R. 166. <i>Would, could, &amp;c.</i> not followed by a Compound Tense - - -	215
R. 167. <i>Would, could, &amp;c.</i> followed by a Compound Tense - - -	<i>ib.</i>

CHAP. XVIII. — OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut, il y a, &c.*

¶ 168. <i>Il faut</i> . it must - - -	216
R. 169. <i>Il y a</i> , there is - - -	217
¶ 170. Distinction between <i>c'est</i> and <i>il est</i> - -	218
¶ 171. <i>C'est, ce sont</i> , it is - - -	219



	Page
CHAP. XIX. — SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.	
172. Adverb after the Verb	220
173. Place of Adverbs	ib.

CHAP. XX. — OF PREPOSITIONS.	
174. Place of Prepositions	221
175. How to express <i>from</i> followed by <i>to</i>	ib.
176. <i>Depuis, jusqu'à</i> , from, to	222
177. Prepositions repeated	223

CHAP. XXI. — OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS	
178. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>avoir</i>	224
179. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>faire</i>	225
180. <i>To be</i> , expressed by <i>se porter</i>	226
181. <i>Il en est de</i> , it is with	ib.
182. <i>To have</i> , expressed by <i>être</i>	227
183. <i>Avoir mal à</i>	ib.
Recapitulatory Exercise upon the French Idioms	228

#### FREE EXERCISES.

1. The Two Bees	230
2. Respect paid by the Lacedæmonians to Old Age	231
3. Postus and Arria	232
4. Valentine and Unnion	234
5. Muly Moluc	236
6. Dionysius the Tyrant	237
7. Damon and Pythias	238
8. Destruction of the Alexandrian Library	239
9. The Advantages of a good Education	240
10. Dignity of Human Nature	243
11. Detached Sentences	244

# GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

## UPON

# THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

## COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH,

### PART I.

#### FRENCH ALPHABET.

A\*, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L,  
 ah, bay, say, day, a, eff, gey, ash, e, jee, kah, el,  
 M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y,  
 emm, • enn, o, pay, qu, 'air, s, tay, u, vay, ex, egrec,  
 Z.  
 æu.

#### A VOCABULARY.

1. <i>Days.</i>			
DIMANCHE,	<i>Sunday.</i>	août,	<i>august.</i>
lundi,	<i>monday.</i>	septembre,	<i>september.</i>
mardi,	<i>tuesday.</i>	octobre,	<i>october.</i>
merc:edi,	<i>wednesday.</i>	novembre,	<i>november.</i>
jeudi,	<i>thursday.</i>	décembre,	<i>december.</i>
vendredi,	<i>friday.</i>		
samedi,	<i>saturday.</i>		
•			
2. <i>Months.</i>		3. <i>Seasons.</i>	
janvier,	<i>january.</i>	le printemps,	<i>spring.</i>
février,	<i>february.</i>	l'été,	<i>summer.</i>
mars,	<i>march.</i>	l'automne,	<i>autumn.</i>
avril,	<i>april.</i>	l'hiver,	<i>winter.</i>
mai,	<i>may.</i>		
juin,	<i>june.</i>		
juillet,	<i>july.</i>		
		4. <i>Elements.</i>	
		le feu,	<i>fire.</i>
		l'eau,	<i>water.</i>
		la terre,	<i>earth.</i>
		l'air,	<i>air.</i>

---

\* These letters are named in French pretty nearly as those under them are sounded in English.

5. *Eating.*

le déjeuner,	<i>breakfast.</i>
le dîner,	<i>dinner.</i>
le souper,	<i>supper.</i>
du pain,	<i>bread.</i>
de la croûte,	<i>crust.</i>
de la mie,	<i>crum.</i>
du beurre,	<i>butter.</i>
de la viande,	<i>meat.</i>
du rôti,	<i>roast meat.</i>
du bouilli,	<i>boiled meat.</i>
du bœuf,	<i>beef.</i>
du veau,	<i>veal.</i>
du mouton,	<i>mutton.</i>
du porc,	<i>pork.</i>
du lard,	<i>bacon.</i>
du gras,	<i>fat.</i>
du maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
une volaille,	<i>a fowl.</i>
du gibier,	<i>game.</i>
un lièvre,	<i>a hare.</i>
des perdrix,	<i>partridges.</i>
un faisan,	<i>a pheasant.</i>
une bécasse,	<i>a woodcock.</i>
une bécassine,	<i>a snipe.</i>
des pigeons,	<i>pigeons.</i>
un chapon,	<i>a capon.</i>
un dindon,	<i>a turkey.</i>
une oie,	<i>a goose.</i>
un canard,	<i>a duck.</i>
du poisson,	<i>some fish.</i>
une morue,	<i>a cod.</i>
du saumon,	<i>salmon.</i>
un turbot,	<i>a turbot.</i>
un merlan,	<i>a whiting.</i>
une sole,	<i>a sole.</i>
un maquereau,	<i>a mackerel.</i>
un hareng,	<i>a herring.</i>
une anguille,	<i>an eel.</i>
un brochet,	<i>a pike.</i>
une plie,	<i>a plaice.</i>
une truite,	<i>a trout.</i>
une tortue,	<i>a turtle.</i>
un chou,	<i>a cabbage.</i>
des navets,	<i>turnips.</i>
des carottes,	<i>carrots.</i>
des pommes	
de terre,	<i>potatoes.</i>
des artichauts,	<i>artichokes.</i>
des asperges,	<i>asparagus.</i>

des pois,	<i>pease.</i>
de la chicorée,	<i>succory.</i>
des laitues,	<i>lettuce.</i>
du céleri,	<i>celery.</i>
une pomme,	<i>an apple.</i>
une poire,	<i>a pear.</i>
une orange,	<i>an orange.</i>
un citron,	<i>a lemon.</i>
un abricot,	<i>an apricot.</i>
une pêche,	<i>a peach.</i>
une olive,	<i>an olive.</i>
une cerise,	<i>a cherry.</i>
des groseilles,	<i>gooseberries.</i>
des fraises,	<i>strawberries.</i>
des framboises,	<i>raspberries.</i>
des noix,	<i>walnuts.</i>
du raisin,	<i>grapes.</i>
des châtaignes,	<i>chestnuts, &amp;c.</i>

6. *Drinking.*

du vin,	<i>wine.</i>
de la bière,	<i>beer.</i>
du cidre,	<i>cyder.</i>
de l'eau,	<i>water.</i>
du thé,	<i>tea.</i>
du café,	<i>coffee.</i>
du chocolat,	<i>chocolate.</i>
du cacao,	<i>cocoa, &amp;c.</i>

7. *Things used at table.*

la nappe,	<i>the table-cloth.</i>
un plat,	<i>a dish.</i>
une assiette,	<i>a plate.</i>
un couteau,	<i>a knife.</i>
une cuillère,	<i>a spoon.</i>
une fourchette,	<i>a fork.</i>
du sel,	<i>salt.</i>
une salière,	<i>a salt-cellar.</i>
de la moutarde,	<i>mustard.</i>
du poivre,	<i>pepper.</i>
du vinaigre,	<i>vinegar.</i>
un verre,	<i>a glass, &amp;c.</i>

8. *Furniture of a room*

un lit,	<i>a bed.</i>
un matelas,	<i>a mattress.</i>
des draps,	<i>sheets.</i>
une couverture,	<i>a blanket.</i>
des rideaux,	<i>curtains.</i>
une chaise,	<i>a chair.</i>

un tapis,	<i>a carpet.</i>	la hanche,	<i>the hip.</i>
un miroir,	<i>a looking-glass.</i>	la cuisse,	<i>the thigh.</i>
une caisse,	<i>a chest.</i>	le genou,	<i>the knee.</i>
une armoire,	<i>chest of drawers.</i>	la jambe,	<i>the leg.</i>
un tableau,	<i>a picture.</i>	le pied,	<i>the foot.</i>
une chandelle,	<i>a candle.</i>	le talon,	<i>the heel, &amp;c.</i>
un chandelier,	<i>a candlestick.</i>		
des mouchettes,	<i>snuffers.</i>		
un livre,	<i>a book.</i>		
du papier,	<i>paper.</i>		
de l'encre,	<i>ink.</i>		
des plumes,	<i>pens, &amp;c.</i>		

9. *Of the Body.*

le corps,	<i>the body.</i>
le sang,	<i>the blood.</i>
la peau,	<i>the skin.</i>
les os,	<i>the bones.</i>
la moëlle,	<i>the marrow.</i>
les veines,	<i>the veins.</i>
le pouls,	<i>the pulse.</i>
les nerfs,	<i>the nerves.</i>
la tête,	<i>the head.</i>
le front,	<i>the forehead.</i>
le visage,	<i>the face.</i>
les yeux,	<i>the eyes.</i>
les paupières,	<i>the eyelids.</i>
les sourcils,	<i>the eyebrows.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>
les oreilles,	<i>the ears.</i>
la bouche,	<i>the mouth.</i>
les lèvres,	<i>the lips.</i>
la langue,	<i>the tongue.</i>
les dents,	<i>the teeth.</i>
les joues,	<i>the cheeks.</i>
le menton,	<i>the chin.</i>
la gorge,	<i>the throat.</i>
le cou,	<i>the neck.</i>
l'épaule,	<i>the shoulder.</i>
le bras,	<i>the arm.</i>
la main,	<i>the hand.</i>
le pouce,	<i>the thumb.</i>
les doigts,	<i>the fingers.</i>
le sein,	<i>the bosom.</i>
le cœur,	<i>the heart.</i>
le dos,	<i>the back.</i>
le ventre,	<i>the belly.</i>
la ceinture,	<i>the waist.</i>
le côté,	<i>the side.</i>

10. *Dress.*

un chapeau,	<i>a hat.</i>
un habit,	<i>a coat.</i>
un gilet,	<i>a waistcoat.</i>
un pantalon,	<i>trousers.</i>
des bas,	<i>stockings.</i>
des souliers,	<i>shoes.</i>
des bottes,	<i>boots.</i>
un ruban,	<i>a ribbon.</i>
un collier,	<i>a necklace.</i>
des pendans	
d'oreille,	<i>ear-rings.</i>
une robe,	<i>a gown.</i>
une jupe,	<i>a petticoat.</i>
un tablier,	<i>an apron.</i>
une montre,	<i>a watch.</i>
des gants,	<i>gloves.</i>
un manchon,	<i>a muff.</i>
un parapluie,	<i>an umbrella.</i>
un mouchoir,	<i>a handkerchief,</i>
	<i>&amp;c.</i>

11. *Relations.*

père,	<i>father.</i>
mère,	<i>mother.</i>
grand-père,	<i>grandfather.</i>
grand-mère,	<i>grand-mother.</i>
beau-père,	<i>father-in-law.</i>
belle-mère,	<i>mother-in-law.</i>
frère,	<i>brother.</i>
sœur,	<i>sister.</i>
beau-frère,	<i>brother-in-law.</i>
belle-sœur,	<i>sister-in-law.</i>
fil,	<i>son.</i>
fil,	<i>daughter.</i>
petit-fils,	<i>grandson.</i>
petite-fille,	<i>grand-daughter.</i>
parrain,	<i>godfather.</i>
marraine,	<i>godmother.</i>
fil,	<i>godson.</i>
fil,	<i>god-daughter.</i>

époux,	<i>husband.</i>	tailleur,	<i>tailor.</i>
épouse,	<i>wife.</i>	tanneur,	<i>tanner.</i>
oncle,	<i>uncle.</i>	tapissier,	<i>upholsterer.</i>
tante,	<i>aunt.</i>	teinturier,	<i>dyer.</i>
neveu,	<i>nephew.</i>	tisserand,	<i>weaver.</i>
nièce,	<i>niece.</i>	tonnelier,	<i>cooper.</i>
cousin,	<i>cousin (male).</i>	tourneur,	<i>turner.</i>
cousinè,	<i>cousin (female).</i>	vitrier,	<i>glazier, &amp;c.</i>

12. *Professions.*

barbier,	<i>barber.</i>
bijoutier,	<i>toyman.</i>
boucher,	<i>butcher.</i>
boulangier,	<i>baker.</i>
brasseur,	<i>brewer.</i>
carrossier,	<i>coach-maker.</i>
chapelier,	<i>hatter.</i>
charpentier,	<i>carpenter.</i>
cocher,	<i>coachman.</i>
cordier,	<i>rope-maker.</i>
cordonnier,	<i>shoemaker.</i>
coutelier,	<i>cutler.</i>
cuisinier,	<i>cook.</i>
doreur,	<i>gilder.</i>
drapier,	<i>draper.</i>
épicier,	<i>grocer.</i>
faïencier,	<i>chinaman.</i>
fondeur,	<i>founder.</i>
forgeron,	<i>blacksmith.</i>
horloger,	<i>clock-maker.</i>
jardinier,	<i>gardener.</i>
imprimeur,	<i>printer.</i>
jouailler,	<i>jeweller.</i>
laboureur,	<i>ploughman.</i>
libraire,	<i>bookseller.</i>
maçon,	<i>bricklayer.</i>
meunier,	<i>miller.</i>
orfèvre,	<i>goldsmith.</i>
pâtissier,	<i>pastrycook.</i>
peintre,	<i>painter.</i>
perruquier,	<i>hairdresser.</i>
relieur,	<i>bookbinder.</i>
savetier,	<i>cobbler.</i>
sellier,	<i>saddler.</i>
serrurier,	<i>locksmith.</i>

13. *A Series of Substantives.*

Amertume, f.	<i>bitterness.</i>
ardoise, f.	<i>slate.</i>
astre, m.	<i>star.</i>
attrait,	<i>charm.</i>
avarice, f.	<i>covetousness.</i>
Bagatelle,	<i>trifle.</i>
bataille,	<i>battle.</i>
bateau,	<i>boat.</i>
bâton,	<i>stick.</i>
bonté,	<i>goodness.</i>
bordure,	<i>frame.</i>
boue, f.	<i>mud.</i>
brouillard,	<i>fog.</i>
bruit,	<i>noise.</i>
butin,	<i>booty.</i>
Cabinet,	<i>closet.</i>
cachet,	<i>seal.</i>
campagne, f.	<i>country.</i>
caractère, m.	<i>temper.</i>
carrosse,	<i>coach.</i>
chair,	<i>flesh.</i>
chaleur,	<i>heat.</i>
chambre, f.	<i>room.</i>
champ,	<i>field.</i>
chanson,	<i>song.</i>
charbon,	<i>coal.</i>
charrue, f.	<i>plough.</i>
chasse,	<i>hunting.</i>
chaux,	<i>lime.</i>
chemin,	<i>road.</i>
chute, f.	<i>fall.</i>
ciel,	<i>heaven.</i>
cire, f.	<i>wax.</i>
ciseaux,	<i>scissors.</i>
cloche, f.	<i>bell.</i>

\* *The substantives not followed by m. or f. are masculine, or feminine, according as the final is masculine or feminine; for which see the table of terminations, p. 12.*

clop,	<i>nail.</i>	fleur,	<i>flower.</i>
colère, <i>f.</i>	<i>anger.</i>	fleuve, <i>m.</i>	<i>river</i>
conduite, <i>f.</i>	<i>conduct.</i>	foi, <i>f.</i>	<i>faith.</i>
confiance,	<i>confidence.</i>	foin,	<i>hay.</i>
corps,	<i>body.</i>	force, <i>f.</i>	<i>strength.</i>
cuir,	<i>leather.</i>	foule, <i>f.</i>	<i>crowd.</i>
cuivre, <i>m.</i>	<i>copper.</i>	fromage,	<i>cheese.</i>
Danse,	<i>dance.</i>	fumée,	<i>smoke.</i>
débat,	<i>debate.</i>	fureur,	<i>fury.</i>
débauche, <i>f.</i>	<i>debauchery.</i>	Gâteau,	<i>cake.</i>
défiance,	<i>distrust.</i>	gazon,	<i>turf.</i>
délicatesse,	<i>delicacy.</i>	gelée,	<i>frost.</i>
déluge, <i>m.</i>	<i>flood.</i>	glace,	<i>ice.</i>
dépense,	<i>expense.</i>	gloire,	<i>glory.</i>
désir,	<i>desire.</i>	goût,	<i>taste.</i>
deuil,	<i>mourning.</i>	graine, <i>f.</i>	<i>seed.</i>
devoir,	<i>duty.</i>	grandeur,	<i>greatness.</i>
disette,	<i>scarcity.</i>	guerre,	<i>war.</i>
domaine, <i>m.</i>	<i>dominion.</i>	Haine, <i>f.</i>	<i>hatred.</i>
douceur,	<i>sweetness.</i>	haleine, <i>f.</i>	<i>breath.</i>
durée,	<i>duration.</i>	hardiesse,	<i>boldness.</i>
Eau,	<i>water.</i>	herbe, <i>f.</i>	<i>grass.</i>
école, <i>f.</i>	<i>school.</i>	homme,	<i>man.</i>
écriture,	<i>writing.</i>	honneur,	<i>honour.</i>
église, <i>f.</i>	<i>church.</i>	honte, <i>f.</i>	<i>shame.</i>
énigme, <i>f.</i>	<i>riddle.</i>	horloge, <i>f.</i>	<i>clock.</i>
éperon,	<i>spur.</i>	huitre, <i>f.</i>	<i>oyster.</i>
épine, <i>f.</i>	<i>thorn.</i>	Idée,	<i>idea.</i>
épingle, <i>f.</i>	<i>pin.</i>	impôt,	<i>tax.</i>
épreuve, <i>f.</i>	<i>trial.</i>	injure,	<i>abuse.</i>
espérance,	<i>hope.</i>	jour,	<i>day.</i>
espion,	<i>spy.</i>	juge, <i>m.</i>	<i>judge.</i>
esquisse,	<i>sketch.</i>	justesse,	<i>exactness.</i>
état,	<i>state.</i>	Lait,	<i>milk.</i>
étoile, <i>f.</i>	<i>star.</i>	langue, <i>f.</i>	<i>tongue.</i>
étude, <i>f.</i>	<i>study.</i>	lecture,	<i>reading.</i>
éventail,	<i>fan.</i>	lettre, <i>f.</i>	<i>letter.</i>
Faiblesse,	<i>weakness.</i>	lien,	<i>tie.</i>
famille,	<i>family.</i>	lieu,	<i>place.</i>
faute, <i>f.</i>	<i>fault.</i>	lune, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon.</i>
femme,	<i>woman.</i>	lunettes,	<i>spectacles.</i>
fenêtre, <i>f.</i>	<i>window.</i>	luxure, <i>m.</i>	<i>luxury.</i>
fer,	<i>iron.</i>	Maître,	<i>master.</i>
fermé,	<i>firmness.</i>	maladie,	<i>illness.</i>
feu,	<i>fire.</i>	malheur,	<i>misfortune.</i>
feuille,	<i>leaf.</i>	matin,	<i>morning.</i>
félicité,	<i>happiness.</i>	mer,	<i>sea.</i>
fièvre, <i>f.</i>	<i>fever.</i>	mois,	<i>month.</i>
flèche, <i>f.</i>	<i>arrow.</i>	moisson,	<i>harvest.</i>

moulin,	mill.	reproche, m.	reproach.
mouvement,	motion.	rêve, m.	dream.
mur,	wall.	ronce, f.	bramble.
Naissance,	birth.	roue, f.	wheel.
neige, f.	snow.	Sac,	bag.
nid,	nest.	savon,	soap.
nuit,	night.	serment,	oath.
Oiseau,	bird.	serrure,	lock.
ombre, f.	shadow.	soir,	evening.
ongle, m.	nail.	sort,	fate.
ordre, m.	order.	soumission,	submission.
orge, m.	barley.	souris, f.	mouse.
orgueil,	pride.	suffrage,	vote.
orient,	east.	Tableau,	picture.
occident,	west.	tache, f.	blot.
Paille,	straw.	tapis,	carpet.
paix,	peace.	témérité,	rashness.
palais,	palace.	titre, m.	title.
panier,	basket.	travail,	work.
paysage,	landscape.	tristesse,	sadness.
peigne, m.	comb.	trou,	hole.
perfidie,	treachery.	troupe, f.	troop.
perte, f.	loss.	troupeau,	flock.
peste, f.	plague.	Vaisseau,	ship.
peuple, m.	people.	vent,	wind.
pierre,	stone.	ver,	worm.
pillage,	plunder.	verge, f.	yard.
pitié, f.	pity.	vérité,	truth.
plomb,	lead.	vertu, f.	virtue.
pluie,	rain.	vie,	life.
plume, f.	pen.	univers,	universe.
poche, f.	pocket.	voisin,	neighbour.
poids,	weight.	voix,	voice.
pont,	bridge.	voyage,	travel.
porte,	door.	usage,	custom.
poudre, f.	powder.		
pré,	meadow.	14. A series of Adjectives	
présage,	omen.	Absolu	absolute.
présent,	gift.	adroit,	dexterous.
prix,	price.	affable,	courteous.
progrès,	progress.	affreux,	frightful.
pudeur,	modesty.	aimable,	amiable.
Raison,	reason.	aise,	glad.
rasoir,	razor.	aisé,	easy.
ravage,	havoc.	âmer,	bitter.
rayon,	ray.	ancien,	old.
règle, f.	rule.	assidu,	assiduous.
repas,	meal.	aveugle,	blind.
réponse, f.	answer.	avide,	greedy.

Barbare,	<i>barbarous.</i>	flatteur,	<i>flattering.</i>
bas,	<i>low.</i>	fort,	<i>strong.</i>
beau,	<i>fine.</i>	frais,	<i>fresh.</i>
blanc,	<i>white.</i>	Généreux,	<i>generous</i>
bleu,	<i>blue.</i>	glorieux,	<i>glorious.</i>
bon,	<i>good.</i>	gracieux,	<i>graceful.</i>
bossu,	<i>crooked.</i>	grand,	<i>great.</i>
Capricieux,	<i>whimsical.</i>	gras,	<i>fat.</i>
chaud,	<i>hot.</i>	gros,	<i>big.</i>
chauve,	<i>bald.</i>	Habile,	<i>able.</i>
cher,	<i>dear.</i>	hardi,	<i>bold.</i>
clair,	<i>clear.</i>	haut,	<i>high.</i>
conforme,	<i>conformable.</i>	heureux,	<i>happy.</i>
contagieux,	<i>contagious.</i>	honnête,	<i>honest.</i>
content,	<i>satisfied.</i>	honteux,	<i>shameful.</i>
convenable,	<i>fit.</i>	humain,	<i>humane.</i>
coupable,	<i>guilty.</i>	humide,	<i>damp.</i>
cru,	<i>raw.</i>	Illustre,	<i>illustrious.</i>
curieux,	<i>curious.</i>	imparfait,	<i>imperfect.</i>
Dangereux,	<i>dangerous.</i>	impie,	<i>impious.</i>
dédaigneux,	<i>disdainful.</i>	importun,	<i>troublesome.</i>
dégoûtant,	<i>loathsome.</i>	incommode,	<i>inconvenient.</i>
dernier,	<i>last.</i>	incrédule,	<i>incredulous.</i>
désagréable,	<i>unpleasant.</i>	indigne,	<i>unworthy.</i>
difficile,	<i>difficult.</i>	industrieux,	<i>industrious.</i>
digne,	<i>worthy.</i>	infâme,	<i>infamous.</i>
douloureux,	<i>painful.</i>	infidèle,	<i>unfaithful.</i>
douteux,	<i>doubtful.</i>	ingrat,	<i>ungrateful.</i>
doux,	<i>sweet.</i>	injurieux,	<i>injurious.</i>
droit,	<i>straight.</i>	injuste,	<i>unjust.</i>
Eclatant,	<i>bright.</i>	inquiet,	<i>restless.</i>
effroyable,	<i>frightful.</i>	insensé,	<i>mad.</i>
ennuyeux,	<i>tedious.</i>	inutile,	<i>useless.</i>
enroué,	<i>hoarse.</i>	ivre,	<i>drunk.</i>
entêté,	<i>stubborn.</i>	Jaloux,	<i>jealous.</i>
envieux,	<i>envious.</i>	jaune,	<i>yellow.</i>
épais,	<i>thick.</i>	jeune,	<i>young.</i>
étonnant,	<i>wonderful.</i>	joli,	<i>pretty.</i>
étrange,	<i>strange.</i>	juste,	<i>just.</i>
étranger,	<i>foreign.</i>	Lâche,	<i>coward.</i>
étroit,	<i>narrow.</i>	large,	<i>broad.</i>
exquis,	<i>exquisite.</i>	las,	<i>tired.</i>
Fâcheux,	<i>sad.</i>	lent,	<i>slow.</i>
facile,	<i>easy.</i>	libre,	<i>free.</i>
faible,	<i>weak.</i>	Maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
fameux,	<i>famous.</i>	malade,	<i>sick.</i>
faux,	<i>false.</i>	malaisé,	<i>hard.</i>
féroce,	<i>fierce.</i>	malheureux,	<i>unhappy.</i>
fétille,	<i>fruitful.</i>	mauvais,	<i>bad.</i>



méchant,	<i>wicked.</i>	profond,	<i>deep.</i>
inépisable,	<i>contemptible.</i>	prodigue,	<i>prodigal.</i>
muet,	<i>dumb.</i>	Réel,	<i>real.</i>
Nécessaire,	<i>necessary.</i>	régulier,	<i>regular.</i>
net,	<i>clean.</i>	respectueux,	<i>respectful.</i>
neuf,	<i>new.</i>	rêveur,	<i>thoughtful.</i>
noir,	<i>black.</i>	rusé,	<i> cunning.</i>
nombreux,	<i>numerous.</i>	Sage,	<i>wise.</i>
nouveau,	<i>new.</i>	saint,	<i>holy.</i>
nuisible,	<i>hurtful.</i>	sauvage,	<i>wild.</i>
Obéissant,	<i>obedient.</i>	sec,	<i>dry.</i>
odieux,	<i>odious.</i>	sérieux,	<i>serious.</i>
orageux,	<i>stormy.</i>	superflu,	<i>superfluous.</i>
ordinaire,	<i>usual.</i>	Tel,	<i>such.</i>
Parfait,	<i>perfect.</i>	téméraire,	<i>rash.</i>
perfide,	<i>perfidious.</i>	timide,	<i>fearful.</i>
perilleux,	<i>perilous.</i>	tranquille,	<i>quiet.</i>
pesant,	<i>heavy.</i>	triste,	<i>sad.</i>
petit,	<i>little.</i>	Vert,	<i>green.</i>
pieux,	<i>pious.</i>	véritable,	<i>true.</i>
plaintif,	<i>mournful.</i>	vieux,	<i>old.</i>
plein,	<i>full.</i>	voluptueux,	<i>voluptuous.</i>
poli,	<i>civil.</i>	vrai,	<i>true.</i>

## SOUNDS OF BIRDS AND BEASTS.

Les oiseaux chantent,	<i>birds sing.</i>
le perroquet parle,	<i>the parrot talks.</i>
le merle siffle,	<i>the blackbird whistles.</i>
la colombe gémit,	<i>the dove cooes.</i>
le pigeon roucoule,	<i>the pigeon cooes.</i>
le coq chante,	<i>the cock crows.</i>
la poule glousse,	<i>the hen clucks.</i>
le corbeau croasse,	<i>the raven croaks.</i>
le cheval hennit,	<i>the horse neighs.</i>
l'âne brait,	<i>the ass brays.</i>
le bœuf meugle,	<i>the ox lows.</i>
le taureau mugit,	<i>the bull roars.</i>
le lion rugit,	<i>the lion roars.</i>
le serpent siffle,	<i>the snake hisses.</i>
la brebis bêle,	<i>the sheep bleats.</i>
le chat miaule et file,	<i>the cat mews and purrs.</i>
le chien aboie,	<i>the dog barks.</i>
le lièvre crie,	<i>the hare squeaks.</i>
le loup hurle,	<i>the wolf howls.</i>
le cerf brame,	<i>the stag brays.</i>
la grenouille coasse,	<i>the frog croaks.</i>

## PART II.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French nine parts of Speech, which are called, 1. *Article*. 2. *Substantive*. 3. *Adjective*. 4. *Pronoun*. 5. *Verb*, these five declinable. 6. *Adverb*. 7. *Preposition*. 8. *Conjunction*. 9. *Interjection*, indeclinable.

## OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a word placed before a noun, to determine the extent of its signification.

There are three articles in French: 1. The definite, *le, la, les*, which is used before a noun restricted in its signification to an object specified. 2. The indefinite, *un, or une*, which is used before a noun singular, restricted to an object not specified. 3. The partitive, *du, de la, des*, which is used before a noun to denote a certain number or portion of a thing. They are declined as follows:

1. *Definitive Article*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural for all.</i>	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>		
N. Ac.	le,	la,	l'	les,	the
G.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	of or from the
D.	au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	to the

N. B. The *m* denotes a noun masculine; *f* a noun feminine; *v* a noun which begins with a vowel; *h* a noun which begins with an *h* mute, and *pl* a noun plural. This mark — indicates that the words are alike in both languages, or differ only by their termination.

The father; of the son; to the brother. The mother;  
*père m                      fils m                      frère m                      mère f*  
 to the daughter; to the sister. The child; of the angel; to  
*fille f                      . sœur f                      enfant v                      ange v*  
 the soul. The man; of the history; to the harmony. The  
*âme v                      homme h                      histoire h                      harmonie h*  
 gardens; of the houses; to the friends. The master of  
*jardins pl                      maisons pl                      amis pl                      maître m*  
 the house. The rays of the sun. The lustre of the stars.  
*maison f                      rayons pl                      soleil m                      éclat v                      étoiles pl*  
 The return from the city. The breakfast; of the dinner; to  
*retour m                      ville f                      déjeuner m                      dîner m*

\* *L'* is used before a noun of both genders which begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute, as *Poiseau, l'homme, &c.*

the supper. The malice of the boys. The prattling of  
*souper m — f garçons pl babil m*  
 the girls. The laziness of the scholars. The friendship;  
*filles pl paresse f écoliers pl amitié v*  
 the humanity; to the hatred. The shame; of the horror; to  
*—te h haine f honte f horreur h*  
 the honesty. Give the apple to the boy, and the orange to  
*honnêteté h donnez pomme f garçon m et — v*  
 the girl. The admiral spoke to the king, to the queen,  
*fille f amiral v parla roi m reine f*  
 and to the princes. The moon is the cause of the eclipses  
*— pl lune f est — f — pl*  
 of the sun.  
*soleil m.*

## 2. Indefinite Article.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>No plural.</i>	
N. Acc.	un,	une		<i>a</i>
G.	d'un,	d'une,		<i>of or from a</i>
D.	à un,	à une,		<i>to a</i>

A dictionary and a grammar. A bird and a cage. A  
*dictionnaire m grammaire f oiseau m — f*  
 house; of a garden; to a tree; from a pear. A watch; of a  
*maison f jardin m arbre m poire f montre f*  
 diamond; to a ring. A garden; of a house; to an orchard;  
*diamant m bague f jardin m maison f verger m*  
 from a park. A river; of a boat; from a ship.  
*parc m rivière f bateau m vaisseau m.*

## 3. Partitive Article.

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural for all.</i>	
	<i>m</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>		
N. Acc.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	<i>some</i>
N. Acc.	de *,	de,	d'	de,	<i>some</i>

Give me some bread and some butter; some meat and  
*donnez-moi pain m et beurre m viande f*  
 some mustard; some eggs and some oranges. Give me  
*moutarde f œufs pl — pl donnez-moi*  
 some good bread, and some good butter; some good meat,  
*bon bon bonne*  
 and some good mustard; some good eggs and some good  
*bonne bons bonnes*  
 apples. I have some ink and some pens.  
*pommes f j'ai encre v. plumes pl.*

\* When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the word *de* is always used instead of *du*, *de la*, or *des*: as *du pain*, *de bon pain*; *de la viande*, *de bonne viande*, &c.

## 4. Declension of proper Names and Pronouns.

	Singular.			Plural for all.		
N. Acc.	take neither prepositions nor article before them.					
	m.	f.	v. h.			
G.	de,	de,	d'	de,	prep.	of or from
D.	à,	à	à,	à,	prep.	to
The poems of Homer.			The genius of Milton.			The
poèmes pl. Homère h.			génie m			—
courage of Achilles.			Speak to Henry.			I receive a letter
—m			—v parlez			— je reçois lettre f
from Stephen.			From Paris to London; from Dover to			
Etienne v			Londres			Douvres
Calais; from Vienna to Rome.			The book belongs to			
— Vienne			—			livre m appartient
John or to Peter.						
Jean ou Pierre.						

## OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A substantive is the name of a person or object: as, *un homme*, a man; *une maison*, a house; *une pensée*, a thought.

A substantive is singular or plural. It is singular, when we speak of one person or thing: as, *un livre*, a book; *un cheval*, a horse. It is plural, when we speak of more than one: as, *deux livres*, two books; *trois chevaux*, three horses.

## Of the Gender of French Nouns.

As, in French, every noun, adjective, and participle generally changes its spelling according to the gender of the noun to which it relates, it becomes a matter of great importance to the student that he should be provided with the most ready and effectual means of ascertaining, from memory, this peculiar property of the French noun. It is, therefore, earnestly requested that he should learn by heart the rules of the two following Tables A. and B., and their exceptions, contained in the Tables C. and D. But before committing these rules to memory, each student should acquire from the teacher the exact pronunciation and the meaning of each example. He should also be informed that in French there is no *neuter*: every noun being *either* masculine or feminine; that all the rules are included in Tables A. and B. (A. for those of the masc., B. for those of the fem.); that C. and D. contain all the exceptions, except those to rule 18., which occupy the remaining Tables; that there are three denominations of rules—*NATURAL*, *PARTICULAR*, and *GENERAL*, numbered in the order in which they should be consulted, that is to say, the two natural rules take precedence of every other, each of the particular rules is to be consulted after the two natural rules, but before the two general; thus, *homme* (man) does not come under the 18th nor under the 10<sup>2</sup> rule, but under the 1st rule, and, not being an exception to it, it must be of the masc. gender.

# RULES FOR ASCERTAINING THE

## MASCULINE.

NATURAL RULE	1	Nouns which are masc. in English are also masc. in French, as le père.	EXCEPTIONS. None.
PARTICULAR RULES.	1	—a as le sofa	See Exc. § 31.
	2	—é * „ le thé	Without Exc.
	3	—i „ le cri	See Exc. § 31.
	3	—o „ le numéro	Without Exc.
	5	—u „ le sou	See Exc. § 31.
	4	—isme „ le pléonasme	See Exc. § 41.
	4	—aume „ le baume	See Exc. § 42.
	4	—ène „ le diadème	See Exc. § 47.
	4	—isme „ le prisme	Without Exc.
	4	—ôme „ le dôme	See Exc. § 45.
	5	—age „ le fromage	See Exc. § 51.
	5	—ège „ le collège	See Exc. § 52.
	5	—uge „ le déluge	Without Exc.
	6	—acle „ le spectacle	See Exc. § 61.
	6	—ice „ le supplice	See Exc. § 62.
	7	—aire „ le dictionnaire	See Exc. § 71.
	7	—oire „ le réfectoire	See Exc. § 72.
	8	names of trees } „ le chêne	See Exc. § 8.
	9	words used substantively } „ le rouge	See Obs. § 9.
GENERAL RULE	17.	Those ending in a consonant, as, le soleil.	See Exc. § 17.

\* é accented, not preceded by t.

# GENDER OF FRENCH NOUNS.

## FEMININE.

NATURAL RULE	Nouns which are feminine in English are also feminine in French, as, la mère.			EXCEPTIONS. None.			
PARTICULAR RULES.	10	10 <sup>1</sup>	—lle	as la chandelle	See Exc. § 10 <sup>1</sup> .		
		10 <sup>2</sup>	—mme	„ la pomme	See Exc. § 10 <sup>2</sup> .		
		10 <sup>3</sup>	—nne	„ la canne	See Exc. § 10 <sup>3</sup> .		
		10 <sup>4</sup>	—rre	„ la terre	See Exc. § 10 <sup>4</sup> .		
		10 <sup>5</sup>	—sse	„ la chasse	See Exc. § 10 <sup>5</sup> .		
		10 <sup>6</sup>	—tte	„ la fourchette	See Exc. § 10 <sup>6</sup> .		
	11	11 <sup>1</sup>	{ —ance or —euce }	„ la France	See Exc. § 11 <sup>1</sup> .		
		11 <sup>2</sup>	{ —anse or —ense }	„ la danse	Without Exc.		
	12	Those ending in		12 <sup>1</sup>	—ace	„ la glace	See Exc. § 12 <sup>1</sup> .
		12 <sup>2</sup>	—ade	„ la promenade	See Exc. § 12 <sup>2</sup> .		
		12 <sup>3</sup>	—ude	„ la servitude	See Exc. § 12 <sup>3</sup> .		
	13	13 <sup>1</sup>	—ure	„ la voiture	See Exc. § 13 <sup>1</sup> .		
		13 <sup>2</sup>	—ière	„ la bière	See Exc. § 13 <sup>2</sup> .		
	14	14 <sup>1</sup>	—ie	„ la comédie	See Exc. § 14 <sup>1</sup> .		
		14 <sup>2</sup>	—ée	„ la fumée	See Exc. § 14 <sup>2</sup> .		
	15	15 <sup>1</sup>	—x	„ la croix	See Exc. § 15 <sup>1</sup> .		
		15 <sup>2</sup>	—eur	„ la fleur	See Exc. § 15 <sup>2</sup> .		
		15 <sup>3</sup>	—sion *	„ la penson	See Exc. § 15 <sup>3</sup> .		
		15 <sup>4</sup>	—aison	„ la maison	See Exc. § 15 <sup>4</sup> .		
	16	16 <sup>1</sup>	—té	„ la divinité	See Exc. § 16.		
GENERAL RULE		18	{ Those ending in <i>e</i> unaccented, as, la lune. }		See Exc. § 18.		

\* Whether spelt *sion*, *tien*, *\*sion*, or *cion*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

3 <sup>1</sup> . la polka,	(a danse.)	8. la vigne,	<i>the vine.</i>
3 <sup>2</sup> . la foi,	<i>the faith.</i>	la romè,	<i>the briar.</i>
la fourmi,	<i>the ant.</i>	une yrase,	<i>a green oak.</i>
la loi,	<i>the law.</i>		
la merci,	<i>the mercy.</i>	9. When an adjective, used substantively,	
la paroi,	<i>the partition.</i>	relates to some definite object of the	
		1em. gender, it is put in the 1em., as	
3 <sup>5</sup> . l'eau,	<i>the water.</i>	à droite, viz. à main droite, &c.	
la glu,	<i>the birdlime.</i>		
la peau,	<i>the skin.</i>		
la surpeau,	<i>the epidermis.</i>		
la tribu,	<i>the tribe.</i>		
la vertu,	<i>the virtue.</i>		
4 <sup>1</sup> . la plasmé,	<i>the plasm.</i>	10 <sup>1</sup> . le calville,	<i>the calville.</i>
4 <sup>2</sup> . la paume,	<i>the palm.</i>	le chèvre-feuille,	<i>the honeysuckle.</i>
4 <sup>3</sup> . la crème,	<i>the cream.</i>	le codicille,	<i>the codicil.</i>
4 <sup>5</sup> . la Drôme,	(a river in France).	un intervalle,	<i>an interval.</i>
		un libelle,	<i>a libel.</i>
5 <sup>1</sup> . la cage,	<i>the cage.</i>	un mille,	<i>a mile.</i>
l'image,	<i>the image.</i>	un portefeuille,	<i>a portfolio.</i>
la nage,	<i>the swimming.</i>	un quadrille,	(a danse)
la page,	<i>the page (of a book).</i>	un vaudeville,	(a comedy).
la plage,	<i>the shore.</i>	du vermicelle,	<i>some vermicelli.</i>
la rage,	<i>the rage.</i>	un violoncelle,	<i>a violoncello.</i>
5 <sup>2</sup> . une allége,	<i>a lighter.</i>		
une drège,	<i>a diag.</i>	10 <sup>2</sup> . un dilemme,	<i>a dilemma.</i>
la Norvège,	<i>Norway.</i>	un gramme,	<i>a gramme.</i>
		un kilogramme,	<i>a 100 grammes.</i>
6 <sup>1</sup> . la bernacle,	<i>the barnacle.</i>	un lemme,	<i>a lemma.</i>
la débacle,	{ <i>the clearing of the</i> <i>ice of a river.</i>	un monogramme,	<i>a monogramme.</i>
		un parallélogramme,	{ <i>a parallelogram.</i>
6 <sup>2</sup> . la justice,	<i>the justice.</i>	un programme,	<i>a programma.</i>
l'injustice,	<i>the injustice.</i>	un somme,	<i>a nap.</i>
la milice,	<i>the militia.</i>		
la police,	<i>the police.</i>	10 <sup>3</sup> . un renne,	
7 <sup>1</sup> . une affaire,	<i>an affair.</i>	10 <sup>4</sup> . le babeurre,	<i>the butter milk.</i>
une aire,	<i>an area.</i>	le bécarré,	(a note in music).
une chaire,	<i>a pulpit.</i>	le beurre,	<i>the butter.</i>
une circulaire,	<i>a circular.</i>	le cimenterre,	<i>the scimitar.</i>
une glaire,	<i>a slime.</i>	le feurre,	<i>the straw.</i>
une grammaire,	<i>a grammar.</i>	le leurre,	<i>the lure.</i>
une haire,	<i>a hair cloth.</i>	le herie,	<i>the my.</i>
une paire,	<i>a couple.</i>	le parterre,	<i>the flower garden.</i>
une perpen- } diculaire, }	<i>a perpendicular.</i>	le tintamarre,	<i>the thundering</i>
		le tonnerre,	<i>the thunder. [noise.</i>
		le verre,	<i>the glass.</i>
7 <sup>2</sup> . la gloire,	<i>the glory.</i>	le carrosse,	<i>the coach.</i>
l'histoire,	<i>the history.</i>	le colosse,	<i>the colossus.</i>
la mémoire,	<i>the memory.</i>	le narcisse,	<i>the daffodil.</i>
la nageoire,	<i>the fin.</i>	le Parnasse,	<i>the Parnassus.</i>
la poire,	<i>the pear.</i>	le Permesse,	<i>the Permessus.</i>
la racloire,	<i>the strickle.</i>		
		10 <sup>5</sup> . un amulette,	<i>a charm.</i>
		un squelette,	<i>a skeleton.</i>

11<sup>1</sup>. le silence, *the silence.*

12<sup>1</sup>. un espace, *a space.*

12<sup>2</sup>. un grade, *a degree.*  
un jade, *a jade.*  
un stade, *a stade.*

12<sup>3</sup>. le prélude, *the prelude.*  
le coude, *the elbow.*

13<sup>1</sup>. un augure, *an augury.*  
un colube, *an astronomical*  
le mercure, *the mercury. [circle*  
le murmure, *the murmur.*  
le parjure, *the perjury.*  
le peccure, *the corn cutter.*  
le tellure, *(the metal).*

13<sup>2</sup>. le cimetière, *the church-yard*

14<sup>1</sup>. le foie, *the liver.*  
le gémis, *the gémis.*  
un incendie, *a conflagration.*  
un parapluie, *an umbrella.*  
un pavin, *a nectarine.*

14<sup>2</sup>. un athée, *an atheist.*  
un athénée, *an athenæum.*  
un caducée, *a caduceus.*  
un camée, *a cameo.*  
un colisée, *a coliseum.*  
un coryphée, *a corypheus.*  
un elysée, *an elysium.*  
un empyrée, *a heaven.*  
un hyménée, *a marriage.*  
un lycée, *a lyceum.*  
un mausolée, *a mausoleum.*  
un musée, *a museum.*  
un pygmée, *a pigmy.*  
un spondée, *a spondee.*  
un trochée, *a trochee.*  
un trophée, *a trophy.*

15<sup>1</sup>. le choix, *the choice.*  
le courroux, *the wrath.*  
le cruchix, *the crucifix.*  
le flux, *the flux.*  
le reflux, *the reflux.*  
le larynx, *the larynx.*  
le lynx, *the lynx.*  
le prix, *the price.*  
le sphinx, *the sphinx.*

15<sup>2</sup>. le bonheur, *the happiness.*  
le chœur, *the choir.*  
le cœur, *the heart.*  
le chouleur, *the cauliflower.*

le déshonneur, *the dishonour.*  
l'équateur, *the equator.*  
l'extérieur, *the outside.*  
l'heur, *the luck.*  
l'honneur, *the honour.*  
l'intérieur, *the interior.*  
le labeur, *the tillage.*  
le malheur, *the misfortune.*  
les pleurs, *the tears.*  
un secteur, *a sector.*

15<sup>3</sup>. un bastion, *a bulwark.*  
un bestion, *a wild animal.*  
un scion, *a scion or shoot.*

16. un arrêté, *a decree.*  
le bédicité, *the thanksgiving.*  
un comité, *a committee.*  
un comté, *a county.*  
un côté, *a side.*  
un été, *a summer.*  
un pâté, *a pie.*  
un traité, *a treaty.*  
un velouté, *a velvet lace.*

17. la boisson, *the drink.*  
la brebis, *the sheep.*  
la chair, *the flesh.*  
la chanson, *the song.*  
la clef, *the key.*  
la cloison, *the partition.*  
la cour, *the court.*  
la cuiller, *the spoon.*  
la cuisson, *the baking.*  
la dent, *the tooth.*  
la dot, *the dowry.*  
la façon, *the making.*  
la contrefaçon, *the counterfeit.*  
la faim, *the hunger.*  
la fin, *the end.*  
la fois, *once.*  
la forêt, *the forest.*  
la harte, *the halter.*  
la leçon, *the lesson.*  
la main, *the hand.*  
la maman, *the mother.*  
la mer, *the sea.*  
la moisson, *the harvest.*  
la mort, *the death.*  
la mousson, *the monsoon.*  
la nef, *the nave.*  
la nuit, *the night.*  
la part, *the part.*  
la plupart, *the most part.*  
la prison, *the prison.*  
la rançon, *the ransom.*  
la soif, *the thirst.*  
la souris, *the mouse.*  
la chauve-souris, *the bat.*  
la toison, *the fleece.*  
la tour, *the tower.*  
la vis, *the screw.*



# EXCEPTIONS TO RULE 18.

un abîme, *an abyss.*  
 un able, *a bl. ex.*  
 un acrostiche, *an acrostic.*  
 un acte, *an act.*  
 un administrable, *an admiral.*  
 un adultère, *an adultery.*  
 un adverbe, *an adverb.*  
 un aggrave, *a threecrime.*  
 { un aide, *an assistant.*  
 { une aide, *an assistance.*  
 { un aigle, *an eagle.*  
 { une aigle, *a flag.*  
 un albâtre, *an alabaster.*  
 un alveole, *a hole.*  
 un ambre, *two numbers & lottery*  
 un amble, *a easy pace.*  
 un ambre, *an amber.*  
 un ane, *an ass.*  
 { un ange, *an angel.*  
 { une ange, *a skate.*  
 un angle, *an angle.*  
 un antidote, *an antidote.*  
 l'antimoine, *the antimony.*  
 un ante, *a cave.*  
 un apologue, *a fable.*  
 un apophthegme, *a maxim.*  
 un apostume, *a swelling.*  
 un arbitre, *an umpire.*  
 un arbre, *a tree.*  
 un arbuste, *a shrub.*  
 un asile, *an asylum.*  
 un archange, *an archangel.*  
 un aromate, *a spicy plant.*  
 des arithme, *arithmetic money.*  
 un article, *an article.*  
 un asile, *an asylum.*  
 un asphodèle, *a asphodel.*  
 un astérisme, *an asterisk.*  
 un asthme, *an asthma.*  
 un astragale, *an astragal.*  
 un astre, *a star.*  
 un astrolabe, *an astrolabe.*  
 { un aune, *an elder tree.*  
 { une aune, *a yard.*  
 un automate, *an automaton.*  
 un axe, *an axis.*

## B.

un balustre, *a baluster.*  
 un baptistère, *a baptistery.*  
 { un Barbe, *a Barbary horse.*  
 { une barbe, *a beard.*  
 { un Basque, *a Basque.*  
 { une basque, *a skirt.*  
 le berceau, *the robin's nest.*  
 la berce, *the cowparsnip.*  
 un blâme, *a blame.*  
 un bièvre, *a biver.*  
 un bitume, *a bitumen.*  
 un bouze, *a bice.*

un braille, *a motion.*  
 du bronze, *some cast copper.*  
 un buste, *a busto.*  
 un buste, *a bust.*

## C.

un câble, *a cable.*  
 un cadavre, *a corpse.*  
 un câble, *a cable.*  
 un caïque, *a cauc.*  
 un calibre, *a size.*  
 un caline, *a calm.*  
 un calorique, *a caloric.*  
 un calorifère, *a calorifer.*  
 la camphre, *some camphor.*  
 un cancre, *a crab-fish.*  
 un candelabre, *a chandelier.*  
 un cantique, *a cantick.*  
 le capitole, *the Capitol.*  
 { un capre, *a privateer.*  
 { une capre, *a caper.*  
 un capricorne, *a capricorn.*  
 un caprice, *a conel.*  
 un caractère, *a character.*  
 un casque, *a helmet.*  
 un catalaïque, *a catafalco.*  
 un catalogue, *a catalogue.*  
 un catarrhe, *a catarrh.*  
 un cautère, *a cautery.*  
 un cèlèrnière, *a celerier.*  
 un centime, *a <sup>100</sup> of a franc.*  
 un centie, *a cent.*  
 un cénotaphe, *a cenotaph.*  
 un cercle, *a circle.*  
 un cerne, *a ring.*  
 un ceste, *a girdle.*  
 un chambrano, *a door-case.*  
 un chancre, *a chancre.*  
 un change, *an exchange.*  
 du chanvre, *some hemp.*  
 un chapitre, *a chapter.*  
 un charme, *a charm.*  
 un chef-d'œuvre, *a masterpiece.*  
 un chiffre, *a cypher.*  
 le chyle, *the chyle.*  
 du cidre, *some cider.*  
 un cierge, *a wax taper.*  
 un cigne, *a swan.*  
 du cinabre, *some cinabar.*  
 un entre, *an arch.*  
 du cirène, *some ciccloth.*  
 un cirque, *a circus.*  
 un ciste, *a cistus.*  
 un cistre, *a cithren.*  
 un cloaque, *a sink.*  
 un cloître, *a cloister.*  
 un cloporte, *a woodlouse.*  
 { un coche, *a caravan.*  
 { une coche, *a notch.*  
 un code, *a code.*  
 un coffre, *a trunk.*  
 un collègue, *a colleague.*

un colloque, *a conference.*  
 un comble, *an over measure.*  
 un commerce, *a trade.*  
 un compte, *an account.*  
 un conseil, *a council.*  
 un conclave, *a conclave.*  
 un concombre, *a cucumber.*  
 un cône, *a cone.*  
 un conge, *a congeal.*  
 un congrès, *a congre.*  
 un cœur, *a tale.*  
 un contraste, *a contrast.*  
 un contrôle, *a control.*  
 un conventicle, *a conventicle.*  
 un corpuscule, *a corpuscle.*  
 un corysée, *a corusc.*  
 un costume, *a costume.*  
 un cothurne, *a buskin.*  
 le coude, *the elbow.*  
 { un couple, *a couple of persons.*  
 { une couple, *a couple of things.*  
 un comvercle, *a lid.*  
 un crabe, *a crab.*  
 un crâne, *a skull.*  
 un cratère, *a crater.*  
 { un Cravate, *a Cravat.*  
 { une cravate, *a neckcloth.*  
 { un crepe, *a crape.*  
 { une crepe, *a parcake.*  
 un crépuscule, *the twilight.*  
 un crible, *a sieve.*  
 un crime, *a crime.*  
 { un critique, *a censurer.*  
 { une critique, *a criticism.*  
 un crocodile, *a crocodile.*  
 un cube, *a cube.*  
 le cuivre, *the copper.*  
 un culte, *a worship.*  
 un custode, *a curtain.*  
 un cycle, *a cycle.*  
 un cylindre, *a cylinder.*

## D.

un dactyle, *a dactyle.*  
 un débarcadère, *a terminus.*  
 un decagone, *a decagon.*  
 un décalogue, *a decalogue.*  
 un decompte, *a discount.*  
 un décuple, *a tenfold.*  
 un dédale, *a maze.*  
 un déicide, *a decide.*  
 un délire, *a delirium.*  
 un démerite, *a demerit.*  
 un denticle, *a denticle.*  
 un désastre, *a disaster.*  
 un désordre, *a disorder.*  
 un diable, *a devil.*  
 un dialecte, *a dialect.*  
 un dialogue, *a dialogue.*  
 un diamètre, *a diameter.*  
 un dièse, *a sharp.*  
 le digesté, *the digest.*  
 un diocèse, *a diocese.*  
 un disque, *a disk.*  
 un distique, *a distich.*  
 un dividende, *a dividend.*  
 un divorce, *a divorce.*

un dogme, *a dogma.*  
 un dogue, *a mastiff.*  
 un domaine, *a domain.*  
 un domicile, *an abode.*  
 un doute, *a doubt.*  
 un drame, *a drama.*

## E.

un échange, *an exchange.*  
 un écouille, *a pittock.*  
 de l'ellébore, *some hellebore.*  
 un éloge, *an eulogy.*  
 un embarcadère, *a terminus.*  
 un émétique, *an emetic.*  
 un empire, *an empire.*  
 un emplâtre, *a poultice.*  
 { un enseigne, *an ensign (in the army).*  
 { une enseigne, *a sign-post.*  
 un entr'acte, *an interlude.*  
 un epilogue, *epilogue.*  
 un episode, *an episod.*  
 un équilibre, *an equilibrium.*  
 un équinoxe, *an equinox.*  
 un esclandre, *a bustle.*  
 un escompte, *a discount.*  
 un etre, *a being.*  
 un évangile, *a gospel.*  
 { un exemple, *an example.*  
 { une exemple, *a copy in writing.*  
 un exergue, *an exergue.*  
 l'exode, *the exodus.*  
 un exorde, *an exordium.*

## F.

le fante, *the top.*  
 un fiste, *an ostentation.*  
 du sentre, *some felt.*  
 un fiacre, *a hackney-coach.*  
 un hfre, *a fist.*  
 un filigrane, *a filigrane.*  
 un filtre, *a filter.*  
 les flasques, *the cheeks of a mast.*  
 une flasque, *a powder-horn.*  
 un flegme, *a flegm.*  
 un fleuve, *a river.*  
 un follicule, *a follicle.*  
 un fossile, *a fossil.*  
 { un foudre, *a large tun.*  
 { la foudre, *the thunderbolt.*  
 un fratrieide, *a fratricide.*

## G.

{ un garde, *a keeper.*  
 { une garde, *a watch.*  
 un genre, *a gender.*  
 un germe, *a bud.*  
 un geste, *a gesture.*  
 un gîte, *a covert.*  
 du givre, *hoar-frost.*  
 un glaive, *a sword.*  
 un globe, *a globe.*  
 un globule, *a globule.*  
 un goître, *a wen.*  
 un golfe, *a gulf.*

[illegible]

du nitre,  
un nocturne,  
un nombre,

*some nitre.*  
*i nocturn.*  
*i number.*

## O.

un obélisque  
un œuvre,  
une œuvre,  
un ombre,  
une ombre,  
un ogre,  
un ogle,  
un opprobre,  
un opuscule,  
un orbe,  
un ordre,  
un organe,  
un orgue,  
des orgues,  
un orle,  
un ove,

*an obelisk.*  
*a work of art.*  
*an action.*  
*(a game).*  
*a shadow.*  
*(a monster).*  
*a nail.*  
*a disgrace.*  
*an opuscula.*  
*an orb.*  
*an order.*  
*an organ.*  
*(in the sing.)*  
*(in the plur.)*  
*an orle.*  
*an oval.*

## P.

un pacte,  
un pain,  
un palme,  
une palme,  
un pampre,  
un panache,  
un panégyrique,  
un paradoxe,  
un parasite,

*a bargain.*  
*a negro-cloth.*  
*a palm branch.*  
*a hand breadth.*  
*a vine branch.*  
*a plumet.*  
*an eulogy.*  
*a paradox.*  
*a flourish added to*  
*one's signature.*

un parallèle,  
une parallèle,  
un paragraphe,  
un parricide,  
un participe,  
un patronyme,  
un pécule,  
un pédicule,  
un peigne,  
un pêne,  
un pendule,  
une pendule,  
le pentateuque,  
le Perche,  
un période,  
une période,  
un perpendiculaire,  
un pétale,  
un peuple,  
un phare,  
un phénomène,  
un philtre,  
le phosphore,  
un pique,  
une pique,  
un pivoine,  
une pivoine,  
un plane,  
une plane,  
le platine,  
la platine,  
du plâtre,  
un poêle,  
une poêle,

*a comparison.*  
*a parallel line.*  
*a paragraph.*  
*a parricide.*  
*a participle.*  
*a patronymy.*  
*a competence.*  
*a pedicle.*  
*a comb.*  
*a bolt.*  
*a pendulum.*  
*a clock.*  
*the pentateuch.*  
*(a province).*  
*the pitch.*  
*a period.*  
*a plummet.*  
*a petal.*  
*a people.*  
*a lighthouse.*  
*a phenomenon.*  
*a philter.*  
*the phosphor.*  
*a mattock.*  
*a pick.*  
*a gnat-napper.*  
*a penny.*  
*a plane tree.*  
*a plane.*  
*the platina.*  
*the platen.*  
*some plaster.*  
*a stove.*  
*a frying-pan*

le poivre;  
le pôle,  
un polype;  
un polysyllabe,  
un pouche,  
un ponce,  
une ponte,  
un porche,  
un pore,  
un porphyre,  
un portique,  
un poste,  
une poste,  
le pousse,  
le pourpre,  
la pourpre,  
un préambule,  
un précepte,  
un prêche,  
un presbytère,  
un prestige,  
un prétexte,  
un principe,  
un prodige,  
un prône,  
un protocole,  
un proverbe,  
un pupitre,

*the pepper*  
*the pole.*  
*a polypus.*  
*a polysyllabic.*  
*a punch.*  
*a large lemon.*  
*a punter.*  
*a laying of eggs*  
*a porch.*  
*a pore.*  
*a porphyry.*  
*a portico.*  
*an employment.*  
*a post-office.*  
*the thumb.*  
*the purples.*  
*the purple.*  
*a preamble.*  
*a precept.*  
*a sermon.*  
*a parsonage.*  
*a charm.*  
*a pretence.*  
*a principle.*  
*a prodigy.*  
*a sermon.*  
*a protocol.*  
*a proverb.*  
*a desk.*

## Q.

un quaterne,  
un quadrupède,

*a quaternion.*  
*a quadruped.*

## R.

un râle,  
un râle,  
un réclame,  
une réclame,  
un régicide,  
un régime,  
un registre,  
un règne,  
un relâche,  
un remède,  
un reproche,  
un reptile,  
un reste,  
un rétable,  
un rêve,  
un reverbère,  
un rhombe,  
un rhomboïde,  
le Rhône,  
un rhume,  
un rythme,  
un ridicule,  
un risque,  
un rite,  
un rôle,  
un rouge-gorge,  
un rouge-queue,

*back of a hare.*  
*a rail.*  
*a reclaiming.*  
*a catch-word.*  
*a regicide.*  
*a diet.*  
*a register.*  
*a reign.*  
*a relaxation.*  
*a remedy.*  
*a reproach.*  
*a reptile.*  
*a rest.*  
*an altar-piece.*  
*a diaphan.*  
*a street-lamp.*  
*a lozenge.*  
*a rhomboid.*  
*(a river in France).*  
*a cold.*  
*a rhythm.*  
*a ridicule.*  
*a risk.*  
*a rite.*  
*a roll.*  
*a robin redbreast.*  
*a redtail.*

## S.

le sable,  
un sabre,

*the sand.*  
*a broadsword.*



*EXERCISE upon the GENDER OF NOUNS.*

The rules upon the articles must be applied here ; that is to say, the articles must be used, and agree with their substantive in genders, numbers, and cases.

The virtue ; of the sobriety ; to the prudence ; from the  
*vertù —été —*  
 hand ; the necklace ; of the reason ; to the miracle ; the  
*main collier raison —*  
 nation ; of the cupola ; to an age ; a boat ; of the ice ; to the  
*— dôme âge bateau glace*  
 clemency ; from a church-yard ; the (native country) ; of a  
*clémence cimetière patrie*  
 colony ; to the goodness ; the happiness ; of the poison ; to  
*—nie bonté bonheur —*  
 the fish ; from the price ; a cage ; the salary ; of a song ; to a  
*poisson prix — —aire chanson*  
 knife ; of a fork ; to the salad ; of a fur ; the beer ; of the night ;  
*couteau fourchette —e fourrure bière nuit*  
 a summer ; the constancy ; of the death ; to the castle ; an  
*été —ce mort château*  
 ink-pot ; the directory ; a building ; of the fear ; to a com-  
*encrier —oire bâtiment peur*  
 parison ; the burning ; a suffering ; of a calamity ; the bed ; of  
*—raison brûlure souffrance —té lit*  
 the dish ; to a chimney ; of a picture ; some paper ; a pen  
*plat cheminée tableau papier ca-*  
 knife ; the heaven ; of the garden ; the market ; of the roof ; a  
*nif ciel jardin marché toit*  
 pot ; the looking-glass ; the bolt ; of a day ; to the morning ;  
*— miroir verrou jour matin*  
 of the evening ; of an advantage ; the painting ; of the fate ;  
*soir avantage peinture sort*  
 to the felicity ; of a secret ; to the perseverance ; the courage ;  
*— félicité — persévérance —*  
 an education ; of the forest ; to the yard ; of a genius ; the  
*— é— forêt cour génie*  
 description ; of an effect ; the pleasure ; of the neatness ; to  
*— effet plaisir propreté*  
 the life ; from the light ; of the time ; a variation ; the sim-  
*vie lumière temps —*  
 plicity ; of the nature ; an art ; of a description ; to the north ;  
*— — — — — nord*  
 of a point ; to the youth ; of the glory ; the poetry ; some  
*— jeunesse gloire poésie*  
 wisdom ; a reward ; the silence ; the providence ; some  
*sagesse récompense — —*  
 patience ; a restitution ; a boarding-school ; of the harvest .  
*— pension moisson.*

## OF ADJECTIVES.

An adjective expresses the quality of an object or person. Such are *grand*, great; *bon*, good; *mauvais*, wicked; *petit*, little. An adjective is always joined or relative to a substantive or a pronoun.

As the adjectives agree in French with their substantives, they have also two genders and numbers. They form their feminine from the masculine, and the plural from the singular, after the following directions.

*How to form the Feminine of Adjectives.*

The adjectives become feminine, by changing their masculine terminations, as follows :

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>		<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
1.	e unaccented	alike	as	sage	sage
2.	x	se		curieux	curieuse
3.	f	ve		actif	active
4.	teur*	trice		moteur	motrice
	eur†	cuse		chanteur	chanteuse
5.	el	elle		cruel	cruelle
	eil	eille		pareil	pareille
	et	ette		muet	muette
	an	anne		paysan	paysanne
	en	enne		ancien	ancienne
	on	onne		bon	bonne
6.	Adjectives of other terminations in the masculine take an e unaccented in the feminine : as				
	aimé	aimée		petit	petite

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Traître*, treacherous, makes *traîtresse*.

2. *Faux*, *roux*, double the *s* of the feminine ending, and make *fausse*, *rousse*; *doux* makes *douce*, and *vieux*, *vieille*.

4. *Bailleur*, *défendeur*, *demandeur*, all law-terms, make *bailleresse*, *défenderesse*, and *demanderesse*. *Enchanteur*, *exécuteur*, *pêcheur*, *persécuteur*, and *vengeur*, notwithstanding the gerunds in *ant*, make *enchanteresse*, *exécutrice*, *pêcheresse*, *persécutrice*, and *vengeresse*. Adjectives in *eur* not derived from verbs do not fall under this rule, but take *e* mute by Rule 6, as *meilleure*, *mineure*, &c.

5. The adjective *plan*, level, makes *planc*. *Complet*, *discret*, *inquiet*, *replet*, and *secret*, make in the feminine *complète*, *discrète*, *inquiète*, *replète*, *secrète*.

\* Not derived from a verb.

† Derived from a verb.

6. *Châtain, aquilin, dispos, discord, and fat*, have no feminine; *favori* makes *favorite*, *absous* and *dissous* make *absoute, dissoute*; *nul* and *sot* make *nulle* and *sotte*. *Blanc, frais, franc, sec*, make *blanche, fraîche, franche, sèche*. *Long* makes *longue*, and the sound of *c* is given by *qu* in *caduque, grèque, turque, publique*. *Tiers* has *tierce*. *Bénin* and *malin* make *bénigne* and *maligne*. *Bas, épais, exprès, gras, gros, las, profès*, follow the analogy of Rule 5, and make *basse, épaisse, expresse, grasse, grosse, lasse, professe*.

N. B. *Beau, nouveau, fou, mou, vieux*, also make in the masculine, *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil*, when placed before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. It is from that final they form their feminine, by adding *le* to it: as *nouvel*, m. *nouvelle*, f. *bel*, m. *belle*, f. *vieil*, m. *vieille*, f.

### EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of the FEMININE of ADJECTIVES.

N. B. The adjectives which must in French be placed after the substantives, have the last letter in *Italic*.

The learner must apply the rules about the articles, and the gender of substantives.

A good man; a good woman; a great garden; a great house;  
*bon homme femme grand jardin maison*  
 a white handkerchief; a white gown; a new hat; a new  
*blanc mouchoir robe f neuf chapeau*  
 waistcoat; an attentive boy; an attentive girl; a fat ox; a fat  
*gilet m —tif garçon fille gras bœuf*  
 cow; an ambitious project; an ambitious woman; a cruel  
*vache —tieux projet femme —*  
 father; a cruel mother; a bitter fruit; a bitter apple; a con-  
*père. mère amer — pomme*  
 stant friend; a constant resolution; an elegant speech; an  
*ami résolution élégant discours*  
 elegant lady; a figurative sense; a figurative expression; a  
*dame —tif sens —*  
 frugal dinner; a frugal life; some cold beef; some cold meat;  
*—dîner vie froid bœuf viande f*  
 a warlike people; a warlike nation; a long discourse; a long  
*guerrier peuple m — —rs*  
 period; a natural style; a natural inclination; the public  
*phrase f —rel — m — public*  
 interest; the public opinion; a specious pretence; a specious  
*intérêt — spécieux prétexte m*  
 answer; a high wall; a high tower; a pretty boy; a pretty  
*réponse f haut mur tour joli garçon*



girl; a fine hat; a fine gown; a pernicious game; a pernicious  
*fille beau chapeau robe —cieux jeu*  
 company.  
*—gnic.*

*How to form the Plural of Substantives and Adjectives.*

The substantives and adjectives form their plural from the singular, by changing their final as follows:

<i>singular.</i>	<i>plural.</i>	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural.</i>
1. s } x } z }	alike	as, le fils	les fils
		la voix	les voix
		le nez	les nez
2. eu	eux	le jeu	les jeux
au	aux	l'eau	les eaux
3. *al	aux	le canal	les canaux
4. All other finals take an s for the plural: as			
le trou	les trous	petit	petits

N. B. The plural masculine of adjectives is formed from the singular masculine; and the plural feminine from the singular feminine: as *grand, grands; grande, grandes; beau, beaux; belle, belles.*

*EXCEPTIONS.*

\* There are some exceptions to the third rule, namely, *avals, bals, cals, carnavals, pals, and régals.*

The exceptions to the fourth or general rule end chiefly in *ou* and *ail*: as *bijoux, cailloux, genoux, hiboux, poux*; and these, *bail, corail, émail, plumail, soupirail, travail, vantail*, make the plural in *aux*. *Aïeul, ail, ciel, œil*, have *aïeux, aux, cieux, yeux*, in the plural. *Tout*, indeterminate pronoun, makes *tous*.

*EXERCISE upon the PLURAL of SUBSTANTIVES and ADJECTIVES.*

Remember to apply in this exercise the rules for the articles, and for the feminine of adjectives, as well as for their plural; and in every exercise, the rules which precede must be applied.

An harmonious concert; two harmonious concerts; \*an  
*—nieux — deux*  
 harmonious voice; three harmonious voices; a white horse;  
*voix trois blanc cheval*  
 four white horses; a white house; five white houses. Your  
*quatre maison cinq votre*

brother is prudent and wise; your brothers are prudent and  
*frère est — et sage vos sont*  
 wise; your sister is prudent and wise; your sisters are  
*votre sœur vos*  
 prudent and wise. A pretty picture; a pretty girl; two  
*joli tableau fille*  
 pretty pictures; two pretty girls. The English general  
*anglais général*  
 is brave and courageous; the English generals are brave  
*— —-général*  
 and courageous; our army is brave and courageous; our  
*notre armée nos*  
 armies are brave and courageous. Your son is young  
*votre fils jeune*  
 and handsome; your sons are young and handsome; your  
*beau vos votre*  
 daughter is young and handsome; your daughters are  
*fille vos*  
 young and handsome. This book is new; these books  
*ce livre m neuf ces*  
 are new; this table is new; these tables are new.  
*cette — f cès*  
 My uncle is rich and generous; my uncles are rich  
*mon oncle riche généreux mes*  
 and generous; my aunt is rich and generous; my aunts  
*ma tante mes*  
 are rich and generous. Give me a small knife, and a  
*donnez-moi petit couteau*  
 small fork; give me two small knives, and two small  
*fourchette donnez-moi*  
 forks. This animal is cruel and revengeful; these animals  
*cet — — vindicatif ces*  
 are cruel and revengeful; this beast is cruel and revengeful;  
*cette bête f*  
 these beasts are cruel and revengeful. Our love is mutual;  
*ces . . notre amour mutuel*  
 our sentiments are mutual; our fear is mutual; our fears  
*nos — notre crainte f nos*  
 are mutual. I have a good fire in my room; I have two  
*j'ai feu dans ma chambre f*  
 good fires in my house.  
*ma maison.*

## 1. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns serve to distinguish persons in discourse, without naming them.

A difference is established among the French pronouns that we do not observe in English; for we use the same pro-

nouns conjoined with a verb in the sentence, or not conjoined: as, *I, the teacher, speak*. In which case the French would employ two forms for *I*, the one *je* conjunctive; the other *moi*, disjunctive.

## DECLENSION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
je <i>I</i>	en <i>of me</i>	me <i>to me</i>	me <i>me</i>
tu <i>thou</i>	en <i>of thee</i>	te <i>to thee</i>	te <i>tht</i>
il <i>he</i>	en <i>of him</i>	lui <i>to him</i>	le <i>him</i>
elle <i>she</i>	en <i>of her</i>	lui <i>to her</i>	la <i>her</i>
		se <i>to one's self</i>	se <i>one's self</i>
nous <i>we</i>	en <i>of us</i>	nous <i>to us</i>	nous <i>us</i>
vous <i>you</i>	en <i>of you</i>	vous <i>to you</i>	vous <i>you</i>
ils <i>they</i>	en <i>of them</i>	leur <i>to them</i>	les <i>them</i>
elles <i>they</i>	en <i>of them</i>	leur <i>to them</i>	les <i>them</i>
		se <i>to themselves</i>	se <i>themselves</i>

## DECLENSION OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
moi <i>I</i>	de moi <i>of me</i>	à moi <i>to me</i>	moi <i>me</i>
toi <i>thou</i>	de toi <i>of thee</i>	à toi <i>to thee</i>	toi <i>thee</i>
lui <i>he</i>	de lui <i>of him</i>	à lui <i>to him</i>	lui <i>him</i>
	de soi <i>of one's self</i>	à soi <i>to one's self</i>	soi <i>one's self</i>
elle <i>she</i>	d'elle <i>of her</i>	à elle <i>to her</i>	elle <i>her</i>
nous <i>we</i>	de nous <i>of us</i>	à nous <i>to us</i>	nous <i>us</i>
vous <i>you</i>	de vous <i>of you</i>	à vous <i>to you</i>	vous <i>you</i>
eux <i>they</i>	d'eux <i>of them</i>	à eux <i>to them</i>	eux <i>them</i>
elles <i>they</i>	d'elles <i>of them</i>	à elles <i>to them</i>	elles <i>them</i>

The conjunctive pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, in the nominative case precede their verb when there is no interrogation, but are inverted in a few other instances, and in all interrogative sentences: ex. *je parle, &c.* I speak; *parlez-vous?* do you speak? *dit-il*, says he.

If the personal pronouns be in the genitive, dative, or accusative, they always go immediately before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary in compound tenses: ex. *je les connais*, I know them; *je les ai connus*, I have known them. If, however, the verb were in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns should go after it: ex. *voyez-les, parlez-lui*, see them, speak to him. The disjunctive pronouns are put in the same place in French as they are in English, and require no explanation.

N. B. A *c* is put under the pronoun when it is conjunctive, and a *d* when it is disjunctive.

I speak. Who speaks? I. He reads. Who reads? He.  
*c parle qui parle d c lit qui lit d*

They dance. Who dance? They. He speaks to me; he  
*c dansent qui danse: d c c d*  
 and his brother speak against me; they love me; you  
*et son frère parlent contre d c aiment c c*  
 know them; you speak to him; you speak of them; you  
*connaîtrez c c parlez c c d c*  
 speak against them; we love you; we respect them; we  
*contre d c aimons c c respectons c c*  
 respect him; he speaks to you and to me; he speaks to him  
*c c parle d et d c d*  
 and to her.  
*et d*

## 2. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns denote the possession, and particularise the substantive to which they have reference. They are called conjunctive when they come before a substantive; and disjunctive when they refer to a substantive antecedent. The first take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative; the second are declined with the definite article *le, la, les* in the nominative and accusative; *du, de la, des* in the genitive; and *au, à la, aux* in the dative, like a substantive. Both are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or relative. They are as follows:

### CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.		m.	f.	
mon	ma	mon	mes		my
ton	ta	ton	tes		thy
son	sa	son	ses		one's, his, her, its
notre			nos	like	our
votre	like		vos		your
leur			leurs		their

### DISJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

m.	f.	m.	f.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	thine
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	like	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs		theirs

• My brother; my sister; my brothers; my sisters; of my  
*frère m sœur f*

garden; of my house; of my books; of my tables; to my  
*jardin* m      *maison* f      *livres* pl      —pl  
 country; to my nation; to my horses; to my cows; his  
*pays* m      — f      *chevaux* pl      *vaches* pl  
 master; his mistress; of his pleasure; to his duty; our  
*maître* m      *maîtresse* f      *plaisir* m      *devoir* m  
 friend; of your picture; to their room; of our closet; to  
*ami* m      *tableau* m      *chambre* f      *cabinet*  
 your bed; of their enemies; of my soul; to his humour.  
*lit*      *ennemis* pl      *âme* f      *humeur* h

### 3. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and, as it were, point to the eye, the person or thing spoken of. They are the following:

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.		m.	f.	
1. ce, cet *	cette,	<i>this, that</i>	ces	ces	<i>these, those</i>
2. celui	celle,	<i>that</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those</i>
3. celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those</i>
4. ceci, m. <i>this</i> ; cela m. <i>that</i> . They are used as follows.					

1. The pronoun *ce* &c. is used before a substantive: as, *ce jardin, cet oiseau, cet homme, cette femme, ces enfants, ces filles*.

2. *Celui, celle*, &c. are used for *that* and *those*, followed by a genitive case, or a relative pronoun: as, *ce livre vaut mieux que celui de mon frère*, this book is better than *that* of my brother.

3. When we have spoken of several objects, *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci* are used with reference to the last; and *celui-là*, or *celle-là* to the former: as, *le vice et la vertu ont des effets contraires*; *celle-ci rend l'homme heureux, et celui-là le rend malheureux*.

4. *Ceci* and *cela* are used to show some particular object, without naming it: as, *donnez-moi ceci, et gardez cela pour vous*; give me *this*, and keep *that* for yourself.

N. B. These pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they are joined or relative. They take the preposition *de* for the genitive case, and *à* for the dative.

This wine is good; that beer is good; that man is  
*vin* m est bon      *bière* f      *homme* h

\* *Cet* is used instead of *ce*, when the next word begins with a vowel or an h mute.

learned; that woman is learned; these apples are ripe; do  
*savoir* *femme* *pommes sont mûres*  
 not speak of that child; do not speak of that girl; of these  
*ne parlez pas* *enfant m* *fille f*  
 pens; to these books; this bird; of that cage; to that  
*plumes pl* *livres pl* *oiseau m* *— f*  
 country; these arms; of these soldiers; to those armies;  
*pays m* *armes pl* *soldats pl* *armées pl*  
 give me this or that; do not do that.  
*donnez-moi ou ne faites pas.*

## 4. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns have a particular reference to the noun to which they belong, and come immediately after it in French. They are as follows:

## PRONOUNS RELATIVE TO PERSONS.

*Of both Genders and Numbers.*

N.	qui	who
G.	de qui, dont	whose, of whom
D.	à qui	to whom
• Acc.	que	whom

## PRONOUNS RELATIVE TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N.	qui	le quel	la. quelle	qui	les quels	les quelles
G.	dont	du quel	de la quelle	dont	des quels	des quelles
D.		au quel	à la quelle		aux quels	aux quelles
Acc.	que	le quel	la quelle	que	les quels	les quelles
						<i>which</i>

N.B. *Qui* is used in the nominative, *dont* in the genitive, and *que* in the accusative, for both genders and numbers of all sorts of objects: as, *l'homme qui lit*, *le cheval qui paît*, *le livre qui est sur la table*, nom.—*l'homme dont vous parlez*, *le cheval dont vous parlez*, *le livre dont vous parlez*, gen.—*l'homme que je vois*, *le cheval que je vois*, *le livre que je vois*, acc.

## 5. OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions, and

have reference to the noun mentioned in the answer: as, *qui est là? — votre frère.* They are the following:

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS.      WITH REFERENCE TO THINGS.

N.	qui	<i>who?</i>		quoi	<i>what?</i>
G.	de qui	<i>of whom?</i>		de quoi	<i>of what?</i>
D.	à qui	<i>to whom?</i>		à quoi	<i>to what?</i>
Acc.	qui	<i>whom?</i>		que	<i>what?</i>

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS AND THINGS.

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
N. Acc.		quel	quelle	quels	quelles	<i>what?</i>
G.		de quel	de quelle	de quels	de quelles	<i>of what?</i>
D.		à quel	à quelle	à quels	à quelles	<i>to what?</i>

WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS AND THINGS.

N. Acc.	lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which?</i>
G.	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which?</i>
D.	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which?</i>

N. B. *What*, as an interrogative, is expressed by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive: as, *Quel livre lisez-vous?* *what book do you read?* After a preposition it is expressed by *quoi*, as, *Je sais en quoi vous êtes coupable*, I know of *what* you are guilty.

## 6. OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

The indeterminate pronouns are so called, because they express a vague and indeterminate object. They are the following:

on	<i>one (one's-self),</i>	quiconque	<i>whoever</i>
le même	<i>the same</i>	l'un l'autre	<i>one another</i>
plusieurs	<i>many, several</i>	l'un et l'autre	<i>both</i>
autres	<i>others</i>	l'un ou l'autre	<i>either</i>
quelqu'un	<i>somebody</i>	ni l'un ni l'autre	<i>neither</i>
chacun	<i>every body</i>	aucun	<i>none</i>
tout	<i>every thing</i>	personne	<i>nobody</i>
tout ce qui	<i>whatever</i>	rien	<i>nothing</i>

All these pronouns take the preposition *de* for the genitive, and *à* for the dative: as, *rien, de rien, à rien.*

As the three last classes of pronouns cannot be applied but in sentences too difficult for beginners, the exercises upon them will be found in the syntax, rule 79, and following.

## OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

*Inf.* Avoir, *to have.* *P. pr.* ayant, *having.* *P. p.* eu *had.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
*A Ai,	as, a;		avons,	avez,	ont.
B Avais,	avais,	avait;	avions,	aviez,	avaient.
C Eus,	eus,	eut;	eûmes,	eûtes,	eurent.
D Aurai	auras,	aura;	aurons,	aurez,	auront.
E Aurais,	aurais,	aurait;	aurions,	auriez,	auraient.
F Aie,	aies,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.
G Eusse,	eusses,	eût;	eussions,	eussiez,	eussent.
H ..	aie,	ait;	ayons,	ayez,	aient.

N. B. You must apply here, and always in future, the rules for the place of adjectives, and those for the gender and the plural of nouns and adjectives.

A. I have a new riband; she has a new gown; we have new stockings; you have new ruffles; they have a fine nose-gay.—B. I had a good master; she had a good mistress; we had good brothers; you had good sisters; they had good friends.—C. I had a large garden; he had a great house; we had two large gardens; you had two great houses; they had a young turkey for their dinner.—D. I shall have a white horse; he will have a white waistcoat; we shall have white curtains; you will have a bad supper; they will have a bad excuse.—E. I would have delicious fruit, she would have a delicious pear; we would have a precious jewel; you would have a precious stone; they

neuf ruban                      robe f  
bas                      des † manchette                      beau  
bouquet                      bon maître                      maîtresse  
de                      frère                      de † sœurs  
ami                      grand jardin  
maison                      deux  
jeune dindon pour                      dîner  
blanc cheval                      veste f  
des † rideau                      mauvais souper  
—f                      un délicieux  
poire  
précieux jouuu                      pierre

\* The letter A denotes the present tense of the indicative mood, B the imperfect, C the preterite, D the future, E the conditional, F the present of the subjunctive, G the preterite, and H the imperative. *P. pr.* denotes present participle, *P. p.* past participle.

† See the *Partitive Article*, page 10.



would have a bloody war.—F. That I may have sincere  
*sanglant guerre* *des\** —  
 friends; that he may have elevated sentiments; that we  
*ami* *des\* élevé* —  
 may have delightful landscapes; that you may have  
*des\* délicieux paysage* *des\**  
 prepossessing manners; that they may have enlightened  
*présentant manière* *des\* éclairé*  
 judges.—G. That I might have a sword, a musket, and  
*juge* *épée* *fusil* *des\**  
 pistols; that he might have a furnished house; that we  
*pistolet* *garni maison*  
 might have faithful servants; that you might have a  
*des\* fidèle domestique*  
 pretty dressing-room; that they might have a beautiful  
*joli cabinet de toilette* *superbe*  
 drawing-room.—H. Have new gloves; let him have  
*salon de compagnie* *s des\* neuf gant* *qu'il* *des\**  
 precious jewels; let us have a skilful gardener; have  
*précieux bijou* *habile jardinier* *pl de\**  
 large buildings; let them have a regular conduct.  
*grand bâtiment* *régulier conduite f.*

*Inf.* Etre, to be. *P. pr.* étant, being. *P. p.* été, been.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles.</i>
A Suis,	es,	est;	sommes,	êtes,	sont.	
B Etais,	étais,	était;	étions,	étiez,	étaient.	
C Fus,	fus,	fut;	fûmes,	fûtes,	furent.	
D Serai,	seras,	sera;	serons,	serez,	seront.	
E Serais,	serais,	serait;	serions,	seriez,	seraient.	
F Sois,	sois,	soit;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.	
G Fusse,	fusses,	fût;	fussions,	fussiez,	fussent.	
H	sois,	soit;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.	

A. I am sick; thou art young; he is unhappy; she is  
*malade* *jeune* *malheureux*  
 unhappy; we are laborious; you are modest; they are  
*—rieux* *—te*  
 lazy.—B. I was prudent; she was prudent; we were dis-  
*parseux* —  
 creet; you were studious; they were jealous; your sisters  
*cret* *—dieux* *jaloux* *sœurs*  
 were jealous.—C. I was his intimate friend; she was my  
*—me* *ami*  
 greatest enemy; we were generous; you were ungrateful;  
*plus grand ennemie* *généreux* *ingrat*  
 they were cruel; your daughters were cruel.—D. I shall be  
 — *filles*

a brave soldier; he will be a handsome man; she will be a  
*soldat bel homme* \*  
 handsome woman; we will be faithful to our country; you  
*femme fidèle pays*  
 will be in continual fears; they will be our mortal  
*dans des —uel crainte.f —tel*  
 enemies.—E. I. should be ready; she would be trouble-  
*ennemi prêt incom-*  
 some; we should be very ridiculous; you would be too  
*mode très —le trop*  
 eager; they would be extremely unpolite.—F. That I may  
*empressé extrêmement malhonnête*  
 be so impatient; that he may be obstinate; that we may  
*si — entêté*  
 be unreasonable; that you may be humane and generous;  
*déraisonnable humain généreux*  
 that they may be guilty.—G. That I might be grateful;  
*coupable reconnaissant*  
 that she might be careful; that we might be attentive; that  
*soigneux —tif*  
 you might be credulous; that they might be inconsiderate.  
*—le indiscret*  
 —H. Be benevolent; let him be firm and courageous; let  
*s. bienfaisant ferme —geux*  
 us be reserved; be economical and temperate; let them be  
*réservé économe sobre pl*  
 kind and indulgent.  
*doux compatissant.*

## THE TWO REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Parl-cr, to speak.	P. pr. parl-ant.	P. p. parl-é.†
	Singular.		Plural.
	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>
A	Parl -e,	es,	e ;
B	Parl -ais,	ais,	ait ;
C	Parl -ai,	as,	a ;
		<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>
		<i>ils or elles.</i>	
		ez,	ent.
		ions,	iez,
		âmes,	âtes,
			èrent.

\* See page iv.

† The pupil must repeat the English words, which answer to every tense and person of the French verbs. This will be an easy task, if he remember, that to is the mark of the infinitive, was do-ing, the mark of the imperfect, shall or will, of the future, would, could, or should, of the conditional, may, of the present of the subjunctive, might, of the preterite, and let, of the imperative.

D	Parl-e	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E	Parl-e	-rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient.
F	Parl	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G	Parl	asse,	asses,	ât;	ussions,	assiez,	assent.
H	Parl	....	-e,	e;	ons,	ez,	ent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *er*.\*

REMARK 1st. In verbs ending in *ger* the *e* is not suppressed in those tenses where the *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*, in order to preserve to *g*'its soft pronunciation: as, *mangeant, jugeons, je négligeai*.

2dly. In verbs ending in *cer*, we put, for the same reason, a cedilla under *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*; as, *suçant, plaçons, j'effaçai*.

3dly. In verbs ending in *oyer, oyer, and uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*; as, *j'emploie, il essuie, j'ap- puierai, il nettoierait*.

To conjugate a verb upon another, is to make the final of every tense and person of one verb, in perfect rhyme with the verb upon which it is conjugated. To make this rhyme perfect, consider the infinitive as the root of verbs from which all tenses are formed; and change for any person the same letters in all verbs of the same conjugation: thus, as *parler* makes *parlant, parlé, je parle, je parlais*; *chanter* will make *chantant, chanté, je chante, je chantais*; and so on for all other tenses and persons without any exception.

A. I love my father; thou adorest God; he alarms the  
*aimer père —rer Dieu —mer*  
country; she dances very well; we announce good news;  
*pays —scr très-bien annoncer de nouvelles*  
you water the garden; they attack the enemy.—B. I did  
*arroser jardin attaquer ennemi*  
sweep the school; he did warm the bed; she did embroider  
*balayer école bassiner broder*  
her gown; we did seal the letter; you did begin your  
*robe f cacheter lettre f commencer*  
exercise; they did condemn my conduct.—C. I rewarded  
*thème m condamner conduite f récompenser*  
the servant; he considered the question; she comforted her  
*domestique m considérer — consoler*  
mother; we satisfied our master; you corrected the faults;  
*contenter maître corriger faute*  
they unsealed the letter.—D. I will decide the question; he  
*décacheter lettre f décider —*  
will declare war; she will breakfast with us; we will  
*déclarer la guerre déjeuner avec*

\* For further observations see Thibaudin's French Verbs.

arm the wicked; you will undeceive my sister; they will  
*armer méchants . détromper . sœur*  
 defer the punishment.—E. I would frequent good company;  
*différer . punition . fréquenter la compagnie*  
 he would engrave my arms; she would humble your pride;  
*graver armes humilier orgueil*  
 we would print a grammar; you would forget injuries;  
*imprimer grammaire f oublier les —re*  
 they would reform their conduct.—F. That I may give this  
*réformer donner*  
 plaything to my sister; that he may propose a salutary  
*joujou sœur —ser —taire*  
 advice; that we may admire the beauty of that landscape;  
*avis —rer beauté paysage*  
 that you may think of my misfortunes; that they may  
*penser à malheur*  
 forget an essential circumstance.—G. That I might surmount  
*oublier —tiel circonstance surmonter*  
 the obstacles; that he might reinforce his party; that we  
*— renforcer parti*  
 might shut the shutter; that you might begin that  
*fermer volet commencer*  
 charming history; that they might protect that bad man.—  
*—mant histoire protéger méchant homme*  
 H. Sacrifice thy interest to the public good; let him unravel  
*—fier intérêt bien débrouiller*  
 that business; let us finish this book; appease his anger;  
*affaire f achever livre m apaiser colère f*  
 let them avoid the danger.  
*éviter*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Ag-ir, to act. P. pr. ag-issant. P. p. ag-i.

	J'	tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles
A Ag	-is,	is,	it;	issons,	issez,	issent.
B Ag-iss	-ais,	ais,	ait;	ions,	iez,	aient.
C Ag	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
D Ag-i	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Ag-i	-rais,	rais,	rait;	rions,	riez,	raient.
F Ag-iss	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Ag	-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H Ag	...	-is,	isse;	issons,	issez,	issent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *ir*.

A. I shorten the way; he softens the heart; she liberates  
*accourcir chemin adoucir cœur pl affranchir*  
 c 6

her slaves; we remove difficulties; you applaud what he  
*esclave applaudir les —té —dir à ce qu'il*

says; they examine into the question.—B. I did warn your

brother of his danger: he did build the fortifications of our  
*dit approfondir\* — —avertir*

town; we did banish the wicked from our society; you did  
*ville bannir méchans société*

choose a bad colour; they did convert the impious.—C. I

unfurnished the house; he demolished the wall; we dis-

obeyed our master; you invaded their country; they filled  
*dégarnir maison démolir mur\* dé-*

the bottle with wine.—D. I shall finish my work to-night;  
*soûler à maître envahir pays remplir*

this tree will soon blossom; he will furnish this room; we

shall succeed in our undertaking; you will enjoy good  
*arbre fleurir bientôt garnir chambre*

health; they will languish a long while.—E. I would feed  
*réussir dans entreprise jouir d'une*

the chickens; he would betray my interest; we would  
*santé languir\* longtemps nourrir*

weaken their party; you would roast the hare; they would  
*poulet trahir intérêt pl*

undergo the punishment.—F. That I may pity his sor-

rows; that he may embellish his country-seat; that we  
*affaiblir parti rôti lièvre m*

may soften our enemies; that you may enrich your family;  
*subir punition\* compatir à cha-*

that they may sully their glory.—G. That I might cherish  
*grin embellir maison de campagne*

my relations; that she might soften that unfeeling heart;  
*fléchir ennemi enrichir famille*

that we might reflect on the shortness of life; that you  
*ternir gloire chérir*

might shudder with horror; that they might submit to an  
*parent attendre insensible cœur*

unjust yoke.—H. Punish thy scholars for their inattention;  
*réfléchir sur brièveté la vie*

let him establish wise laws; let us rebuild our farm;  
*frémir d'horreur fléchir sous*

polish those spoons; let them bless the providence.  
*mjuste joug punir écolier de —*

*établir des sage lui rebâtir ferme*

*polir cuiller bénir*

## OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

For brevity's sake we shall give only the first person of each tense, whenever all the others are formed regularly from this first person. The learner must therefore refer to the following table, where he will find all the remaining terminations of the tenses in every verb when there is no irregularity.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

		<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>	
		<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>		<i>nous</i>	<i>vous ils or elles</i>
A.	{ 1st conj.	e,	es,	e ;	}	ons	ez, ent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	s,	t ;			

## IMPERFECT.

B.	ais,	ais,	ait ;	ions,	iez,	aient.
----	------	------	-------	-------	------	--------

## PRETERITE.

C.	{ 1st conj.	ai,	as,	a ;	âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	s,	t ;	mes,	tes,	rent.

## FUTURE.

D.	rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
----	------	------	------	-------	------	-------

## CONDITIONAL.

E.	rais,	rais,	rait ;	rions,	riez,	raient.
----	-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	---------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

F.	e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
----	----	-----	-----	-------	------	------

## IMPERFECT.

G.	{ 1st conj.	asse,	asses,	ât ;	assions,	assiez,	assent.
	{ 2d conj.	sse,	sses,	t ;	ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

## IMPERATIVE.

H.	{ 1st conj.	e,	e ;	}	ons,	ez,	ent.
	{ 2d conj.	s,	e ;				

N.B. When the letters *d*, *t*, or *c*, are in the root of the present tense, they receive no addition in the third person singular.

The irregular verbs are classed by groups, according to the termination of their infinitive mood.

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN ER.

Aller, *to go*. *P. pr.* allant. *P. p.* allé.

A. Vais, vas, va; allons, allez, vont.

B. Allais.—C. Allai.—D. Irai.—E. Ir<sup>ai</sup>.

F. Aille, ailles, aille; allions, alliez, aillent.—G. Allasse.

H. Va, aille; allons, allez, aillent.

\* Envoyer, *to send*. *P. pr.* envoyant. *P. p.* envoyé.

A. Envoic.—B. Envoyais.—C. Envoyai.—D. Enverrai.

E. Enverrais.—F. Envoie.—G. Envoyasse.—H. Envoie.

Conjugate in the same manner *renvoyer*, *to send back*, *to dismiss*; but *convoier*, *to escort*, is regular.

A. I go every day to the park; he sends back to you your  
*tous les jours* *parc*  
 books; we go to-night to the play; they go to dine (out  
*ce soir* *comédie* \* *dîner à*  
 of town).—B. I (was going) (to your house) when I  
*la campagne* *chez vous* *quand ai*  
 met you.—C. We went yesterday to see a review.—D.  
*rencontr'* \* *voir revue*  
 He will go to Richmond next week; we shall send  
*la prochain semaine f* *du*  
 succour to our allies; you will go (to-morrow) to fetch  
*secours* *allié*  
 my coat; they will (send back) our horses.—E. He would  
*habit* *cheval*  
 go without me; you would send too little money.—F. That  
*sans* *trop peu d'argent*  
 we may go into the wood; that they may send me my razors.  
*dans bois* *rasoir*  
 G. That she might dismiss her chambermaid; that we  
*femme de chambre*  
 might go to church.—H. Go to school; let us go to Vaux-  
*Péglise* *sing.* *l'école* *au*  
 hall; send your children (to take a walk).  
*enfant à la promenade*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN IR.

Acquérir, *to acquire*. *P. pr.* acquérant. *P. p.* acquis.

A. Acquiers, -iers, -iert; acquér-ons, -ez, acquièrent.

B. Acquérais.—C. Acquis.—D. Acquerrai.—E. Acquerrais.

F. Acquièr-e, -es, -e; acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.

G. Acquisse.—H. Acquièr<sup>ez</sup>

Conjugate in the same manner *conquérir*, to conquer; *enquérir*, to enquire; and *requérir*, to request, to require.

*Assaillir*, to assault. *P. pr.* assaillant. *P. p.* assailli.

- A. Assaille.—B. Assaillais.—C. Assaillis.—D. Assaillirai.  
E. Assaillirais.—F. Assaille.—G. Assaillisse.—H. Assaille.

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.

*Bouillir*, to boil. *P. pr.* bouillant. *P. p.* bouilli.

- A. Bous, bous, bout; bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.  
B. Bouillais.—C. Bouillis.—D. Bouillirai.—E. Bouillirais.  
F. Bouille.—G. Bouillisse.—H. Bous.

Conjugate in the same manner *ébouillir*, to boil down; and *rebouillir*, to boil again.

*Courir*, to run. *P. pr.* courant. *P. p.* couru.

- A. Cours, cours, court; courons, courez, courent.  
B. Courais.—C. Courus.—D. Courrai.—E. Courrais  
F. Coure.—G. Courusse.—H. Cours.

Conjugate in the same manner *accourir*, to run to; *concourir*, to concur; *discourir* to discourse; *encourir*, to incur; *parcourir*, to run over; *recourir*, to have recourse; and *secourir*, to assist.

*Cueillir*, to gather. *P. pr.* cueillant. *P. p.* cueilli.

- A. Cueille.—B. Cueillais.—C. Cueillis.—D. Cueillirai.  
E. Cueillirais.—F. Cueille.—G. Cueillisse.—H. Cueille.

Conjugate in the same manner *accueillir*, to welcome; and *recueillir*, to collect.

*Fuir*, to flee. *P. pr.* Fuyant. *P. p.* Fui.

- A. Fuis, fuis, fuit; fuyons, fuyez, fuient.  
B. Fuyais.—C. Fuis.—D. Fuirai.—E. Fuirais.  
F. Fuie, fuies, fuie; fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.  
G. Fuisse, not commonly used.—H. Fuis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'enfuir*, to run away.

*Mourir*, to die. *P. pr.* mourant. *P. p.* mort.

- A. Meurs, meurs, meurt; mourons, mourez, meurent.  
B. Mourais.—C. Mourus.—D. Mourrai.—E. Mourrais.  
F. Meure, meures, meure; mourions, mouriez, meurent.  
G. Mourusse.—H. Meurs.



Vêtir, to clothe. P. pr. Vêtant. P. p. Vêtu.

- A. Vêts, vêts, vêt; vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.—B. Vêtais.  
 C. Vêtais.—D. Vêtirai.—E. Vêtirais.—F. Vête.—G. Vétisse  
 H. Vêts.

Conjugate in the same manner *revêtir*, to invest; and  
*dévêtir*, to divest.

- A. I acquire every day new knowledge; he  
*tous les jours de nouveau connaissance pl*  
 collects a selection of useful books; that water boils too  
*choix m utile livre eau trop*  
 fast; we (have recourse) to your generosity; you gather  
*fort générosité*  
 fruits which are not ripe; they clothe all the poor  
*des — mûr revêtir pauvre pl*  
 of their parish.—B. I did incur the hatred of that cruel  
*paroisse haine f —*  
 man; that affair required all your attention; we did  
*affaire f —*  
 clothe all the orphans of our neighbourhood; you did en-  
*vêtir orphelin voisinage*  
 quire about idle stories; they were dying with fear.—  
*de vain histoire se mourir de peur*  
 C. I ran at his voice; Alexander conquered a great part of  
*accourir à voix partie*  
 Asia; we ran away at the first appearance of danger;  
*l'Asie à premier apparence —*  
 you did not succour him in time; they died last year.—  
*à temps dernier l'année*  
 D. I shall flee from bad companies; he will discourse  
*\* les mauvais compagnie*  
 upon the immortality of the soul; we shall assault the  
*sur — le âme*  
 enemy to-morrow in their entrenchments; by your  
*ennemi pl demain dans retranchement par*  
 imprudence, will you not concur to the ruin of your  
*— ruine*  
 brother? they will receive you with kindness.—E. I would  
*frère accueillir avec bonté*  
 (run over) all that province; he would start with joy; we  
*— f de joie*  
 should run faster than your friend; you would incur the  
*plus vite que ami*  
 displeasure of your parents; they would (throw off some  
*disgrâce — se dévêtir*  
 clothing) before summer.—F. That I may reap corn  
*avant l'été recueillir du blé*

and wine for two years; have a care that the milk do not  
*du vin pour deux ans* H \* *soin* *lait*  
 (boil again); that we may request that favour from you;  
*fauteur*  
 that you may flee bad example; that they may die in  
*le mauvais exemple* *dans*  
 the arms of their friends.—G. That I might run after  
*bras* *après des*  
 chimeras; that he might collect the fruit of his labours;  
*chimère* — *travail*  
 that we might start with fear; that you might clothe  
*de peur* *se vêtir*  
 yourself more fashionably; that those ladies might acquire  
 \* *plus à la mode* *dame*  
 a general esteem by their modesty.—H. Gather these flowers  
*l'estime f* — *lie* *fleur*  
 and fruits for thy sisters; let him run away rather than  
*ces — pour sœur* *plutôt que*  
 (expose himself) to perish; let us run over the career of  
*de s'exposer périr carrière*  
 life with patience and resignation; enquire about that  
*la vie avec — — de*  
 event; let them run at the voice of that honest man  
*événement accourir à voix honnête*  
 and assist him.  
*qu'ils*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN MIR, TIR, VIR

*Sen-tir, to feel. P. pr. sen-tant, P. p. sen-ti.*

- A. Sens, sens, sent; sentons, sentez, sentent.  
 B. Sentais.—C. Sentis.—D. Sentirai.—E. Sentirais.  
 F. Sente.—G. Sentisse.—H. Sens, sente.

• Conjugate in the same manner the sixteen following verbs terminated in *mir, tir, vir*.

consentir, to consent.	s'endormir, to fall asleep.
démentir, to give the lie.	se rendormir, to fall asleep again.
desservir, to clear the table.	repartir, to set out again, to reply.
dormir, to sleep.	se repentir, to repent.
endormir, to lull asleep.	ressentir, to resent.
mentir, to lie.	ressortir, to go out again.
partir, to set out.	servir, to serve.
pressentir, to foresee.	sortir, to go out.
rendormir, to lull asleep again.	

- A. I consent to the marriage of my son; (she tells a falsehood) as often as she opens her mouth; we (set out) for France to-morrow; you apprehend misfortunes before they come; they (lull asleep) the children. — B. I did sleep very well; he did smell very bad; we did serve our country; you did (go out) before me; they did feel the effects of his anger. — C. I slept very well yesterday; he felt his misfortune; we consented to pay your father; you (went out) without my leave; they (went out again) as soon as they were returned. — D. I shall (go out) to-morrow if it be fine weather; he will serve his friend; we shall smell the dinner when it is ready; you will consent (to go there); they will (set out) to-morrow for London. — E. I would contradict that report; he would sleep immediately; we should injure more than serve you; I thought you would (set out again) before him; the children would sleep. — F. That I may consent to that bargain, that he may belie his character; that we may (clear the table) before we (go out); that you may sleep all night; that they may wheedle that credulous man by vain promises. — G. That I might (set out) sooner than I thought; that he might (tell a falsehood) designedly; that we might foresee your designs; that you might serve me with more zeal; that they might feel the horror of their situation. — H. (Be sensible of) all my good.
- mariage* *fil* *mentir*  
*toutes les fois qu'elle ouvre la bouche* *pour*  
*la* — *demain* *pressentir les malheurs avant qu'ils*  
*arrivent* *enfant*  
*très-mauvais* *pays*  
*avant moi* *ressentir* *effet*  
*colère* *f* *lâcher* *sentir* *mal-*  
*heur* *à payer* *père*  
*sans* *permission* *aussi-tôt qu'ils*  
*furent revenus* *demain* *s'il fait*  
*temps* *ami* *dîner*  
*quand il sera prêt* *à y aller*  
*pour Londres* *démentir*  
*rapport* *sur-le-champ* *vous desservir*  
*plus que nous ne vous servir* E \* *croyais que*  
*avant lui* *enfant*  
*marché* *démentir*  
*caractère* m *avant que* F  
*toute la nuit* *endormir*  
*crédule* *par de — promesse*  
*plus tôt que je ne pensais*  
*de dessein prémédité* *dessein*  
*avec plus de zèle* *sentir*  
*l'horreur* — *sentir* *toute* *bonté*

ness to thee; let him (sleep again) for a few hours;  
*envers toi* \* \* *quelques heures*  
 let us (go out again) (as soon as possible); consent to be.  
*au plus tôt*  
 miserable rather than to offend God; let them (go out) when  
 — *plutôt que d'offenser Dieu* *quand*  
 they will.  
*voudront.*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN FRIR, VRIR.

**Off-rir, to offer. P. pr. Off-rant. P. p. off-ert.**

- A. Offre, offres, offre; offrons, offrez, offrent.  
B. Offrais. — C. Offris. — D. Offrirai. — E. Offrirais.  
F. Offre. — G. Offrisse — H. Offre.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *frir, vrir*.

A. I offer my services to your father; my cousin suffers  
(very much); we discover your design; they open the  
*beaucoup découvrir dessin ouvrir*  
window.—B. I did suffer with patience; he did offer too  
*fenêtre f avec — trop*  
little; we did (open a little) the door; you did undervalue  
*peu entr'ouvrir porte f mésoffrir*  
that stuff too much; they did renew all the wounds of my  
*trop de cette étoffe rouvrir toutes plaie*  
heart.—C. I discovered his malice; he suffered with much  
*cœur — f avec beaucoup de*  
courage; we offered our assistance to your brother; you  
*— secours pl frère*  
covered the table with money; they (covered again) the  
*couvrir — f d'argent recouvrir*  
bed.—D. I shall suffer more than you think; he will dis-  
*lit plus que vous ne pensez*  
cover the fraud; we will open our heart to our father; they  
*fraude f cœur*  
will offer a great sum of money.—E. I would discover the  
*grand somme argent*  
snare; he would cover that man with filth; we should  
*piège d'ordure*  
(open again) the shop; you would (cover again) this book;  
*rouvrir boutique f recouvrir livre m*  
they would (open a little) the window.—F. That I may dis-  
*fenêtre f*

cover the plot formed against me; that he may offer a great  
*complot formé contre*  
 sum for that land; that we may suffer with patience; that  
*somme de terre* *avec* —  
 you may open your heart to your friends; that they may  
*cœur* *ami*  
 (open a little) their eyes.—G. That I might (open again) that  
*les yeux*  
 trunk; that she might discover all his perversity; that we  
*malle* *toute* —*le*  
 might suffer your ill treatment; that you might offer  
*mauvais traitement*  
 to (set off) with him; that they might cover him with con-  
*de partir avec lui* *de*  
 fusion.—H. (Cover again) this pot; let him suffer without  
 — *s* — *sans*  
 complaining; let us uncover the roof of my house; (open  
*se plaindre* *découvrir* *toit* *maison*  
 again) the coach; let them offer my thanks to the minister.  
*carrosse* *remerciement* —*tre*

### IRREGULAR VERBS IN ENIR.

Tenir, to hold. *P. pr.* tenant. *P. p.* tenu.

- A. Tiens, tiens, tient; tenons, tenez, tiennent.  
 B. Tenais.—C. Tins.—D. Tiendrai.—E. Tiendrais.  
 F. Tienne.—G. Tinsse.—H. Tiens, tiens; tenons, tenez,  
 tiennent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in  
*enir*.

A. I hold my book; she comes to see us every fortnight;  
*livre m* *venir* \* *voir tous les quinze jours*  
 we agree with you that he was in the wrong; you become  
*convenir* *qu'il avait* \* \* *tort* *devenir*  
 an honest man; these horses belong to my father.—B. I did  
 \* *honnête* *cheval appartenir*  
 maintain the fact; he did obtain a good place; we did re-  
*soutenir* *fait* *obtenir* — *reve-*  
 turn home; you did detain my son; they did retain a part  
*nir à la maison* *détenir* *fil* *retenir partie*  
 of the money.—C. I disowned what he said; he maintained  
*argent* *disconvenir de ce qu'il dit* —*tenir*  
 discipline in the army; we restrained the mob; you inter-  
*la* — *f* *dans* *armée* *contenir* *populace* *inter*  
 posed in the affair; they kept their promises.—D. I shall  
*venir dans* *affaire* *tenir* *promesse*

obtain the consent of the king; she will return to-night  
*obtenir consentement* *roi* *revenir ce soir*  
 from town; we shall attain our end; you will support your  
*de la ville* *parvenir à* *but* *soutenir*  
 rank; they will return in a few days.—E. I would maintain  
*rang* *revenir sous peu de jours* *entretenir*  
 my family; he would become a learned man; you would  
*famille* *devenir* \* *savant*  
 detain the captain; they would obtain what they ask.—  
*détenir capitaine* *obtenir ce qu'* *demande*  
 F. That I may relieve the wangs of that unfortunate family;  
*subvenir aux besoins* *malheureux famille*  
 that he may deceive his judges; that we may prevent the  
*circonvenir juges* *prévenir*  
 bad effects of the prejudices of their infancy; that you  
*mauvais effet* *préjugé* *enfance*  
 may agree that my reasons are better than yours; that they  
*raison meilleur que*  
 may attain the highest pitch of glory.—G. That I might  
*parvenir à plus haut comble in gloire*  
 obtain better terms from him; that she might become  
*de condition de*  
 more prudent; that we might sustain the weight of  
*plus* — *soutenir poids*  
 affliction with courage; that you might (come back) be-  
*l'* — *avec* — *revenir a*  
 fore the end of this month; that they might detain him  
*vant fin mois* *retenir*  
 till the beginning of next week.—H. Keep thy  
*jusqu'au commencement la prochain semaine f* *tenir*  
 word; let him become learned; let us prevent the mischief  
*parole f instruit mal pl.*  
 which could proceed from his imprudence; confess that  
*pourraient provenir de* — *convenir que*  
 you return too late; let them support the part of the  
*A trop tard soutenir parti*  
 innocent.  
 —pl

IRREGULAR VERBS IN OIR.

Asseoir, to sit. P. pr. asseyant. P. p. assis.

- A. Assieds, assieds, assied; asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.  
 B. Asseyais.—C. Assis.—D. Assièrai, or asseyerai.  
 E. Assièrais, or asseyerais.—F. Asseye.—G. Assisse.  
 H. Assieds.

This verb, and its compound *rasseoir*, to sit down again, are oftenest used as reflected verbs

Falloir, *to be necessary (impersonal)*. No *P. pr.* *P. p.* fallu.

- A. Il faut. — B. Il fallait. — C. Il fallut. — D. Il faudra.  
E. Il faudrait. — F. Qu'il faille. — G. Qu'il fallût. (*No Imp.*)

Mouvoir, *to move*. *P. pr.* mouvant. *P. p.* mu.

- A. Meus, meus, meut ; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.  
B. Mouvais. — C. Mus. — D. Mouvrai. — E. Montrais.  
F. Meuve, meuves, meuve ; mouvions, mouviez, meuver  
G. Musse. — H. Meus, meuve ; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

Conjugate in the same manner *émouvoir*, *to stir up* ; and *promouvoir*, *to promote*.

Pleuvoir, *to rain (impersonal)*. *P. pr.* Pleuvant. *P. p.* Plu.

- A. Il pleut. — B. Il pleuvait. — C. Il plut. — D. Il pleuvra.  
E. Il pleuvrait. — F. Qu'il pleuve. — G. Qu'il plût. (*No Imp.*)

Pouvoir, *to be able*. *P. pr.* pouvant. *P. p.* pu.

- A. Puis or peux, peux, peut ; pouvons, pouvez, peuvent.  
B. Pouvais. — C. Pus. — D. Pourrai. — E. Pourrais.  
F. Puisse. — G. Pusse. (*No Imperative*).

Savoir, *to know*. *P. pr.* sachant. *P. p.* Su.

- A. Sais, sais, sait ; savons, savez, savent. — B. Savais.  
C. Sus. — D. Saurai. — E. Saurais. — F. Sache. — G. Sussè.  
H. Sache, sache ; sachons, sachez, sachent.

Valoir, *to be worth*. *P. pr.* valant. *P. p.* valu.

- A. Vaux, vaux, vaut ; valons, valez, valent.  
B. Valais. — C. Valus. — D. Vaudrai. — E. Vaudrais.  
F. Vaille, vailles, vaille ; valions, valiez, vaillent.  
G. Valusse. — H. Vaux ; *pl.* valez.

Conjugate in the same manner, *équivaloir*, *to be equivalent*, and *revaloir*, *to return like for like* ; but *prévaloir*, *to prevail*, makes in the present of the subjunctive *que je prévale, tu prévalues, il prévale ; nous prévalions, vous prévaliez, ils prévalent*.

Voir, *to see*. *P. pr.* voyant. *P. p.* vu.

- A. Vois, vois, voit ; voyons, voyez, voient.  
B. Voyais. — C. Vis. — D. Verrai. — E. Verrais.  
F. Voie, voies, voie ; voyions, voyiez, voient. — G. Visse.  
H. Vois, voie ; voyons, voyez, voient.

Conjugate in the same manner *revoir*, *to see again*, and *entrevoir*, *to have a glimpse of*. *Prévoir*, *to foresee*, makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai, je prévoirais* ; the other tenses like *voir*. *Pourvoir*, *to provide*, makes in the preterite of the indicative *je pourvus* ; in the future, *je*

*pourvoirai*; in the conditional, *je pourvoirais*; and, in the preterite of the subjunctive, *je pourvusse*; the other tenses like *voir*. • *Surseoir*, to supersede, is also conjugated like *voir*; but it makes in the future and the conditional *je surseurai*, *je surseoirais*, in the pret. *je sursis*; and in the p. p. *sursis*.

*Vouloir*, *to be willing*. *P. pr. voulant*. *P. p. voulu*.

- A. *Veux*, *veux*, *veut*; *voulons*, *voulez*, *veulent*.  
 B. *Voulais*. — C. *Voulus*. — D. *Voudrai*. — E. *Voudrais*.  
 F. *Veuille*, *veuille*, *veuille*; *voulions*, *vouliez*, *veussent*.  
 G. *Voulusse*.

N.B. The imperative *veux*, *voulons*, *voulez*, is very seldom used. *Veillez* is used in the sense of, be so good as: example, *Veillez permettre que je me retire*, be so good as to allow me to depart.

A. I (have a glimpse of) something shining under  
*quelque chose de brillant sous*  
 the bed; thou (art not better) than thy brother; the  
*lit ne valoir pas mieux que*  
 spring which moves the machine is very simple; it is ne-  
*cessaire qui* — f — *fort* —  
 cessary to practise virtue, if we wish to be happy;  
 \* *pratiquer la vertu si l'on veut* 98 A *heureux*  
 we can be very useful to you on that occasion; you  
*pouvoir très utile 47 dans* —  
 do not know your lesson; they see that they were mistaken.  
 \* *leçon s'étaient trompés*

—B. I did foresee that you would not succeed; it did rain  
*réussir E*  
 yesterday; we could not (set off) sooner; you did prevail  
*lucr pouvoir partir plus tôt*  
 over us; they did (stir up) the passions of the audience. —  
*sur émouvoir auditeur pl*

C. I foresaw the dangerous consequences of that step;  
*dangereux — démarche f*  
 he (sat down) under the shade of a tree; we revised his  
*assoir à ombre arbre m revoir*  
 work before it was printed; you provided for the safety  
*ouvrage avant qu'on l'imprimât à sureté*  
 of your house; the judges did (put off) the execution of  
*maison juges surseoir dat.* —  
 the arrest that they had decreed. — D. I shall know how to  
*arrêt B rendre*

remunerate you for your diligence; (he shall suffer for it),  
*récompenser de — il me le rendrait*  
 we shall (sit down again) when they are gone; you will see  
*se rasseoir quand D partis*



better from this place; their apology will be equivalent to  
*mieux* — *excuse* pl  
 a refusal.—E. I would with all my heart oblige you in  
*refus* *vouloir* *de* *cœur* — *ger*  
 that affair; the king would promote him to a higher  
*affaire* f *roi* *plus haut*  
 office, if he would only seem to wish for it;  
*charge* f; *s'il* *vouloir* B *seulement* *paraître* \* *désirer* \* *la*  
 we should (put off) the pursuit of our designs; you would  
*surseoir* dat. *poursuite* f *dessein*  
 move the heart of that unfeeling man; they would  
*émouvoir* — *insensible*  
 provide for our wants.—F. That I may prevail upon his  
*à* *besoin* *sur la*  
 hard-heartedness: I do not think that it will rain to-day;  
*dureté de son cœur* *penser* F *aujourd'hui*  
 that we may see again those happy days; that you may  
*heureux jour*  
 move that stone; that their estates may be equivalent to  
*pierre* *terres*  
 ours.—G. That I might sit down among his judges; that  
*s'asseoir* *parmi* *juge*  
 it might be necessary to ask his pardon; that we  
 \* *lui demander* \* —  
 might comfort him; that you might know where to find  
*pouvoir consoler* *où* \* *trouver*  
 him; that those stockings might (be good for nothing).—  
*le* *bas* *ne valoir rien*  
 H. See the consequences of thy folly; let him provide for  
 — *folie* *à*  
 the happiness of his children; let us foresee the danger;  
*bonheur* *enfant* —  
 (sit down) by me; let them know three or four pages  
*s'asseoir* *auprès de* *trois ou quatre* —  
 of their catechism before dinner.  
*catéchisme avant le dîner.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN EVOIR.

Rec-evoir, to receive. P. *pr.* rec-avant. P. *p.* reçu.

- A. Reçois, reçois, reçoit; recevons, recevez, reçoivent.  
 B. Recevais. — C. Reçus. — D. Recevrai. — E. Recevrais.  
 F. Reçoive. — G. Reçusse. — H. Reçois, reçoive; recevons,  
 recevez, reçoivent.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in  
*evoir*.

A. I perceive how that has happened; he perceives your  
*concevoir comment cela est arrivé* • *apercevoir*  
intention; we owe ten pounds to your father; you receive  
— *devoir dix livre* •  
a letter; they perceive the danger. — B. I did receive my  
*lettre f* *apercevoir* — *percevoir*  
revenues; he did (owe still) a great sum; we did frustrate  
— *nu* • *redevoir* • *somme* *décevoir*  
his hopes; we did owe two thousand pounds; you did  
*espérance* *devoir* *mille livre*  
perceive his atrocity; they did receive his compliments  
*apercevoir* — *té* • —  
with contempt. — C. I received a visit from your sister;  
*mépris* *visite f de* *sœur*  
she conceived great hopes; we perceived a thief; you re-  
*concevoir de* • *apercevoir* *voleur*  
ceived (yesterday) a great sum of money; they conceived a  
*hier* *somme argent*  
great horror for his conduct. — D. I shall receive a letter  
*horreur de* *conduite f* *lettre f*  
from France in a few days; he will owe me two hundred  
*sous peu de jours* *cents*  
pounds at the death of my mother; we shall receive a re-  
*livre à mort* *ré-*  
ward for that brilliant action; you will easily perceive  
*compense pour cette brillant* — *apercevoir aisément*  
if they be guilty; they will conceive a new project. — E. I  
*s'ils* A *coupables* • *nouveau projet\**  
would receive his advice; he should write to his brother;  
*avis* *devoir écrire* *frère*  
we should perceive if he said the truth; you ought to do  
*apercevoir s'il dit* *vérité* *devoir \* faire*  
your exercise; they would receive your presents with joy.  
*thème* *présent* *joie*  
— F. That I may perceive the defects of that work; that he  
*défauts* *ouvrage*  
may owe more than he possesses; that we may conceive a  
• *plus qu'il ne posséder A*  
sentence which perhaps the author himself does not con-  
*phrase f que peut-être auteur lui-même \* ne*  
ceive; that you may receive unjust taxes; that they  
A *pas* *percevoir des injuste impôt*  
may receive that company with great respect. — G. That I  
*compagnie* *grand* — •  
might (owe still) a trifle; that he might deceive his  
*bagatelle* *décevoir*  
friend by fine promises; that we might owe respect to  
• *par de beau promesse* • *du* —

his misfortunes; that they might conceive the depth of  
*malheur* *profondeur*  
 his plan; that you might perceive the castle (from such a  
*château de si*  
 distance).—H. Receive my thanks for all thy kindness;  
*loin* *remerciement de toutes bonté* pl  
 let him receive the interest of that money; let us conceive  
*percevoir intérêt argent*  
 the importance of our duties; receive that stranger with  
*devoirs étranger*  
 affection; let them conceive how far their imprudence will  
*jusqu'où*  
 take them  
*mener* D

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN AIRE.

Faire, to do, to make. *P. pr.* faisant. *P. p.* fait.

- A. Fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font.—B. Faisais.  
 C. Fis.—D. Ferai.—E. Ferais.—F. Fasse.—G. Fisse.  
 H. Fais, fasse; faisons, faites, fassent.

Conjugate in the same manner *contrefaire*, to counterfeit,  
 to mimic; *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; *satisfaire*,  
 to satisfy; *surfaire*, to ask too much; and *redéfaire*, to undo  
 again.

Traire, to milk. *Ger.* trayant. *Part.* trait.

- A. Trais, trais, trait; trayons, trayez, traient.  
 B. Trayais. (*No Pret.*)—D. Trairai.—E. Trairais.  
 F. Traie. (*No Pret.*)—H. Trais.

Conjugate in the same manner, *attirer*, to allure; *abs-  
 traire*, to abstract; *distraindre*, to distract; *extraire*, to extract;  
*retraire*, to fine-draw; *retraire*, to redeem; and *soustraire*, to  
 subtract, to withdraw.

- A. I do no harm; she milks her cows; we satisfy our  
*ne pas de mal* *vache*  
 masters; you (ask too much) for that meadow; they extract  
*maître* *prairie*  
 all the finest passages of that work.—B. I was undoing all  
*plus beau* — *ouvrage* *toutes*  
 the seams of my gown; he distracted his school-fellows;  
*couture* *robe* f' *camarades*

we subtracted the fourth of the sum; you did fine-draw  
*quart* *somme*  
the tapestry; they did attract the birds. — c. I (made again)  
*tapisserie* *oiseau* *refaire*  
a journey to Paris; he (got rid) of the false opinion he had  
*le voyage de* — *se défaire* *faux* — *qu'il* b  
conceived of their merit; we (undid again) five or six times  
*conçue* *mérite* in *cinq ou* — *fois*  
the same hem; you made a great mistake; they mimicked  
*même ourlet* *méprise* f  
the singularities of that (young lady.) — d. I shall redeem that  
*ridicule* *demoiselle*  
land; he will abstract from those bodies all the accessory  
*terre* *corps* *accessoire*  
qualities; we shall satisfy you (as much as) we can; you  
*—té* *autant que* *pouvoir* d  
will not withdraw those guilty persons from the rigour of  
*soustraire* *coupable* \* (dat.) *rigueur*  
the laws; they will not distract me from my studies. —  
*loi* *étude*  
E. I would not do it for (any thing) in the world; she  
*ne* *le pour rien* (dat.) *monde* in  
would fine-draw her gown; we would withdraw our pupils  
*robe* f *élève*  
from the dangers of bad companies; you would extract  
(dat.) — *des mauvais compagnie*  
the salts of these plants; they would distract us by their  
*sel* *plante* *par*  
prattle. — F. That I may (ask too much) for that muslin; that  
*babil* \* *mousseline* f  
salt may attract pigeons; that we may satisfy you in  
*le sel* *les* — *en*  
(every thing); that you may not (get rid) of your prejudices;  
*tout* *se défaire* *préjugé*  
that they may not do again their exercises. — G. That I might  
*thème*  
not (undo again) my work; that he might not (ask too much)  
*ouvrage*  
for his goods; that we might (take again) a walk; that  
\* *marchandise* *refaire* *promenade*  
you might not mimic every body; that they might not make  
*tout le monde*  
any noise. — H. Milk thy goats; let us satisfy our parents;  
*de bruit* *chèvre* \*  
pay more attention to your writing.  
*faire plus de* — *écriture*

Pl-airé, to please. *P. pr.* pl-aisant. *P. p.* pl-u.

- A. Plais, plais, plaît ; plaisons, plaisez, plaisent.  
 B. Plaisais.—C. Plus.—D. Plairai.—E. Plairais.  
 F. Plaise.—G. Plusse.—H. Plais.

Conjugate in the same manner all other verbs terminated in *airé*.

A. I please all the family; he (is silent) when I speak;  
*à tout famille se taire quand A*  
 we (are displeased) in that situation; you (take pleasure) in  
*nous déplaire dans — vous plaire à*  
 contradicting; they delight in their works.—B. I did  
*contredire se complaire ouvrage*  
 (remain silent) against my wish; he did please every body;  
*me taire contre gré à tout le monde*  
 we did displease, the governor; you did delight in your  
*deplaire au gouverneur vous complaire*  
 vices; they did conceal the truth.—C. I (was pleased) with  
*— taire vérité me plaire à*  
 doing that; he displeased by his haughtiness; we (re-  
*faire cela arrogance*  
 mained silent) (in spite of ourselves); you displeased your  
*nous taire malgré nous à*  
 uncle; they delighted in tormenting me.—D. (I will be  
*oncle se plaire à me tourmenter me*  
 silent); he will please the king; we shall (be pleased) with  
*taire au roi nous plaire avec*  
 him; you will displease my mother; these books will please  
*lui déplaire à livre*  
 me.—E. (I would be pleased) with reading; his friend would  
*me plaire à lire ami*  
 displease me; we would conceal that event; you would  
*événement*  
 (be pleased) with talking with him; his manners would  
*vous plaire à converser avec manières*  
 please you.—F. That I may please by my condescension;  
*par —douce*  
 that she may displease by her spirit of contradiction;  
*esprit • —*  
 that we may conceal the true motives of his conduct,  
*vrai motif conduite*  
 that you may delight in tormenting every one; that  
*vous plaire à tourmenter tout le monde*  
 their answers may displease every virtuous man.—G. That  
*réponse à tout vertueux*

I might (remain silent) when I am (so much) offended; that  
*me* *quand* *tellement* *outragé*  
 my son might please you; that we might displease by our  
*fil*  
 sincerity; that you might delight in your faults; that  
*—lé* *vous complaire* *défauts*  
 those beautiful descriptions might please at every time.—H.  
*superbe* *en tout temps*  
 Please by thy submission; let him conceal the greatest  
*soumission* *plus grand*  
 part of what he has heard; let us (be pleased) in cultivating  
*partie* *ce qu'* *A entendu* *se plaire à* *—ver*  
 sciences; (hold your tongues):  
*les* *—* *se taire*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN AITRE AND OITRE.

Naitre, to be born. *P. pr.* naissant. *P. p.* né.

- A. Nais, nais, naît; naissons, naissez, naissent.  
 B. Naissais. — C. Naquis. — D. Naîtrai. — E. Naîtrais.  
 F. Naisse. — G. Naquisse. — H. Nais.

Conjugate in the same manner *renaitre*, to be born again.

Paitre, to graze. *P. pr.* paissant. *P. p.* pu.

- A. Pais, pais, paît; paissions, paisez, paissent.  
 B. Paissais. (no *pret.*) — D. Paîtrai. — E. Paîtrais. — F. Paisse.  
 (no *pret.*) — H. Pais.

Conjugate in the same manner its compound *repaitre*, to feed; but it makes in the preterit of the indicative, *je repus*, and in the preterit of the subjunctive, *je repusse*.

- A. That man thirsts (after nothing but) blood and  
*ne se repaître que de* *sang*  
 slaughter; we are all born liable to many infirmities.—  
*de carnage* *sujet beaucoup de* *—tés*  
 B. Hope revived in his heart; their flocks fed on the  
*l'espérance renaitre dans* *cœur* *troupeau paitre\**  
 tender grass.—C. Virgil was born at Mantua; those fools  
*tendre herbe f* *Virgile* *• • à Mantouc* *insensé*  
 (fed themselves) upon chimeras.—D. Arts and sciences  
*se repaître de* *chimère* *les — les —*  
 will revive under his reign.—E. Could that man feast his  
*renaitre sous* *92 repaître*

eyes on that cruel sight?—F. I wish that happiness may  
*œil de spectacle souhaiter le bonheur*  
 revive for him.—G. I did not think that he might feast his  
*reparaître pour penser B repaître*  
 imagination with that hope.  
 — *de espoir.*

Conn-aître, to know. *P. pr.* conn-aissant. *P. p.* conn-u.

A. Connais, connais, connaît; connaissons, connaissez, connaissent.—B. Connaisais.—C. Connûs.—D. Connaitrai.—E. Connaitrais.—F. Connaisse.—G. Connusse.—H. Connais, connaisse.

Conjugate in the same manner all other verbs terminated in *aître* and *oître*.

A. I know your father; he forgets his friends; we increase our income; you appear very dull; they appear and *méconnaître amis ac-*  
*croître revenu paraître très-triste*  
 disappear in a moment.—B. I did (entertain myself) with *disparaître dans — me repaître de*  
 that hope; his mare did graze in the park; we did appear *espoir jument f paître parc comparaître*  
 before the judges; you did (not recognize) your hand-  
*devant juge méconnaître écri-*  
 writing; they did (appear again) upon the stage.—C. I *ture repaître sur théâtre m*  
 knew your sister when she spoke; she knew the world *reconnaître sœur quand parler c monde m*  
 before you; we appeared in public; you appeared *avant en public*  
 dissatisfied; they knew their horse again.—D. I will know *mécontent reconnaître cheval \**  
 (the whole business); she will appear handsomer; we shall *toute l'affaire plus beau*  
 grow this year; they will know your father and mother.—  
*croître année père votre mère*  
 E. I would acknowledge your innocence; she would grow *reconnaître —*  
 every day, if she were not ill; we would know the forces *tous les jours n'était pas malade —*  
 of the enemy; you would appear older than I; they would *ennemi plus âgé que moi*  
 know the truth.—F. That I may know my duty; that she *vérité devoir*

may acknowledge her errors ; that we may appear before  
 that tribunal ; that you may disappear for some time ; that  
 — *erreur* *comparaître devant*  
 they may know me. — G. That I might know him after an  
 — *pour quelque temps*  
 absence of several years ; that he might (not acknowledge)  
 — *reconnaître* *après*  
 his friends since his preferment ; that we might increase our  
 — *plusieurs années* *méconnaître*  
 possessions ; that you might (appear again) in your  
 — *ami depuis agrandissement*  
 (native country) ; that these trees might grow rapidly. —  
 — *patrie* *arbre* *rapidement*  
 H. Acknowledge thy imprudence ; let her appear more  
 — *qu'elle* *plus*  
 reserved ; let us increase every day our reputation  
*réserve* *tous les jours* —  
 by new acts of courage ; know all the extent of your  
*par de nouveau acte* — *toute étendue*  
 folly ; let them appear joyful and satisfied.  
*folie.* *joyeux* *content.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN OIRE, URE, IRE.

*Boire, to drink. P. pr. buvant. P. p. bu.*

- A. Bois, bois, boit ; buvons, buvez, boivent.  
 B. Buvais. — C. Bus. — D. Boirai. — E. Boirais.  
 F. Boive, boives, boive ; buvions, buviez, boivent.  
 G. Busse. — H. Bois, boive ; buvons, buvez, boivent.

Conjugate in the same manner *reboire*, to drink again.

*Conclure, to conclude. P. pr. concluant. P. p. conclu.*

- A. Conclue, conclus, conclut ; conclu -ons, -ez, -ent.  
 B. Concluais. — C. Conclus. — D. Conclurai. — E. Conclurais.  
 F. Conclue. — G. Conclusse. — H. Conclus.

Conjugate in the same manner *exclure*, to exclude.

*Confire, to pickle. P. pr. confisant. P. p. confit.*

- A. Confis, confis, confit ; confis -ons, -ez, -ent.  
 B. Confisais. — C. Confis. — D. Confirai. — E. Confirais.  
 F. Confise. — G. Confisse. — H. Confis.

Conjugate in the same manner *circoncire*, to circumcise,

\* See "Thibaudin's French Verbs," Obser. No. 11.





cucumbers; we did contradict that news; you did  
*des concombres* *nouvelle*  
 read again my letter; they did forbid him the entrance of  
*lettre f* *lui* *l'entrée*  
 their house.—C. A ray of hope conducted us in the midst  
*maison* *rayon* *conduire* *à* *milieu*  
 of our misfortunes; he smiled at him as a sign of approba-  
*malheur* *\* lui en \* signe*  
 tion; we foretold those disasters; you did hurt your  
*désastre* *à*  
 interests; they elected an honest man for their representa-  
*intérêt* *honnête* *pour* *représen-*  
 tive.—D. I will not drink again of that liquor; he will ex-  
*tant* *liqueur*  
 clude his son from his succession; we shall not slander  
*filz* *ne* *de*  
 any one; you will conclude, if you like, that we are wrong;  
*personne* *vouloir A* *avoir tort*  
 the Rabbins will circumcise several children to-morrow.—E. I  
*plusieurs enfant* *demain*  
 would not contradict you in any manner; that would not  
*ne* *dédire* *en aucun manière cela*  
 suffice me; that diamond would not shine (so much), if it  
*diamant* *reluire* *tant* *s'il*  
 were not pure; we should laugh at his expense; you would  
*B* *fin* *à ses dépens*  
 hurt me more than you think; they would preserve  
*plus* *ne croire A* *confire des*  
 peaches with brandy.—F. That I may exclude him from  
*pêche* *à l'eau-de-vie*  
 my company; that he may read attentively; that we may  
*compagnie* *—ment*  
 drink with sobriety; that you may elect a president; that  
*avec.* *—été* *pré—*  
 they may curse their perverseness.—G. That I might read  
*—sité*  
 again that poem; that she might slander her best friends;  
*poème* *médire de meilleur ami f*  
 that we might suffice to ourselves; that you might tell a  
*se suffire* *nous-mêmes*  
 falsehood; that they might drink the health of the king.—H.  
*fausseté* *à* *santé* *roi*  
 Conclude thy speech; let him smile to his mother; let us  
*discours* *mere* *ne*  
 curse nobody; tell me again your adventure.  
*personne* *aventure.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN CRIRE.

Ecr-ire, to write. *P. pr.* écr-iv-ant. *P. p.* écr-it.

- A. Ecris, écris, écrit; écrivons, écrivez, écrivent.  
 B. Ecrivais.—C. Ecrivis.—D. Ecrirai.—E. Ecrirais.  
 F. Ecrive.—G. Ecriviss-.—H. Ecris, écrive.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *crire*.

A. I transcribe my exercise; he inscribes his name in a register; we subscribe for your work; you prescribe more than I can do; they circumscribe his authority in narrow limits.—B. I did write every day to my sister, who did answer me very seldom; we did transcribe all your letters; you did consent to every thing he said; they did describe a horrid tempest.—C. I wrote last week to my attorney, who answered me yesterday; we proscribed every delay in that affair; you inscribed the names of persons unknown to every one; they proscribed all their enemies.—D. I will prescribe nothing without your advice; he will subscribe to (every thing) you wish; we will transcribe his memorial; you will (write again) your exercise; they will describe what they have seen.—E. I would transcribe all that work; he would (write again) his letter; we would proscribe vicious people from our society; you would write better if you were more attentive; they would order their scholars to study more attentively.—F. That I may describe all the charms of that beautiful landscape; that he may circumscribe our power; that we may write upon that subject;

—*crire* *thème* m —*écrire* *nom* dans  
*—tre* m *souscrire* pour *ouvrage* *prescrire* plus  
*que ne puis faire* *circonscrire* *autorité* dans d'*étroites*  
*limites* *tous les jours* *sœur*  
*récrire* *très-rarement* *lettre* f  
*souscrire* à tout ce qu'il disait *décrire*  
*horrible* *tempête* f *la semaine dernière* *procureur*  
*récrire* *hier* —*crire* tout *délai*  
*affaire* f *nom* *personnes inconnues* de  
*tout le monde* *ennemi* *ne*  
*rien* *sans* *avis*  
*tout ce que* *désirer* A *mémoire* m  
*récrire* *thème*  
*ce qu'* A *vu* *ouvrage*  
*les gens vicieux* *société* *mieux*  
*si* B —*tif* *prescrire* à *écolier*  
*d'étudier* —*ment* *tous*  
*charme* m *superbe* *paysage*  
*pouvoir* *sur* *sujet*

that you may inscribe all the principal inhabitants among  
 tous — habitant parmi  
 your subscribers; that they may prescribe unjust orders.  
 souscripteur des injuste ordre  
 —G. That I might proscribe all vain splendour from that  
 — pompe f  
 ceremony; that she might (write again) her novel; that we  
 cérémonie roman  
 might accept the conditions they prescribe; that you might  
 souscrire (dat.) — qu'ils A  
 transcribe anew all the regular verbs of your grammar;  
 de nouveau tous régulier verbe m grammare  
 that they might write in a legible manner. — H. Inscribe my  
 de lisible manière  
 name immediately after thine; let him describe more  
 nom — ment après plus  
 clearly the circumstances of that event; let us circum-  
 clairement circonstances événement  
 scribe our wishes in the limits of uprightness; transcribe  
 desir la droiture  
 two or three pages of that book; let them proscribe every  
 deux ou trois — livre m toute  
 affection from their writings.  
 — écrit

# IRREGULAR VERBS IN UIRE.

Instr-uire, *to instruct*. *P. pr.* instr-uisant. *P. p.* instr-uit.

- A. Instruis, instruis, instruit; instruisons, instruisez,  
 instruisent.  
 B. Instruisais. — C. Instruisis. — D. Instruirai.  
 E. Instruirais. — F. Instruise. — G. Instruisisse. — H. Instruis.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in *uire*.

A. I instruct youth; she leads them into error; we  
 la jeunesse induire en erreur  
 translate English into French; you seduce the ignorant  
 traduire l'Anglais en Français séduire — pl  
 by your discourses; these trees produce good apples every  
 par discours arbres — duire de pomme tous  
 year. — B. I did introduce a new custom; he did destroy the  
 les ans — duire nouveau coutume f détruire  
 wall; we did build a ship; you did conduct the enterprise;  
 mur construire vaisseau conduire entreprise  
 they did produce their title. — C. I deducted the expenses;  
 titre déduire dépense

he behaved very well; we translated their work; you  
*se conduire très-bien*      *ouvrage*  
 seduced the witnesses; they led young people into error  
*témoin*      *induire les jeunes gens en erreur*  
 —D. I shall convey the water into<sup>the</sup> the meadow; he will  
*conduire*      *est dans*      *prairie*  
 construct a palace; we will reduce your brother to silence;  
*construire palais*      *réduire*      *frère au* —  
 you will instruct their children; they will destroy the  
*enfant*  
 fortifications.—E. I would translate Italian; he would in-  
    *l'italien*  
 troduce my son to the Court; we would reconduct  
*fil*      *Cour*      *—duire*  
 you home; you should plaster the wall; they would  
*à la maison*      *enduire*      *mur*  
 produce a good effect.—F. That I may dress that meat; that  
*effet*      *cuire*      *viande f*  
 he may refuse his brother; that we may hurt your interests;  
*éconduire*      *frère*      *nuire à*      *intérêt*  
 that you may (show home) that lady; that these diamonds  
*reconduire*      *dame*      *diamant*  
 may shine in the dark.—G. That I might (produce again)  
*reluire dans obscurité*      *reproduire*  
 the papers of my family; that he might (plaster anew) the  
*papier*      *famille*      *renduire*  
 outside of his house; that we might introduce a new  
*extérieur*      *maison*      *nouveau*  
 custom; that you might instruct youth in true  
*coutume f*      *la jeunesse dans la vrai*  
 religion; that they might seduce by their modest exterior.  
    *modeste extérieur m*  
 —H. Translate thy exercises more literally; let him deduct  
*thème*      *plus littéralement*  
 at least the half of that sum; let us manage our affairs  
*au moins*      *moitié*      *somme*      *conduire*      *affaire*  
 with more circumspection; introduce that history in your  
*avec plus de circonspection*      *histoire dans*  
 new work; let them destroy all obstacles.  
*nouvel ouvrage*      *tous les* —

## IRREGULAR VERBS IN TRE, DRE, PRE, VRE, CRE.

Battre, to beat. *P. pr.* battant. *P. p.* battu.

- A. Bats, bats, bat; battons, battez, battent.—B. Battais.  
 C. Battis.—D. Battrai.—E. Battrais.—F. Batte.  
 G. Battisse.—H. Bata.

Conjugate in the same manner *abattre*, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight, and *rebattre*, to beat again.

*Coudre*, to sew. *P. pr.* cousant. *P. p.* cousu.

- A. Couds, couds, coud; cousons, cousez, cousent.
- B. Cousais.—C. Cousis.—D. Couffrai.—E. Coudrais.
- F. Couse.—G. Cousisse.—H. Couds.

Conjugate in the same manner *découdre*, to unsew and *recoudre*, to sew over again.

*Mettre*, to put. *P. pr.* mettant. *P. p.* mis.

- A. Mets, mets, met; mettons, mettez, mettent.
- B. Mettais.—C. Mis.—D. Mettrai.—E. Mettrais.—F. Mette.
- G. Misse.—H. Mets.

Conjugate in the same manner *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *démettre*, to turn out, to disjoint; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit; *promettre*, to promise; *remettre*, to put again, to restore, to replace; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit, and *s'entremettre*, to intermeddle.

*Moudre*, to grind. *P. pr.* moulant. *P. p.* moulu.

- A. Mouds, mouds, moud; moulons, moulez, moulent.
- B. Moulais.—C. Moulus.—D. Moudrai.—E. Moudrais.
- F. Moule.—G. Moulusse.—H. Mouds.

Conjugate in the same manner *émoudre*, to grind (razors, knives, &c.), and *remoudre*, to grind again.

*Prendre*, to take. *P. pr.* prenant. *P. p.* pris.

- A. Prends, prends, prend; prenons, prenez, prennent.
- B. Prenais.—C. Pris.—D. Prendrai.—E. Prendrais.
- F. Prenn-e, -es, -e; pren-ions, -iez, prennent.—G. Prisse.
- H. Prends, prenne; pren-ons, -ez, prennent.

Conjugate in the same manner *apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to comprehend, to understand; *déprendre*, to lose, to part; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to mistake, to be deceived; *reprandre*, to take again, to reply, to chide, and *surprendre*, to surprise.

Résoudre, to resolve. *P. pr.* résolvant. *P. p.* résolu or résous.

- A. Résous, résous, résout; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.  
 B. Résolvais.—C. Résolus.—D. Résoudrai.—E. Résoudrais.  
 F. Résolve.—G. Résolusse.—H. Résous.

Conjugate in the same manner *absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve; but they have no preterit either in the indicative or in the subjunctive; their participles are *absous*, *dissous*.

Rompre, to break. *P. pr.* rompant. *P. p.* rompu.

- A. Romps, romps, rompt; romp -ons, -ez, -ent.  
 B. Rompais.—C. Rompis.—D. Romprai.—E. Romprais.  
 F. Rompe.—G. Rompisse.—H. Romps.

Conjugate in the same manner *corrompre*, to corrupt, and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

Suivre, to follow. *P. pr.* suivant. *P. p.* suivi.

- A. Suis, suis, suit; suivons, suivez, suivent.—B. Suivais.  
 C. Suivis.—D. Suivrai.—E. Suivrais.—F. Suive.  
 G. Suivisse.—H. Suis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'ensuire*, to ensue, only used in the third persons of every tense, and *poursuivre*, to pursue.

Vaincre, to conquer. *P. pr.* vainquant. *P. p.* vaincu.

- A. Vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vainqu -ons, -ez, -ent.  
 B. Vainquais.—C. Vainquis.—D. Vaincrai.—E. Vaincrais.  
 F. Vainque.—G. Vanquisse.—H. Vaincs.

Conjugate in the same manner *convaincre*, to convince.

Vivre, to live. *P. pr.* vivant. *P. p.* vécu.

- A. Vis, vis, vit; vivons, vivez, vivent.  
 B. Vivais.—C. Vécus.—D. Vivrai.—E. Vivrais.  
 F. Vive.—G. Vécusse.—H. Vis.

Conjugate in the same manner *revivre*, to revive, and *survivre*, to survive.

A. I admit that principle; 'thou takest (too much) trouble; the wood which is burnt resolves itself into ashes  
*—pe in trop de*  
*peine bois qu' on brûle se résoudre \* en cendre*

and smoke; we submit ourselves to your decision; you  
*en fumée se soumettre \* dé—*  
 surprise me (very much); strong waters dissolve metals.  
*beaucoup les fort eau les métal*  
 —B. I did fight for my country; thou didst not follow the  
*pour pays*  
 lessons of thy tutor; that did not convince me; we did  
*leçons précepteur cela se*  
 compromise ourselves to serve him; you did pursue an in-  
*—mettre \* pour servir*  
 nocent person; they did omit an essential duty.—C. I ground  
*—m \* —tiel devoir*  
 all the coffee; thou didst not learn thy lesson; he did not  
*café leçon*  
 out-live that misfortune; we promised him a reward; you  
*survivre à malheur lui récompense*  
 interrupted his sleep; they transmitted their glory to their  
*sommeil gloire*  
 posterity.—D. I will not intermeddle in their dispute; thou  
*postérité de —*  
 shalt conquer thy enemies; he will grind again the grain;  
*ennemi —*  
 we shall permit you to go to the fair; you will unlearn  
*de aller faire f*  
 all that you have learnt; you see the consequences that  
*tout ce que voir — qu*  
 will ensue.—E. I should grind my razors; thou wouldst  
*rasoir se*  
 disjoint thy leg; he would not understand that expla-  
*démordre la jambe expli-*  
 nation; we should convince him; you would absolve  
*cation*  
 them; they would pull down their castle.—F. That I may  
*château*  
 (be deceived) upon that point; that she may sew her gown;  
*sur — robe f*  
 that he may commit the crime; that we may break the  
*—m*  
 truce; that you may thrash the corn; that fathers may  
*trêve f battre blé les père*  
 revive in their children.—G. That I might undertake that  
*dans enfant*  
 journey; that she might sew again that hem; that we might  
*voyage ourlet*  
 put more order in our affairs; that you might live more  
*plus d'ordre affaire*  
 regularly; that they might beat again these mattresses.  
*régulièrement matelas*



—H. Put again all thy books in their place; let her unsew  
*livre m à* —  
 this whip; let us not corrupt the morals of youth; chide  
*surjet mœurs la jeunesse*  
 your pupils for their faults; let them resolve to suffer  
*élève de défaut se résoudre souffrir*  
 much.  
*beaucoup.*

### IRREGULAR VERBS IN INDRE.

Crai-ndre, to fear. *P. pr.* crai-gnant. *P. p.* crai-nt.

- A. Crains, crains, crait; craignons, craignez, craignent.  
 B. Craignais.—C. Craignis.—D. Craindrai.—E. Craindrais.  
 F. Craigne.—G. Craignisse.—H. Crains, craigne.

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs terminated in  
*aindre, cindre, and oindre.*

A. I fear my master; she extinguishes the fire; we pity  
*éteindre feu plaindre*  
 the unfortunate; you paint very well; they complain of  
*malheureux pl peindre très-bien se plaindre*  
 every body.—B. I did fear your anger; he did pity my  
*tout le monde colère f*  
 sister; we did dye the silk; you did constrain my cousin to  
*sœur teindre soie contraindre à*  
 sell his house; they did paint a shipwreck.—C. I feigned  
*vendre maison naufrage feindre*  
 to be sick; he transgressed the laws of his country; we  
*d'être malade enfreindre lois pays*  
 joined hands; you (put out) the candles; they compelled  
*joindre les mains éteindre chandelle contraindre*  
 their son to learn mathematics.—D. I will enjoin  
*fils à apprendre les mathématiques enjoindre*  
 the servant to stay at home; she will transgress  
*au domestique de rester à la maison*  
 your orders; we will paint our room; you will pity their  
*ordre chambre*  
 folly; they will fear to be discovered.—E. I would compel  
*folie d'être découverts*  
 the enemy to fight; he would fear to displease his mas-  
*ennemi à combattre de déplaire à*  
 ter; we would feign (to believe them); you would paint  
*de les croire*  
 very well; they would infringe the constitution.—F. That  
*très-bien enfreindre*

I may join my efforts to yours; that her aunt may fear  
 the effects of her levity; that we may compel him to  
 alter his conduct; that you may pity his fate; that  
 they may pity his misfortune.—G. That I might join my  
 opinion to that of the other judges; that he might draw  
 your picture; that we might feign to be satisfied with  
 him; that you might fear those spectres; that they might  
 dye that cloth in black.—H. Fear God during all thy life;  
 let him paint his house anew; let us enjoin our children  
 to respect (old people); compel him to follow your advice;  
 let them fear my anger.

## VERBS IN NDRE, AND RDRE

Ven-dre, to sell. P. pr. ven-dant. P. p. ven-du.

- A. Vends, vends, vend; vendons, vendez, vendent.  
 B. Vendais.—C. Vendis.—D. Vendrai.—E. Vendrais.  
 F. Vende.—G. Vendissc.—H. Vends, vende.

Conjugate in the same manner all the verbs terminated in ndre, endre, erdre, ondre, and ordre.

A. I expect company to-day; he answers impudently;  
 we hear a great noise; you defend your country; they spill  
 human blood.—B. I did suspend my judgment; that dog  
 did bite every body; we did spread terror every where; you  
 did aim in vain at that place; they did (take down) their  
 bed.—C. I sold my house; he condescended to her desires;  
 we melted the lead; you lost your time yesterday; they

stretched their arms.—D. I will answer in few words; he

*tendre les bras répondre en peu de mots*  
will hear what they say; we shall lose our friends; you  
*entendre ce qu' disent perdre ami*  
will shear your sheep; they will sell their country-house.

*tondre brebis pl maison de campagne*

—E. I would confound his pride; he would wait for an

*confondre orgueil attendre \**

answer; we would defend that honest man (at the hazard)

*réponse f honnête homme au péril*

of our life; you would render justice to every body; they

*vie rendre à tout le monde*

would hang the rebels.—F. That I may wait his return with

*pendre rebelle attendre retour avec*

impatience; that he may confound these notions one with

— *l'une*

another; that we may waste our time about trifles; that

*l'autre perdre temps à des bagatelle*

you may throw the graces of expression into your speeches;

*répandre — l' — dans discours*

that they may sell their incense to the pride of a blockhead.

*encens orgueil sot*

—G. That I might aim at an honest end; that he might

*tendre à honnête but*

(come down) at the first order; that we might hear the

*descendre premier ordre m*

music of the new opera; that you might recompose a

*musique f nouvel — refondre*

work so full of errors; that they might correspond with

*ouvrage plein erreur — pondre*

their relations.—H. Hear their justification; let him (come

*parent s —*

down) immediately; let us expect our happiness from our-

*sur-le-champ attendre bonheur nous-*

selves; ye sovereigns, make the people happy; let them

*mêmes \* souverain rendre peuple m heureux*

answer your letters.

*à lettre.*

### EXERCISE upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

Combinations of the auxiliary verbs with a participle are called compound tenses: as, *j'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *je suis venu*, I have come.

When a participle is preceded by any tense of the verb *être*, it agrees in French with the noun antecedent in gender and number, few cases excepted: as. *mon frère est estimé*,

ma sœur est *estimée*; mes frères sont *estimés*, mes sœurs sont *estimées*. When the participle comes after any tense of the verb *avoir*, it is only declinable in French in the cases mentioned in rule 143. In the following exercise it will be declinable after the verb *être*, and indeclinable after *avoir*. The feminine and plural of participles are formed like those of adjectives, p. 14.

I have spoken to the queen of England; the law is abolished; we have slept <sup>3</sup>very <sup>1</sup>well<sup>2</sup>; we have (found out) his fraud; his fraud is found out; we are come to dine with you; you have received a letter; the letters are received; we have concealed that affair; that affair was concealed; we have (put out) the candles; the candles are put out; we have understood their intentions; their intentions were known; you have translated many English books into French; many English books are translated into French; I have sold my horses; my horses are sold; he has written his answer; his answer is written; she has sung a pretty song; the song was well sung; I had built a house; my house was built; we had foreseen these misfortunes; you had served your friends; your friends were gone; they have offered a reward; a reward was offered; they had obtained his favour; his pardon was obtained; we had perceived the enemies; the enemies were perceived; I have known your sister; your sisters are well known; we have reduced your sisters to silence; your sisters were reduced to silence; you have sealed the letter; the letter

A parler • • reine Angleterre loi A abo-  
lished; we have slept <sup>3</sup>very <sup>1</sup>well<sup>2</sup>; we have (found out)  
lir A dormir très-bien A découvrir  
his fraud; his fraud is found out; we are come to dine with  
—de f A venir \* dîner.  
you; you have received a letter; the letters are received;  
A recevoir lettre f A  
we have concealed that affair; that affair was concealed;  
A taire affaire f C •  
we have (put out) the candles; the candles are put out;  
A éteindre chandelle A  
we have understood their intentions; their intentions were  
A connaître — •B  
known; you have translated many English books into  
connaître A traduire plusieurs anglais livre m en  
French; many English books are translated into French;  
Français A  
I have sold my horses; my horses are sold; he has written  
A vendre cheval • A A écrire  
his answer; his answer is written; she has sung a pretty  
réponse f A A chanter joli  
song; the song was well sung; I had built a house;  
chanson C B bâtir maison  
my house was built; we had foreseen these misfortunes;  
B B pressentir malheurs  
you had served your friends; your friends were gone;  
B servir amis B partir  
they have offered a reward; a reward was offered; they  
• A offrir récompense • C  
had obtained his favour; his pardon was obtained; we  
B obtenir faveur grâce C  
had perceived the enemies; the enemies were perceived;  
B apercevoir ennemi pl C  
I have known your sister; your sisters are well known; we  
A • connaître sœur • A  
have reduced your sisters to silence; your sisters were re-  
A réduire au — C  
duced to silence; you have sealed the letter; the letter  
A cacheter lettre f

is sealed; they had filled the bottles; the bottles were filled;  
 A B *remplir* bouteille B  
 they had detained my sisters; my sisters were detained;  
 B *détenir* C  
 we have joined the two parts together; the two parts are  
 A *joindre* partie ensemble A  
 joined together; they had acknowledged my innocence;  
 B *reconnaître* —  
 my innocence was acknowledged; we have introduced this  
 C A — *duire*  
 custom; this custom was introduced; you have corrupted  
*coutume* f C a A *séduire*  
 the witnesses; the witnesses are corrupted; they had  
*témoin* A B  
 answered to my questions; your letters were received.  
*répondre* — *lettre* f C *recevoir*.

## SEVERAL MANNERS OF CONJUGATING VERBS.

A verb may be conjugated with affirmation, negation, interrogation and pronouns as follows :

**RULE 1. With Affirmation.** — By putting the nominative before the verb in French, as in English. Example :

Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speakest.</i>
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>
elle parle,	<i>she speaks.</i>
on parle,	<i>one speaks.</i>
mon frère parle,	<i>my brother speaks.</i>
ma sœur parle,	<i>my sister speaks.</i>
nous parlons,	<i>we speak.</i>
vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>
ils, or elles parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>
mes frères parlent,	<i>my brothers speak.</i>
mes sœurs parlent,	<i>my sisters speak.</i>

**RULE 2. With Negation.** — By putting the particle *ne* between the nominative and the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the verb. Example :

Je ne parle pas,	<i>I do not speak.</i>
tu ne parles pas,	<i>thou dost not speak.</i>
il ne parle pas,	<i>he does not speak.</i>
elle ne parle pas,	<i>she does not speak.</i>
on ne parle pas,	<i>one does not speak.</i>
mon frère ne parle pas,	<i>my brother does not speak.</i>
ma sœur ne parle pas,	<i>my sister does not speak.</i>
nous ne parlons pas,	<i>we do not speak.</i>

<i>vous ne parlez pas,</i>	<i>you do not speak.</i>
<i>ils or elles ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>they do not speak.</i>
<i>mes frères ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>my brothers do not speak.</i>
<i>mes sœurs ne parlent pas,</i>	<i>my sisters do not speak.</i>

**RULE 3. With Interrogation.**—By putting the nominative after the verb, if it be a pronoun. Example :

<i>Parlé-je ?</i>	<i>Do I speak ?</i>
<i>parles-tu ?</i>	<i>dost thou speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>does he speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-elle ?</i>	<i>does she speak ?</i>
<i>parle-t-on ?</i>	<i>does one speak ?</i>
<i>parlons-nous ?</i>	<i>do we speak ?</i>
<i>parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>do you speak ?</i>
<i>parlent-ils ?</i>	<i>do they speak ?</i>
<i>parlent-elles ?</i>	

**N.B.** When the first person ends with a mute *e*, it is changed into an acute *é* : when the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens is placed between the verb and the pronoun.

When the nominative of the verb is a substantive, it is placed before the verb, and the pronoun *il*, or *elle*, for the singular, *ils*, or *elles*, for the plural is put after. Example :

<i>Mon frère parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>Does my brother speak ?</i>
<i>ma sœur parle-t-elle ?</i>	<i>does my sister speak ?</i>
<i>mes frères parlent-ils ?</i>	<i>do my brothers speak ?</i>
<i>mes sœurs parlent-elles ?</i>	<i>do my sisters speak ?</i>

When an interrogative sentence is also negative, *ne* is placed at the beginning of the sentence, or after the substantive when there is one, and *pas* after the verb and the pronoun. Example :

<i>Ne parlé-je pas ?</i>	<i>Do I not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parles-tu pas ?</i>	<i>dost thou not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-il pas ?</i>	<i>does he not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-elle pas ?</i>	<i>does she not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parle-t-on pas ?</i>	<i>does not any one speak ?</i>
<i>mon frère ne parle-t-il pas ?</i>	<i>does not my brother speak ?</i>
<i>ma sœur ne parle-t-elle pas ?</i>	<i>does not my sister speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlons-nous pas ?</i>	<i>do we not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlez-vous pas ?</i>	<i>do you not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlent-ils pas ?</i>	<i>do they not speak ?</i>
<i>ne parlent-elles pas ?</i>	
<i>mes frères ne parlent-ils pas ?</i>	<i>do not my brothers speak ?</i>
<i>mes sœurs ne parlent-elles pas ?</i>	<i>do not my sisters speak ?</i>

**RULE 4. With governed Pronouns.**—By putting the governed pronoun immediately before the verb, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative. Example:

**1. AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE.**

Je lui parle,	<i>I speak to him.</i>
tu lui parles,	<i>thou speakest to him.</i>
il lui parle,	<i>he speaks to him.</i>
elle lui parle,	<i>she speaks to him.</i>
on lui parle,	<i>some one speaks to him.</i>
mon frère lui parle,	<i>my brother speaks to him.</i>
ma sœur lui parle,	<i>my sister speaks to him.</i>
nous lui parlons,	<i>we speak to him.</i>
vous lui parlez,	<i>you speak to him.</i>
ils or elles lui parlent,	<i>they speak to him.</i>
mes frères lui parlent,	<i>my brothers speak to him.</i>
mes sœurs lui parlent,	<i>my sisters speak to him.</i>

**2. NEGATIVE SENTENCE.**

Je ne lui parle pas,	<i>I do not speak to him.</i>
tu ne lui parles pas,	<i>thou dost not speak to him.</i>
il ne lui parle pas,	<i>he does not speak to him.</i>
elle ne lui parle pas,	<i>she does not speak to him.</i>
on ne lui parle pas,	<i>some one does not speak to him.</i>
mon frère ne lui parle pas,	<i>my brother does not speak to him.</i>
ma sœur ne lui parle pas,	<i>my sister does not speak to him.</i>
nous ne lui parlons pas,	<i>we do not speak to him.</i>
vous ne lui parlez pas,	<i>you do not speak to him.</i>
ils or elles ne lui parlent pas,	<i>they do not speak to him.</i>
mes frères ne lui parlent pas,	<i>my brothers do not speak to him.</i>
mes sœurs ne lui parlent pas,	<i>my sisters do not speak to him.</i>

**3. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE.**

Lui parlé-je ?	<i>Do I speak to him ?</i>
lui parles-tu ?	<i>dost thou speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-il ?	<i>does he speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-elle ?	<i>does she speak to him ?</i>
lui parle-t-on ?	<i>does some one speak to him ?</i>
mon frère lui parle-t-il ?	<i>does my brother speak to him ?</i>
ma sœur lui parle-t-elle ?	<i>does my sister speak to him ?</i>
lui parlons-nous ?	<i>do we speak to him ?</i>
lui parlez-vous ?	<i>do you speak to him ?</i>
lui parlent-ils ? lui parlent-elles ?	<i>do they speak to him ?</i>
mes frères lui parlent-ils ?	<i>do my brothers speak to him ?</i>
mes sœurs lui parlent-elles ?	<i>do my sisters speak to him ?</i>

**4. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE SENTENCE.**

Ne lui parlé-je pas ?	<i>Do I not speak to him ?</i>
ne lui parles-tu pas ?	<i>dost thou not speak to him ?</i>
ne lui parle-t-il pas ?	<i>does he not speak to him ?</i>

ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?	does she not speak to him ?
ne lui parle-t-on pas ?	does not some one speak to him ?
mon frère ne lui parle-t-il pas ?	does not my brother speak to him ?
ma sœur ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?	does not my sister speak to him ?
ne lui parlons-nous pas ?	do we not speak to him ?
ne lui parlez-vous pas ?	do you not speak to him ?
ne lui parlent-ils pas ?	do they not speak to him ?
ne lui parlent-elles pas ?	
mes frères ne lui parlent-ils pas ?	do not my brothers speak to him ?
mes sœurs ne lui parlent-elles pas ?	do not my sisters speak to him ?

**OBSERVATION.**—In the compound tenses, you apply these rules with the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*, as if there were no other verb, because the participle is put the last: as, j'ai parlé, je n'ai pas parlé, ai-je parlé ? je ne lui ai pas parlé, ne lui ai-je pas parlé ?

### EXERCISE upon the preceding Rules.

N.B. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, have reference to the four rules above.

You know the king; you do not know the king; do you know the king? you know him; you do not know him; do you know him? he sells his horse; he does not sell his horse; does he sell his horse? he does not sell it; does he sell it? has he sold it? they are sick; are they sick? they are not sick; I will give a watch to your son; I will not give a watch to your son; I have given it to your son; I have not given it to your son; I do not blame your conduct; does she choose a fine colour? we hold him; have you answered to their questions? you have translated the book, but you have not translated it well; do not threaten them; has he spoken (to them)? we have pacified him; they have not pardoned me; do you look for your book? yes, I have lost it; they do not sing well; have you breakfasted? he

1 connaître roi 1 2 3  
 1 4 1 2 4  
 3 4 1 vendre cheval 1 2  
 3 1 2 4 le 3  
 4 3 4 l' 1 malade 3 1  
 2 1 donner D montre f fils 1 2  
 D 1 f 4 l' fils 1  
 2 f 4 l' 1 2 blâmer conduite f  
 3 choisir beau couleur 1 tenir 4 le 3 ré-  
 pondre — 1 traduire. livre m  
 mais 1 2 4 l' bien 2 menacer H 4 les  
 3 4 leur 1 —fier 4 l' 1  
 2 pardonner 4 m' 3 chercher \* oui 1  
 perdre 4 l' 1 chanter 3 déjeuner 1



has not received a letter from his father; I have sent him  
 2 *recevoir de lettre* 1 *envoyer à lui*  
 a book; has he received it? no, sir, he has not received it;  
 3 4 *non monsieur l'* 2 4  
 you do not neglect your friends; have you not neglected  
 1 2 *négliger* *ami* " 3 2  
 me? the Austrians have not ratified the treaty; but the  
 4 *m'* *Autrichiens* 2 *—fier* *traité*  
 French will force them to do it; have you decided the  
*Français pl* *forcer* 4 *les à faire* 4 *le* 3 *décider*  
 question?

## OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

We give the name of *reflected verbs* to all those which have for their subject and object the same person or thing, such as *je m'habille*, I dress myself; *je me repens*, I repent.

RULE 1.—All reflected verbs are conjugated with two pronouns in every tense and person of the indicative and subjunctive moods; thus, *je me*, is used for the first person singular; *tu te*, for the second; *il se*, or *elle se*, for the third; *nous nous*, for the first plural; *vous vous*, for the second; *ils se*, or *elles se*, for the third. Example:

<i>Je me lève,</i>	<i>I rise.</i>
<i>tu te lèves,</i>	<i>thou risest.</i>
<i>il se lève,</i>	<i>he rises.</i>
<i>elle se lève,</i>	<i>she rises.</i>
<i>mon frère se lève,</i>	<i>my brother rises.</i>
<i>ma sœur se lève,</i>	<i>my sister rises.</i>
<i>nous nous levons,</i>	<i>we rise.</i>
<i>vous vous levez,</i>	<i>you rise.</i>
<i>ils or elles se lèvent,</i>	<i>they rise.</i>
<i>mes frères se lèvent,</i>	<i>my brothers rise.</i>
<i>mes sœurs se lèvent,</i>	<i>my sisters rise.</i>

RULE 2.—All reflected verbs are conjugated in English with the verb *to have* in their compound tenses, in French with the verb *être*; and then the participle generally agrees with the accusative of the verb. Example:

<i>Je me suis levé,</i>	<i>I have risen.</i>
<i>tu t'es levé,</i>	<i>thou hast risen.</i>
<i>il s'est levé,</i>	<i>he has risen.</i>
<i>elle s'est levée,</i>	<i>she has risen.</i>
<i>mon frère s'est levé,</i>	<i>my brother has risen.</i>
<i>ma sœur s'est levée,</i>	<i>my sister has risen.</i>

nous nous sommes levés,	we have risen.
vous vous êtes levés,	you have risen.
ils se sont levés, •	they have risen.
elles se sont levées,	
mes frères se sont levés,	my brothers have risen.
mes sœurs se sont levées,	my sisters have risen.

**OBSERVATION.**—When you see *se* or *s'* before a verb in the infinitive, it is not always in the accusative, but sometimes in the dative case: as, *ils se sont imaginé, they have fancied.*

**EXERCISE** upon the **SIMPLE TENSES** of the  
**REFLECTED VERBS.**

A. I abstain from doing it; he (stoops down); we bathe  
*s'abstenir de le faire* *se baisser* *se baigner*  
every summer; you (go to bed) before your brother; they  
*tous les étés* *se coucher* *avant*  
rebel.—B. I did (nurse myself) (too much); he did  
*se révolter* *s'écouter* *trop*  
mean to travel; we did torment ourselves about  
*se proposer de voyager* *se tourmenter* \* *pour*  
that affair; you did despair without reason; they did  
*affaire f* *se désespérer* *sans* *raison*  
applaud themselves for their folly.—C. I retracted; the river  
*s'applaudir* *de* *sottise f* *se rétracter* *rivière*  
overflowed; we distrusted your sister; you (made haste);  
*se déborder* *se défier de* *se dépêcher*  
they were very well.—D. I shall seize upon his fortune;  
*se porter très-bien* *s'emparer de* — *f*  
he will (be eager) to do it; she will (fall asleep); we shall  
*s'empreser de le faire* *s'endormir*  
(grow bold); you will (catch cold); they will (take root).  
*s'enhardir* *s'enrhumer* *s'enraciner*  
—E. I would (grow rich); he would discourse with her;  
*s'enrichir* *s'entretenir avec*  
we would rise; you would wonder; they would (fly away);  
*se lever* *s'étonner* *s'envoler*  
the flowers would blow.—F. That I may perceive your  
*fleurs* *s'épanouir* *s'apercevoir de*  
designs; that he may amuse himself at his expense; that  
*dessein* *s'amuser* \* *à* *dépens pl*  
we may incur this danger; that you may (be em-  
*se précipiter dans* — *s'oc-*  
ployed) about trifles; that they may (go out) of the  
*cuper de bagatelle* *se détourner* •  
right way.—G. That I might yield to his reasons; that  
*droit chemin* *se rendre* *raison*

he might employ, the means. I (point out) to him;  
*se servir de moyen que indiquer A.*  
 that we might (be degraded) in our own eyes; that you  
*s'avilir*  
 might (be proud) of this trifling advantage; that they might  
*s'enorgueillir faible avantage*  
 (love each other) from their infancy.  
*s'entr'aimer depuis enfance.*

N. B. The imperative of reflected verbs being conjugated in a different manner, according as it is affirmative or negative, we shall give both.

## AFFIRMATIVELY.

Lève-toi,	rise (thou).
qu'il se lève,	let him rise.
levons-nous,	let us rise.
levez-vous,	rise.
qu'ils se lèvent,	let them rise.

## NEGATIVELY.

Ne te lève pas,	do not rise.
qu'il ne se lève pas,	let him not rise.
ne nous levons pas,	let us not rise.
ne vous levez pas,	do not rise.
qu'ils ne se lèvent,	let them not rise.

1. O man! remember that thou art mortal; do not rejoice to see thine enemies unhappy; let him (be undeceived);  
*se souvenir mortel se*  
*plaire voir ennemi malheureux se désabuser*  
 let her not (go to bed) so early; let us habituate  
*se coucher de si bonne heure s'habituer*  
 ourselves to employment; let us not deceive ourselves;  
*au travail se séduire nous-mêmes*  
 rest yourself under the shade of this tree; do not  
*se reposer à ombre arbre*  
 interfere in that business; let them (make haste); let them  
*se mêler de affaire f se dépêcher*  
 not behave so ill.  
*se comporter si mal.*

*EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES of the  
REFLECTED VERBS.*

A. I have (stolen away); she has (fainted away); we  
*s'esquiver* *s'évanouir*  
 have trusted to your father; you have (found fault) without  
*se fier* *père* *se formaliser* *sans*  
 occasion; these flowers have (faded away).—B. I had married;  
*raison* *se flétrir* *se marier*  
 she had distrusted me; we had been tolerably well; you  
*se défier de moi* *se porter assez bien*  
 had laughed at him; they had complained of you.—C. I  
*se moquer de* *se plaindre*  
 had rejoiced at that news; he had repented of his faults;  
*se réjouir de* *nouvelle* *se repentir de* *faute*  
 we had walked in the park; you had submitted to their  
*se promener* *se conformer*  
 orders; they had remembered me.—D. I shall have  
*—dre* *se ressouvenir de moi*  
 seized his arms; she will have (painted her face); we  
*s'emparer de* *arme* *se farder*  
 shall have fancied that he was right; you will have  
*s'imaginer* *avoir B raison*  
 (grown rich); those women will have (stolen away).—E. I  
*s'enrichir* *femme* *s'esquiver*  
 should have repented of my temerity; he would have  
*témérité*  
 boasted of his birth; we should have devoted ourselves  
*se vanter* *naissance* *se dévouer* \*  
 entirely to the service of our country; you would have  
*entièrement* — m *pays*  
 degraded yourselves in the public opinion; they would  
*se dégrader* \*  
 have (been drowned).—F. That I may have (been deceived)  
*se noyer* *se tromper*  
 so grossly; that she may have decided to stay; that we  
*si grossièrement* *se décider* *rester*  
 may have (had relaxation) from the fatigue; that you may  
*se délasser* — f  
 have disguised yourself so cleverly; that your sisters may  
*se déguiser* \* *si adroitement*  
 have exposed themselves so rashly. — G. That I might  
*s'exposer* \* *si témérairement*  
 have revenged myself; that she might have neglected  
*se venger* \* *se négliger*  
 herself in that important circumstance; that we might have  
*circonstance*

lost ourselves in the forest; that you might have con-  
*s'égarer* \* *forêt* *s'en-*  
 versed about plots against the state; that they might  
*tretenir de complot contre état*  
 have annoyed (one another) in that law-suit.  
*se desservir réciproquement* *procès.*

## HOW TO FORM THE ADVERBS FROM THE ADJECTIVES.

RULE 1.—The adjectives which end with a vowel become adverbs, by adding *ment* to their final; as, *sage*, *sagement*; *poli*, *poliment*; *ingenu*, *ingénument*.

RULE 2.—The adjectives which end in *nt* become adverbs, by changing the final *nt* into *nment*; as, *constant*, *constamment*; *patient*, *patiemment*.

RULE 3.—The adjectives which end in any other consonant, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination: as, *grand*, *cruel*, m. *grande*, *cruelle*, f. *grandement*, *cruellement*, adverbs.—See how to make the feminine of adjectives, p. 14. The figures 1, 2, 3, have reference to the above three rules.

### EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of ADVERBS.

My father can do that easily; you speak freely;  
*pouvoir (ir) A faire cela 1 aisé 1 libre*  
 they act prudently; he died suddenly; they fight  
*agir 2 prudent mourir (ir) C 3 soudain combattre (ir)*  
 vigorously; he answered wisely; do you speak seriously?  
*3 vigoureux répondre C 1 sage 3 sérieux*  
 you suffer patiently; he denied the fact absolutely; they  
*souffrir 2 patient nier C fait 1 absolu*  
 are happily out of danger; they will come, probably; I  
*3 heureux hors venir 1 probable*  
 have eaten sufficiently; speak to them separately; he an-  
*manger 2 suffisant parler H leur 1 séparé ré-*  
 sponded affirmatively; you do not speak clearly; I am  
*pondre C 3 affirmatif 3 clair*  
 constantly occupied; they speak figuratively; children are  
*2 constant occupé 3 figuratif les enfans*

naturally fond of pleasure; your loss is really great  
*naturel passionné pour le plaisir*      *perte f 3 réel*  
 he comes regularly; you did      that secretly.  
*venir 3 régulier*      *faire (ir) c cela 3 secret.*

## PLACE OF THE ADVERBS.

Adverbs are generally placed in French after the verb, but never between the personal pronouns and the verb as in English, as will be further explained in chapter 19 of the Syntax, rules 172 and 173. Example:

They never say what they think  
*Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.*  
 and not *Ils ne jamais disent.*

We always patiently suffer their insults; he seldom  
*toujours patiemment souffrir*      *insulte*      *rarement*  
 reads; they bravely assaulted the enemy; we dis-  
*lire (ir)*      *—ment assaillir (ir) c*  
 tinctly see; they miserably died; we are  
*—tement voir (ir)*      *misérablement mourir (ir) c*      \*  
 sometimes deceived; you often contradict me;  
*quelquefois se méprendre (ir) A*      *souvent contredire (ir)*  
 they secretly retired; I willingly consent to that bar-  
*secrètement se retirer c*      *volontiers consentir*  
 gain; they reluctantly promised to go there; they  
*marché à contre-cœur promettre (ir) c*      *d'y aller*  
 strongly opposed that measure; they really deceive  
*fortement s'opposer c a*      *mesure*      *réellement tromper*  
 you; he minutely enquired about that affair;  
*minutieusement s'enquérir (ir) c de*      *affaire*  
 they are grossly mistaken.  
 \* *grossièrement se méprendre (ir) A.*

## PART III.

## CHAP. I.

## SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four sections. The first explains the circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; the second enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French and not in English; the third describes those in which, on the contrary, it is used in English and not in French; and the fourth contains all cases in which both languages take no article.

N.B. It is proper to make the pupils learn the rules by heart, and translate them into French; also to explain the parts of speech of at least one sentence in every lesson. This practice will soon make them acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the acquisition of the rules.

## SECTION I.

## CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH AND IN ENGLISH.

RULE 1.—*Indefinite Article, un, une; a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un, m. une, f., a or an*) is used in both languages before a substantive singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one. Examples:

*a man; of a woman; to a bird; from a house.*  
*un homme; d'une femme; à un oiseau; d'une maison.*

A friend cannot be well known in prosperity, nor  
*ami ne peut bien connu dans la prospérité ni*  
 hidden in adversity. Good example is a language which  
*se cacher l' —té le bon exemple langue f que*  
 every body understands. Fortune is a capricious deity.  
*tout le monde comprend la — f —cieux divinité*  
 When a man is once out of the way of God, he easily  
*quand une fois hors voie Dieu 172 aisément*  
 falls from one fault into another. A wise man values  
*tomber une faute f dans une autre sage homme estimer*  
 pleasure very little, because it is a bane to the mind; but  
*très-peu le plaisir parce que c' poison pour l'esprit*

he values virtue much, because it is an ornament in  
*beaucoup la vertu parce qu'elle* • *ornement la*  
 prosperity, • comfort in adversity, and the source of all  
*consolation* . *source f tout*  
 happiness.  
*bienheur.*

RULE 2.—*Definite article le, la, les; the.*

The definite article (*le, m, la, f, l',* before a vowel or an *h* mute, *les*, plural of both genders, the; *du, de la, de l', des*, of or from the; *au, à la, à l', aux*, to the,) is used in both languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an individual sense. Examples:

*The days of the month of January are very short.*

*Les jours du mois de Janvier sont très-courts.*

*The earth turns, and not the sun.*

*La terre tourne, et non le soleil.*

*The spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter are*  
*printemps été automne hiver*  
*the four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the*  
*saison année vue ouïe*  
*feeling, the taste and the smell are the five natural senses.*  
*toucher goût odorat cinq naturel sens*  
*The east, the west, the north, and the south are the four*  
*est ouest nord sud*  
*cardinal points.*  
*cardinal —*

*The love of glory, the fear of shame, and the design*  
*amour la gloire crainte f la honte dessein*  
*of making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour*  
*de faire \* — f souvent — f valeur*  
*so much celebrated among men. The instructions of*  
*si \* vanté parmi les — de l'*  
*adversity are wholesome, though unpleasing; the lessons*  
*salutaire quoique désagréable leçon*  
*of prosperity are pleasing, but often pernicious: the*  
*de la agréable — cieux.*  
*first discover sometimes concealed virtues, and the*  
*première découvrir à quelquefois des caché*  
*others hidden vices. The air is very healthy in France,*  
*autre des secret — m — • très-sain en*  
*and the climate temperate.*  
*climat tempéré •*



## PART III.

## CHAP. I.

## SYNTAX OF ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four sections. The first explains the circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; the second enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French and not in English; the third describes those in which, on the contrary, it is used in English and not in French; and the fourth contains all cases in which both languages take no article.

N.B. It is proper to make the pupils learn the rules by heart, and translate them into French; also to explain the parts of speech of at least one sentence in every lesson. This practice will soon make them acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the acquisition of the rules.

## SECTION I.

## CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH AND IN ENGLISH.

RULE 1. — *Indefinite Article, un, une; a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un*, m. *une*, f., *a* or *an*) is used in both languages before a substantive singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one. Examples:

*a* man;      *of a* woman;      *to a* bird;      *from a* house.  
*un* homme;      *d'une* femme;      *à un* oiseau;      *d'une* maison.

A friend cannot be well known in prosperity, nor  
*ami ne peut bien connu dans la prospérité ni*  
hidden in adversity. Good example is a language which  
*se cacher l' — té le bon exemple langue f que*  
every body understands. Fortune is a capricious deity.  
*tout le monde comprend la — f — cieux divinité*  
When a man is once out of the way of God, he easily  
*quand une fois hors voie Dieu 172 aisément*  
falls from one fault into another. A wise man values  
*tomber une faute f dans une autre sage homme estimer*  
pleasure very little, because it is a bane to the mind; but  
*très-peu le plaisir parce que c' poison pour l'esprit*

he values virtue much, because it is an ornament in  
*beaucoup la vertu parce qu'elle* • *ornement la*  
 prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the source of all  
*consolation* • *source f tout*  
 happiness.  
*bonheur.*

RULE 2.—*Definite article le, la, les; the.*

The definite article (*le, m, la, f, l',* before a vowel  
*h* mute, *les*, plural of both genders, *the; du, de la, de l', des*,  
 of or from *the; au, à la, à l', aux*, to *the*;) is used in both  
 languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an  
 individual sense. Examples:

*The days of the month of January are very short.*

*Les jours du mois de Janvier sont très-courts.*

*The earth turns, and not the sun.*

*La terre tourne, et non le soleil.*

*The spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter are*  
*printemps été automne hiver*  
*the four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the*  
*saison année vue ouïe*  
*feeling, the taste and the smell are the five natural senses.*  
*toucher goût odorat cinq naturel sens*  
*The east, the west, the north, and the south are the four*  
*est ouest nord sud*  
*cardinal points.*  
*cardinal —*

*The love of glory, the fear of shame, and the design*  
*amour la gloire crainte f la honte dessein*  
*of making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour*  
*de faire \* — f souvent — f valeur*  
*so much celebrated among men. The instructions of*  
*si \* vanté parmi les — de l'*  
*adversity are wholesome, though unpleasant; the lessons*  
*salutaire quoique désagréable leçon*  
*of prosperity are pleasing, but often pernicious: the*  
*de la agréable — cieux.*  
*first discover sometimes concealed virtues, and the*  
*première découvrir a quelquefois des caché*  
*others hidden vices. The air is very healthy in France,*  
*autre des secret — m — • très-sain en*  
*and the climate temperate.*  
*climat tempéré •*

RULE 3.—*a, an*, rendered by *le, la, les*.

The English use the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) before nouns of *measure, weight, and number*, when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for; the French, on the contrary, use the definite article (*le, la, les*) in such cases. Examples:

A shilling *a* yard; six-pence *a* pound.

*Un schelling la verge; douze sous la livre.*

as if it were, a shilling the yard, six-pence the pound.

I sell sugar for five guineas *a* hundred weight; coffee  
*vendre le sucre \* guinée quintal \* le café*  
 at seven shillings *a* pound, and tobacco at three-pence *an*  
*\* schelling livre f le tabac sou*  
 ounce. Corn is sold for two crowns *a* bushel. This  
*once le blé se vend \* écus boisseau*  
 riband costs a shilling *a* yard. This cheese costs seven-  
*riban coûter verge f fromage*  
 pence *a* pound. Good wine is sold for five shillings *a*  
*le bon vin se vend \**  
 bottle. Bread costs two-pence *a* pound. Beer is sold  
*bouteille le pain la bière se vend*  
 for five-pence *a* pot. (How much) *a* pound? How much  
*pot combien*  
*a* yard? How much *a* dozen?  
*verge f douzaine f*

## SECTION II.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN FRENCH, AND NOT IN ENGLISH.

RULE 4.—*le, la, les*, not *the*

✂ \* The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French and not in English, before substantives common taken in the whole extent of their signification. Examples:

Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious.

*La vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.*

\* The rules marked thus ✂ are the most essential, and must be learnt by heart. I should advise to make the pupil first go through them only; and afterwards to begin the *syntax* a second time; and then to do all the rules in the same order in which they are set down in the book.

Clemency, wisdom and courage are finer ornaments  
*clémence sagesse — de plus beau ornement*  
 in a prince, than the jewels with which he is covered. Custom  
*dans — que • joyau \* dont couvert usage*  
 is the legislator of languages. Charity is the greatest of  
*• législateur des • langue charité la plus grande*  
 all christian virtues. History, geography and mathematics  
*chrétien • vertu histoire • géographie mathématique*  
 are necessary sciences. Pride and vanity are often the  
*des nécessaire — orgueil — le souvent*  
 source of many misfortunes. Heroes have their fits  
*— f bien des malheurs héros moment*  
 of fear, and coward's their brave moments. Intemperance  
*de crainte lâche moment de bravoure intempérance*  
 and idleness are the two most dangerous enemies of life.  
 *paresse plus dangereux ennemi vie*  
 Eloquence, painting, sculpture and poetry belong to the  
*é— peinture — poésie appartenir*  
 imagination.

RULE 5.—*le, la, les*, before names of kingdoms.

1. The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French, and not in English, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces. Examples:

France, England, and Spain are three great kingdoms.  
*La France, l'Angleterre, et l'Espagne sont trois grands royaumes.\**

2. Nevertheless, these nouns take no articles, when they are preceded by the preposition *en*. Examples:

I am going to France. He lives in Spain.

*Je vais en France. Il demeure en Espagne.*

3. They are usually preceded by the preposition *de*, instead of the definite article *du, de l',* or *de la*, when they are the latter of two substantives, and express the country of the first, and also when they come after the verb *venir*. Examples:

Burgundy wine. Spanish wool. I come from Russia.  
*Le vin de Bourgogne. La laine d'Espagne. Je viens de Russie.*

In this case nouns of kingdoms and provinces may be considered as adjectives, used to specify the noun antecedent.—See for farther explanation the same rule in the grammar.\*

\* There are some nouns of kingdoms and provinces, which are always preceded by an article: such are, *le Mexique, le Bengal, le Perche, le Maine, &c.*

2. I like to travel; I was last year in Italy;—3. I come  
*aimer à voyager* B *l'an dernier* *Italie* *venir*  
 now from Prussia;—2. I shall stay this winter in England;  
*à présent* *Prusse* *rester* *et hiver* *Angleterre*  
 but I shall go next spring to Germany.  
*aller (ir)* *au prochain printemps* *en Allemagne*

1. Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, are the four  
 — *Asie* *Afrique* *Amérique*  
 parts of the world.—3. The kingdoms of France, Spain,  
*partie* *monde* *m* *royaume* *m* — *Espagne*  
 and England are very powerful.—1. Sicily is the granary of  
*très-puissant* *Sicile* *f* *grenier*  
 Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe.—3. I come from  
*l'Italie* *jardin de l'* *venir*  
 Russia, and I go next spring to America.—1.  
*Russie* *aller (ir)* *D au* *en*  
 Touraine, Anjou and Normandy are three fruitful provinces  
 — *f* — — *die f* *fertile* —  
 of France.—1. I set out for Portugal next week.—3. My  
*partir* *A \** — *m la* *semaine* *f*  
 father comes from Switzerland.  
*venir* *Suisse*

#### RULE 6.—*le, la, les*, before adjectives.

The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French before all  
 adjectives substantively used. Example :

I like black better than red.  
*J'aime mieux le noir que le rouge.*

Observe that all adjectives, verbs, prepositions, &c. when  
 substantively used, are masculine in French.

Good and bad seem to be blended together through  
*bon mauvais sembler \** *mêlé ensemble dans*  
 all nature, and sometimes to be confounded  
*toute la* — *quelquefois \** *confondu*  
 with each other. White and black are two opposite colours.  
*l'un avec l'autre blanc noir opposé couleur*  
 Green hurts the sight less than red.  
*vert blesser vue f moins que rouge*

The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool despiseth  
*sage \** *chercher sagesse* *f* *fol mépriser*  
 understanding. Newton says, that there are seven primitive  
*raison* *4* *dire (ir)* *qu'il y a*  
 colours, called orange colour, red, yellow, green, blue, indigo,  
*couleur appelé* — *\** *rouge, jaune, vert, bleu* —  
 and violet.

RULE 7.—*Partitive article du, de la, des; some.*

☞ The partitive article (*du, m, de la, f, de l'*, before a vowel or an *h* mute; *des*, plural of both genders) is used in French before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number or portion of a thing. This article answers to the English word *some*, expressed or understood. Example :

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, and *some* eggs.  
*donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, et des œufs.*

It might be said that the nouns preceded by *du, de la, or des* are in the genitive case, and that the word *portion* or *number* is understood.

Give me *some* bread and *some* butter; *some* beer or *some*  
*donner il pain beurre m bière ou*  
*wine; some* meat or *some* cheese; *some* mustard and *some*  
*vin viande f fromage moutarde f*  
*vinegar; some* apples, *some* oranges, and *some* lemons.  
*vinaigre m pomme — citron*

A good christian considers the world as a place of  
*chrétien considérer monde m comme lieu*  
 banishment, where he meets with snares, difficulties, and  
*bannissement où trouver \*. piège —té*  
*dangers.* Benefits procure friends, and one (good turn)  
*— les 9 service —rer ami bienfait*  
 deserves another. Money gives to a woman credit,  
*en mériter un autre 9 argent donner femme crédit*  
*friends, birth, and beauty.* Spain produces wine, lemons,  
*ami naissance beauté Espagne produire vin citron*  
*oranges, and olives.* Give me *some* cold water and red  
*— — froid eau f rouge*  
 wine.  
*vin*

RULE 8.—*de, instead of du, de la, des.*

☞ If a substantive taken in a partitive sense, as before, is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du, de la, des*. Example :

Give me *some* good bread, good meat, and good eggs.  
*donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bons œufs, not*  
*donnez-moi du bon pain, de la bonne viande, &c.*

History is full of old generals, conquered by young sol-  
*L'histoire 9 plein vieux général vaincus jeune sol-*

diers. Great events happened at the death of Cæsar.  
*dat événements arriver c à mort Cæsar*  
 Good cider (is better) than bad wine. We have in our  
*bon cidre m vaut mieux que mauvais vin\**  
 garden fine peaches and apricots. To write<sup>2</sup> well<sup>1</sup>, one  
*jardin belles pêche beaux abricot \* pour écrire bien il*  
 must have good ink, good pens, and good paper. There is  
*faut \* encre f plume f papier voulu \**  
 good bread, but bad meat.  
*pain mauvais viande f.*

RULE 9.—Where the Article is required.

✎ Every noun which is the subject or the object of a verb, must have in French one of the three articles, *definite*, *indefinite*, or *partitive*; except proper names and nouns preceded by any pronoun. Example:

Hypocrisy is an homage which vice pays to virtue.  
*l'hypocrisie est un hommage que le vice rend à la vertu.*

as if it were, *the* hypocrisy is an homage which *the* vice pays to *the* virtue.

Honour is due to kings and magistrates. Let us prefer  
*honneur dû roi 10 —trai préférer n*  
 virtue to interest. Rare events strike us (with admiration.)  
*vertu intérêt — événement frapper 48 d'admira-*  
 Ignorance is the source of errors, scruples, and superstition.  
*— — f erreur 10 scrupule m*  
 Glory and infamy are vain, if they do not attend  
*— Gloire infamie — 50 accompagner*  
 real goods and evils. Iron and steel are more useful than  
*réel 27 biens 10 mauz fer acier plus utile*  
 gold and silver. Remedies are often disgusting in proportion  
*or argent remède souvent dégoûtant en —*  
 as they are salutary. Gold and silver cannot render  
*de ce qu' 50 salulaire ne sauraient rendre*  
 man happy.  
*heureux*

RULE 10.—The Articles must be repeated.

✎ The articles *definite*, *indefinite*, and *partitive*, are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number. Example:

Fear and ignorance are the sources of superstition.  
*La crainte et l'ignorance sont les sources de la superstition*

They are also repeated before adjectives in French where they are omitted in English.

I read the historians ancient and modern.

*Je lis les historiens anciens et les modernes.*

Politeness is not always born with us; it is often the offspring of custom, experience, and application. If society is formed of the communication of ideas and sentiments, speech must be the essential tie of it; being at once the pencil of wit, and the interpreter of the heart. Interest, glory and ambition are the great motives of our actions. Besides gold and silver, Europe draws from the new world pepper, sugar, tea, tobacco, and several other things. Vice and virtue have contrary effects.

*Politesse 4 toujours née avec 50. souvent fruit usage 4 é — si société 4 se forme — idée 4 — la parole doit en être essentiel lien \* \* à la fois pinceau esprit 4 interprète . . cœur Intérêt 9 gloire ambition — grand mobile m . — outre or 4 argent 5 tirer nouveau monde 7 poivre m sucre m thé tabac plusieurs autre chose — m 4 vertu contraire 7 effet.*

### SECTION III.

CASES IN WHICH ARTICLES ARE USED IN ENGLISH, AND NOT IN FRENCH.

RULE 11.—*the*, not *le*, *la*, *les*.

The definite article (*the*) is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *first*, *second*, *third*, &c. when they come after the words *book*, *chapter*, &c. or the name of a sovereign. Examples:

Henry <i>the</i> first;	Charles <i>the</i> second;	George <i>the</i> third.
<i>Henri premier</i> ;	<i>Charles second</i> ;	<i>George trois</i> .
Volume <i>the</i> first;	chapter <i>the</i> sixth;	article <i>the</i> ninth.
<i>tome premier</i> ;	<i>chapitre six</i> ;	<i>article neuf</i> .

Observe, that the ordinal numbers used in English after the name of a sovereign are expressed in French by the cardinal *trois*, *quatre*, *cinq*, *six*, &c. the two first excepted; but the cardinal or ordinal are almost indifferently used after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, &c. and we can say *livre six*, or *sixième*; *règle d'usage*, or *douzième*; *chapitre quatre*, or *quatrième*.



Charles *the* second, king of Spain, son of Philip *the* fourth,  
*roi Espagne fils Philippe*  
 left his kingdom to Philip *the* fifth. William *the* third, king  
*laisser c royaume Guillaume*  
 of England, married the princess Mary, daughter of James  
*Angleterre épouser c princesse Marie fille Jacques*  
*the* second, and grand-daughter of Charles *the* first.

*petite-fille*  
 Book *the* third, chapter *the* sixth, section *the* second, rule  
*livre m chapitre m — règle f*  
*the* tenth, volume *the* fourth, article *the* fifth.  
*tome m*

### RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is used in English, and not in French, before a substantive which expresses the *titles, professions, trades, country, or any other attribute of the noun antecedent.* \* Examples :

I am *a* Frenchman ; he is *a* physician ; he is *a* nobleman.

*Je suis Français il est médecin il est noble*

Socrates was *a* philosopher ; Apelles, *a* painter ; Phidias,

*a* sculptor ; Cicero, *a* orator ; Livy, *a* historian ; and  
*—teur Cicéron —teur Tite-Live —rien*

Virgil *a* poet. Harvey *a* physician of great reputation.

*Virgile poète médecin —*

I am *a* Frenchman, but my father was *a* Englishman.

*Français — Anglais*

The best coffee comes from Mocha, *a* town of Arabia

*meilleur café venir Moka ville l'Arabie*

Felix. Was your father *a* nobleman ? No, he was *a*

*Heureux — 92 noble Non —*

soldier. The canal of Briare, in the Gatinois, *a* province of

*soldat — dans m —*

France, joins the Loire to the Seine. The king of Prussia

*joindre — f — f Prusse*

was at once *a* king, *a* warrior, and *a* philosopher.

*— à la fois guerrier —phe*

### RULE 13.—*a* not *un* or *une*.

1. The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is also used in English, and not in French, in the title of a book. Example :

*A* history of England. *A* French grammar.

*histoire d'Angleterre grammaire française*

\* But when they are modified by an adjective, or determined by a relative pronoun, they admit of the article indefinite. Examples  
*je suis un Français malheureux.*

2. After the word *what*, used to show surprise. Examples :

What a noise you make!      What a dreadful account!  
*quel bruit vous faites !      quelle fâcheuse nouvelle !*

3. Before a substantive used in apposition, or to specify or explain the noun preceding. Example :

I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.  
*Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie*

1. A Roman history, from the foundation of Rome  
*romain histoire depuis fondation*  
 to the destruction of the Roman empire.—2. What an  
*jusqu'à — m quelle*  
 unhappy situation is that which obliges a father in his own  
*fâcheuse — celle obliger père dans propre*  
 defence to expose the failings of his children!—3. The  
*défense à révéler faute enfant*  
 triumph was decreed to Cæsar, an honour he well deserved.  
*triomphe c décerner César honneur qu mériter B bien*  
 —3. Raphael excelled in expression, a rare talent in  
*— aël exceller B dans l' — — chez*  
 painters.  
*les peintre*

## SECTION IV.

CASES IN WHICH NO ARTICLE IS USED IN EITHER LANGUAGE.

RULE 14.—No Article before Proper Names.

☞ No article is used in either language before the word *Dieu* in the singular, and taken in a general sense, nor before the proper names of men, women, towns, days, months, or heathen gods. Examples :

God is merciful.      Peter is dead.  
*Dieu est miséricordieux.      Pierre est mort.*

not *le Dieu*, or *le Pierre est mort*; but we say; *le Dieu des Chrétiens, le dieu de la guerre, les dieux et les demi-dieux.*

We must except from this rule, 1. many Italian authors, such as *le Tasse, l'Arioste, &c.*—2. Proper names used to denote an individual distinction, such as *l'Athalie de Racine, la Mérope de Voltaire.* 3. Proper names in the plural, when they are employed as names of a class or common nouns; such as, *les Cicérons sont rares, les Homères, les Virgiles, les Démosthènes.*

*Aristotle* and *Plato* flourished in the age of *Philip* and  
 — *te* *Platon* fleurir c siècle m *Philippe*  
*Alexander*. *London* and *Paris* are the two greatest capitals  
 d' —dre —dres plus grand —le f  
 in Europe. Come and see me on *Friday* or *Saturday*. *Sep-*  
*de l'* — venir H \* me voir \* *Vendredi Samedi*  
*tember* and *October* are two fine months in England. *Jupiter*;  
 —bre —bre beau mois *Angleterre* —  
*Mars*, and *Venus* were heathen divinities. *Demosthenes* and  
 — *Vénus* B païenne divinité ?  
*Cicero* were two great orators; the former flourished at  
 B grand orateur premier fleurir c à  
*Athens*, and the latter at *Rome*.  
*Athènes* second —

RULE 15.—*No Article before Pronouns.*

No article is used in either language before a substantive preceded by any pronoun whatever. Examples :

My book.	This watch.	What news?
<i>Mon livre.</i>	<i>cette montre.</i>	<i>quelle nouvelle?</i>

The pronoun *quelqu'un*, somebody; *plusieurs*, many; *personne*, nobody; and *rien*, nothing; which are used without a substantive, take no article before them. Example: *plusieurs le disent*, many say so; not *les plusieurs le disent*.

*My brother and sister learn geography.*  
*frère 63 sœur apprendre (ir) géographie*

No one becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.  
*personne ne devenir débauché vertueux tout d'un coup*  
 Nothing can be more intolerable than a fortunate fool.  
*rien ne pouvoir (ir) plus insupportable qu' heureux sot.*  
 Whoever spares the bad, does harm to the good. This  
*quiconque épargner méchants faire (ir) tort bons*  
 watch is new; give it to your sister.  
*montre f neuf H la sœur*

RULE 16.—*de* after *sorte*, *genre*, &c.

✎ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French, after the words, *sorte*, *genre*, or any other of the same signification. Example: “

Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities.  
*L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.*

N. B. This rule is of very great extent, and requires particular attention.

There are two kinds of curiosity, the one of interest,  
*il y a sorte f —té . l'une intérêt*  
 which incites us to desire to learn what may  
*porter 48 à désirer d'apprendre ce qui pouvoir (ir) A*  
 be useful to us; and the other of pride, which proceeds from  
*nous être utile l'autre orgueil venir*  
 the desire of knowing what others are ignorant of. (Old age).  
*désir de savoir ce que les autres \* ignorer A \* . vieillesse f*  
 is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the  
*sorte tyran défendre sous peine mort*  
 pleasures of youth. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, com-  
*plaisir 4 jeunesse 9 politesse mélange m discrétion com-*  
 placency, and circumspection. Praises are a kind of tribute  
*plaisance circonspection louange 9 sorte . tribut*  
 (that is paid) to true merit. There is in goodness a kind of  
*qu'on paie 4 vrai mérite m il y a dans 4 bonté sorte*  
 magnet which attracts all men to itself. The hieroglyphics  
*aimant attirer 106 soi hiéroglyphes*  
 of the Egyptians were figures of men, birds, animals, and  
*Egyptien B —7 oiseau —*  
 reptiles.

#### RULE 17.—Transposition of Words.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the nature, matter, species, qualities, or country of the first.

The English often put the genitive first. This transposition of words is not allowed in French, and the order must be reversed. Examples:

Burgundy wine. A gold watch. A chamber-maid.  
*du vin de Bourgogne. une montre d'or. une femme de chambre.*  
 as if it were some wine of Burgundy, a watch of gold; and so on for others.

• The galleries of the House of Commons are supported  
*galerie Chambre f des Commune soutenir*  
 by slender iron pillars, ornamented with Corinthian capitals.  
*de petit fer pilier ornés de corinthien chapiteau*  
 Burgundy wine is very dear in England. The English  
*Bourgogne vin 9 cher en Angleterre Anglais*  
 cannot manufacture finer superfine cloth without  
*ne pouvoir (ir) A —re —fin drap sans*  
 Spanish wool. I always wear silk-stockings in summer.  
*Espagne laine 172 porter toujours soie bas 7 en été*  
 On the first day of every parliament, the four representatives  
*chaque parlement représentant*

of the city of London appear in scarlet gowns, and sit  
*cité Londres paraître en écarlate robe s'asseoir* (ir)

near the speaker.  
*auprès du président*

Socrates' wisdom and Achilles' valour ~~are~~ celebrated in  
*sagesse valeur célébré dans*  
 the writings of historians. The character of Esop's fables  
*écrit des — rien caractère m des Esopé — f*  
 is simple nature. O happiness! our being's end, for thee  
*la — — bonheur être fin* 49  
 we live, for thee we dare to die.  
*vivre (ir) oser \* mourir*

### RULE 18.—Preposition de.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after the following adverbs of quantity, scarcity, or exclusion.

<i>assez</i> *,	enough.	<i>pas</i> or <i>point</i> ,	no.
<i>autant</i> ,	as much.	<i>peu</i> ,	little.
<i>beaucoup</i> ,	much.	<i>plus</i> ,	more.
<i>combien</i> ,	how many.	<i>rien</i> ,	nothing.
<i>jamais</i> ,	never.	<i>tant</i> ,	so many.
<i>moins</i> ,	less.	<i>trop</i> ,	too much.

Also after the words *nombre*, number; *quantité*, quantity; *livre*, pound; *mesure*, measure; *aune*, ell; *verge*, yard; *boisseau*, bushel; and after any other words of quantity

Examples :

Much bread and little meat. More prudence.  
*beaucoup de pain et peu de viande. plus de prudence.*

A pound of cheese. A bushel of coals.  
*une livre de fromage. un boisseau de charbon.*

Nevertheless, the article is used after *la plupart*, the most part; and after *bien*, used as a substantive. Thus we say, *il a bien des amis*, with an article; and *il a beaucoup d'amis*, without any article; he has many friends.

Those who govern are like celestial bodies, which have  
*ceux gouverner comme céleste corps* 2  
 much brightness and no rest. Few people have prudence  
*beaucoup éclat point repos peu gens* —

\* *Assez*, enough, is placed after the substantive in English, and always before in French: as, he has riches enough, *il a assez de richesses*.

*enough* to avoid bad company, and to distrust  
*assez pour éviter mauvais compagnie* 9 *pour se défier*  
 themselves. Mothers have often (too much) indulgence  
*d'eux-mêmes mère* 9 *souvent trop* —  
 for their children. The few vestiges which remain of the  
*enfant le peu* — *rester*  
 brilliant actions of the Greeks and Romans, are found  
*brillant* — *Grec* 21 *Romains se trouvent*  
 in Plutarch and several other historians. Authors  
*dans Plutarque* 21 *plusieurs autre historien* *auteur*  
 derive more eloquence, force, and grandeur, from the choice  
*tirer plus é* — 21 — — *choix*  
 and disposition of words, than from any other cause. Few  
 21 — *mot que d'aucune.* — f. *peu*  
 things (are necessary) to make a wise man happy. Give me  
*chose suffire (ir) pour rendre sage heureux* H moi  
 two hundred pounds of butter, five yards of riband, and a  
*cent livre beurre verge ruban*  
 great quantity of coals.  
 — *té charbon sing.*

### RULE 19.—*de*, after an Adjective.

☞ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used before  
 a substantive governed in the genitive case by an adjective or  
 a participle, followed in English by the preposition *of*, *from*,  
*by*, or *with*. Examples:

Full of charms. Endowed with virtue. Esteemed by all.  
*plein de charmes. doué de vertu. estimé de tous.*

Human life is full of disappointments. (To die) for one's  
*humain vie* 9 *plein* *revers* *Mourir* *son*  
 country, is a death full of charms. A noble but confused  
*pays mort charme* — 29 — *se*  
 thought is a diamond covered with dust. If fortune has  
*pensée diamant couvert poussière* — f 4  
 blessed you with her gifts, if besides you are endowed  
*favorisé* 48 *don* • *outre cela* • *doué*  
 with wit and judgment, be not puffed up with pride, and  
*esprit* 21 *jugement ne vous enflez pas* \* *orgueil*  
 do not contemn others. No one is fit for friendship,  
*mépriser les autres on n'est pas propre à l'amitié*  
 who is not endowed with virtue. Whoever attacks the  
*quand on doué vertu* *Quiconque attaquer*  
 sacred person of a king, is guilty of high treason.  
*sacré personne f roi coupable haut trahison*

RULE 20.—*The Article in several other Cases.*

1. No article is used in either language, before a noun which forms but one idea with the verb antecedent; which is known when they are or could be both expressed by one word in English. Examples:

To envy.	To visit.	To pity.	and so on.
<i>porter envie.</i>	<i>rendre visite.</i>	<i>avoir pitié.</i>	

2. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the preposition antecedent: such are *avec ardeur*, for *ardement*, with eagerness; *sans considération*, without consideration.

3. Before the cardinal numbers, *one, two, three, four, five, six, &c.* Examples:

Lend me twenty pounds.	have six oranges.
<i>prêtez-moi vingt livres.</i>	<i>J'ai six oranges.</i>

The article must be used before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined have a fixed number; such as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; *les neuf muses*, the nine muses; and also if it be specified: as, *les deux lettres que j'ai écrites*, the two letters which I have written; *le dix de Janvier*, the tenth of January.—These exceptions are not difficult, because they are the same in both languages.

1. Those who speak *without reflection* are exposed to many errors.—2. We often do *by self-love* what we think we do *through* (good nature).—3. Bibliographers arrange books in *five* principal classes; divinity, jurisprudence, history, polite letters, and arts.—3. The mouth of the Danube has *five* large canals in the (Euxine sea).—3. The temple of Solomon was begun *four hundred and eighty* years after the departure of the Israelites from Egypt.—1. I have *pity* (on the) poor

*ceux parler sans réflexion exposés*  
*bien 18 erreur 172 faire (ir) amour-propre ce que*  
*croire (ir) \* par bienveillance —phé*  
*—ger livre en — — théologie —*  
*histoire belle lettre f — embouchure*  
*— m grand — Pont-Euxin*  
*— m Sa— c commence \* quatre-*  
*vingts départ Israélites Egypte*  
*—1. I have pitié des pauvre pl*

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the ARTICLES.

Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of  
*secret* 9 *clef* 4 — — *—aire* in  
wisdom. Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of  
*sagesse* 4 *soin* 9 *malheur* 10 *souvent* *compagnon* •  
greatness. Lewis the fourteenth was the protector of sci-  
*grandeur* 4 *Louis* 11 *c* — *—teur* 4  
ences. The English language abounds with writings ad-  
— *anglais* *langue* *f* *abonder* *en* *écrit* *a-*  
dressed to the imagination and feelings; the inventive  
*dressé* • — 21 *sentiment* *créateur*  
powers of Shakspeare, the sublime conceptions of Milton,  
*esprit* *sing.* 14 — *—* *pensée*  
the strength and harmony of Pope, the delicacy of Addison,  
*force* *f* — *—nie* *—* *délicatesse*  
and the pathetic simplicity of Sterne, render them comparable  
*pathétique* — *—té* *rendre* 48 —  
with the best authors among the ancients.  
*dat.* • *meilleur* *auteur* *parmi* *ancien*

Some thieves having broken into a gentleman's house,  
7 *voleurs* *étant* *entrés* *dans* *la* *particulier* 17  
went to the footman's bed, and told him, that if he  
*aller* (*ir*) *c* *domestique* *lit* 17 *lui* *dire* (*ir*) *c* —  
moved, he was a dead man. I am sure, replied he, that if  
*remuer* *B* *B* *mort* *sûr* *répliqua-t-il*  
I move, I am alive.

A *en* *vie*  
Envy judges of actions by the persons who perform them;  
*envie* 9 *juger* — 4 *par* *personne* *faire* (*ir*) 48  
but equity judges of persons by their actions. When God  
*équité* 4 *—* *quand* 14  
deprives us of any thing that is dear to us, such as wife,  
*priver* 48 *quelque* *chose* *cher* 47 *tel* *que* *femme*  
children, friends, or fortune, we must submit without  
*enfant* *ami* — *f* *devoir* *A* *nous* *y* *soumettre* *sans*  
murmur or complaint. Mutual benevolence is the bond of  
*murmure* *et* *sans* *plainte* *mutuel* *bienveillance* 9 *lien* 4  
society; without it, life is grievous, full of fear, and void  
*société* *f* *sans* *elle* *vie* 9 *à* *charge* *pleine* 19 *craindre* *sans*  
of comfort. Few people deny the truth of the gospel, and  
\* *consolation* *peu* 18 *gens* *nier* *vérité* *évangile* *m*  
yet many live as if it was not true. The  
*cependant* *plusieurs* *vivre* (*ir*) *comme* *s'il* *B* *vrai*  
Portuguese send every year a fleet to Brazil, to  
— *gais* *envoyer* (*ir*) *tous* *les* *ans* *flotte* *f* *au* *Brésil* *pour*



bring cotton, amber, saltpetre, and many other articles  
*apporter coton 7 ambre salpêtre m plusieurs chose*  
 Caesar's first attempt on Britain took place fifty-five years  
 17 *attaque Bretagne f eut lieu cinquante-cinq an*  
 before the birth of Jesus Christ. Possession without right  
*avant naissance — 9 droit 4*  
 is in many cases of property a better title than right without  
*plusieurs cas propriété meilleur titre m sans*  
 possession; but it is not the same in cases of respect  
 4 *mais ce la même chose en fait —*  
 and consideration. The sins particularly forbidden in the  
 21 *péché — lièrement défendus*  
 gospel, are sensual lusts, covetousness, anger, envy,  
*évangile les plaisirs des sens, avarice 10 colère f envie*  
 hatred, pride, vanity, theft, and falsehood. The action of the  
*haine f orgueil — té vol fausseté*  
 great Scipio, when he added to the fortune of a young prin-  
*général Scipion quand ajouter c — f jeune prin-*  
 cess he had taken prisoner, all the money which her friends  
*cesse qu'il B faite prisonnière argent ami*  
 brought him to ransom her, has done him no less  
*lui apporter c pour sa rançon ne lui a pas fait moins 18*  
 honour than his famous conquests.  
*honneur fameux conquête f*  
 Geography gives a true description of the terrestrial  
*géographie donner vrai — terrestre*  
 globe; the globe has an imaginary axis, and is surrounded  
*— m — nuire axe m • • • environné*  
 with imaginary circles; the axis is a line passing through the  
 19 *cercles ligne f qui passe par*  
 centre of the earth, upon which the whole earth turns like  
*— m sur lequel toute la tourne comme*  
 a wheel upon the axle-tree. Machiavel (lays down) for  
*rone f essieu établir*  
 maxims in the art of governing, artifice, stratagem,  
*— me dans. — gouverner — 9 10 — gème*  
 (despotic power,) injustice, and irreligion. Christopher  
*despotisme — — — phe*  
 Columbus, who discovered America in 1492, was a Genoese.  
*Colomb découvrir c en B 12 Génois*  
 a great seaman, and the best geographer of his age.  
*marin géographe siècle m.*

## CHAPTER II.

### OF SUBSTANTIVES.

#### • RULE 21.—Two Substantives in the same Case.

☞ When there is a *conjunction* between two nouns, they must be put in the same case; and if there be a *preposition* before the first, it must be repeated before all others. Examples:

You are in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust;  
*vous êtes dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.*  
 as if it were of doubt, of fear, and of distrust.

Criticism examines the merit of literary productions  
*critique f —ner mérite m littéraire — 2*  
 under the three general heads of thought, arrangement, and  
*sous point de pensée 4 ordre*  
 expression. One day spent in the practice of virtue and  
*— un jour passé dans pratique f vertu 4*  
 religion, is better than a whole life spent in impiety and  
*— vaut mieux que entier vie passée impiété 4*  
 wickedness. Justice is obedience to written laws and  
*méchanceté 9 — f obéissance 4 écrit loi 2*  
 constitutions. Corrupted men and of ill lives easily  
*— corrompu 9 mauvaise vie aisément*  
 believe that there is no more virtue, probity, and sin-  
 172 *croire (ir) A il n'y a pas plus 18 —té*  
 cerity in others than in themselves. The rules of civility  
*—té dans les autres eux-mêmes règle 4 honnêteté*  
 are those of decency and good manners.  
*celles bienéance 4 2 mœurs f*

#### RULE 22.—Genitive Case.

☞ The latter of two substantives is generally put in the genitive case in French, whether it be in the genitive or dative in English. Example:

The impious are enemies to virtue.  
*les impies sont les ennemis de la vertu — not à la vertu.*

Our consciousness of good and evil shows us what  
*connaissance bien 4 21 mal montre 47 quelle*  
 ought to be the rule to govern our actions. Pleasure is  
*doit \* règle f pour diriger — plaisir 9*  
 often an enemy to reason and virtue. The corruption  
*souvent l' raison 4 21*

- of the heart is often the cause of the corruption of the mind.  
*cœur — f esprit*  
 Peru has rich mines of gold, silver, and diamonds.  
*Pérou m 5 — 8 or, argent, 21 diamant.*

### RULE 23.—Nouns in the Dative.

1. When two substantives are joined together, so as to make a compound word, that which is the first in English is put the second in French, and is usually preceded by the preposition *à*, when it expresses the use of the first. Examples :

Silk-worms. A wind-mill. A patch-box.  
*des vers à soie. un moulin à vent. une boîte à mouches.*  
 as if it were, worms to silk, a mill to wind, a box to patch.

2. Such a noun is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it is the name of something good to eat or drink. Examples :

The hay-market. The rabbit-man.  
*le marché au foin. l'homme aux lapins.*

1. Many pretend that battles are not so bloody, since  
*Plusieurs prétendre bataille 9 si sanglant depuis*  
 the invention of fire-arms.—2. Where is the cream-pot?  
*— feu armes où crème f —*

1. There are a (great many) silk-worms in Italy.  
*il y a \* beaucoup 18 soie ver en Italie.*

1. Go into the dining-room, the company is there.  
*aller (ir) 11 dans manger salle f compagnie y est*

- 2. I have been to the fish-market, however I have bought  
*poisson marché cependant acheter*  
 no fish, because it was too dear.—2. The oyster-woman is  
*18 parce qu'il 11 trop cher huitres femme*

- at the door.—2. I have broken the milk-pot.—1. I always  
*porte f casser lait — 172*

- keep fire-arms in my bed-room for my safety during  
*garder feu armes 7 coucher chambre f sureté pendant*  
 the night; I have no gunpowder at present; thus my  
*nuit n'ai point de canon poudre à ainsi*

fire-arms are useless.  
*inutile.*

### RULE 24.—Collective General.

A noun collective general (such as *peuple*, *nation*, *flotte*, *armée*, &c.) requires that the verb, the adjective or pronouns which have reference to it, be always put in the singular in French. Example :

The army of the confederates is very numerous.

*Armée des confédérés est très-nombreuse.*

Is it necessary that (the whole universe) (should arm  
*nécessaire tout l'univers s'armer*  
 itself) to destroy one man? A drop of water (is enough)  
*pour détruire goutte eau suffire (ir)*  
 to kill him. The society of men would soon be overturned,  
*pour le tuer société 4 bientôt 172 détruite*  
 if (every one) could (with impunity) take from  
*chacun pouvoir (ir) 8 impunément ôter à un*  
 another what he should think proper. The people wish  
*autre ce qu' . . . juger à propos peuple m désirer*  
 for peace; but the parliament, who know best the in-  
*\* 4 paix parlement connaître mieux . in-*  
 terests of the nation, have voted for the continuation of the  
*lérêt — voter . —*  
 war. The grand fleet set sail yesterday. The  
*guerre flotte mettre (ir) c à la voile hier*  
 enemy presented themselves before the gates of our town,  
*sing. présenter c se devant porte ville*  
 and began the attack on Tuesday: our garrison made a  
*commencer c attaque \* Mardi garnison faire (ir) c*  
 sally on Thursday, and obliged them to raise the siege.  
*sortie \* Jeudi obliger c 48 à lever —*

#### RULE 25.—Collective Partitive.

The verbs, the adjectives, and pronouns, which have reference to a collective partitive (such as *nombre, joule, beaucoup, &c.*) agree in gender and number with the noun following. Example:

A great number of friends remained attached to me.  
*un grand nombre d'amis me restèrent attachés.*

If, however, the collective partitive were preceded by a demonstrative pronoun or the definite article, *le, la, les*, it should govern the adjective, the pronoun, and the verb in the singular number. Example:

The number of the inhabitants amounts to 1000 men.  
*le nombre des habitants monte à 1000 hommes.\**

\* Unless *la plupart* be followed by a noun singular, the verb which comes after it is always put in the plural. Example: *la plupart du monde le croit; la plupart le croient, la plupart des jeunes gens le croient.*

The *crowd* of soldiers who came obliged us to retire.  
*foule f soldats venir c obliger c 48 à nous retirer*  
 A *multitude* of inhabitants abandoned their country. A  
*— f habitant abandonner c pays*  
*crowd* of children ran after him.  
*troupe enfans courir (ir) c après 49*  
 A *crowd* of nymphs crowned with flowers swam behind  
*foule nymphe couronnées 19 fleur nager B derrière*  
 the *car* of the goddess. When the unbelievers invaded  
*char déesse quand infidèle envahir c*  
 Spain, an innumerable *multitude* of inhabitants retired  
*Espagne 5 innombrable — f se retirer c*  
 into the Asturias, where they proclaimed Pelagius for  
*les —ies où proclamer c Pélage \**  
 their king.

## CHAPTER III.

### OF ADJECTIVES.—Page 14.

This chapter is divided into four sections. The first treats of the concord of adjectives; the second of their government; the third of the adjectives of dimension; and the fourth of comparatives and superlatives.

## SECTION I.

### OF THE CONCORD AND PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 26.—*Adjectives are declinable.*

☞ All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun to which they are joined or relative. Example :

Good bread, meat, and apples.  
*de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bonnes pommes.*

N.B. It may be seen by this example, that whenever the adjective is placed before several substantives in English, it must be repeated before every one in French, and agree with each of them.

Marriage is the most perfect state of friendship; it  
*9 mariage 44 plus parfait état 4 amitié*

lessens our cares by dividing them, and doubles our pleasures  
*diminuer* *soin* *en* *divisant* 48 *doubler* *plaisir*  
 by mutual participation. Our minister has profound judg-  
*par* *mutuel* 2 — *—tre* *un* *profond* *juge-*  
 ment, invariable industry, and a very extensive know-  
*ment* 10 — *—trie* *très-étendu* *con-*  
 ledge of the interests of foreign courts. The victory  
*naissance* *intérêt* *étranger* *cour* 2 *victoire* f  
 which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful  
*César* *gagner* c *plaine* f *Pharsale* c *funeste*  
 to his country, pernicious to the Romans, and dismal  
*pays* *—cieux* *Romains* *désastreux*  
 to human nature  
*pour* 2 *humain* *genre* in

RULE 27.— *The Adjective agrees with the last Noun.*

If an adjective or a participle come in English immediately before several substantives, it is put after them in French, and usually agrees with the last only. Example :

Lewis XIV. had in France an absolute power and authority.  
*Louis XIV. avait en France un pouvoir et une autorité absolue.*  
 or *Louis XIV. avait en France une autorité et un pouvoir absolu.*

Though when two substantives of the same gender are followed in French by an adjective that is meant to apply to both, it may be of that gender, and in the plural number. Examples :

We saw only furniture of massive gold and silver.  
*On n'y voyait que meubles d'or et d'argent massifs.*  
 The sweetness and virtue depicted in your face.  
*La douceur et la vertu peintes sur votre visage.*

If the adjective were any of those mentioned in rule 30, it should be repeated before each substantive. Example :

*Louis XIV. avait un grand pouvoir et une grande autorité.*

Garrick played with charming taste and nobleness.  
*représenter* 11 *avec* *un* *charmant* *goût* 10 *noblesse*  
 Sylla acquired in Rome an absolute power and authority.  
*acquérir* (ir) c à *absolu* *pouvoir* 10 *autorité*  
 The English fight at sea with wonderful courage  
*combattre* (ir) *sur* *mer* *un* *surprenant* —  
 and intrepidity. In most courtiers we find  
 10 *intrépidité* *dans* *la* *plupart* *des* *courtisan* *on* *ne* *trouve*  
 nothing but an affected politeness and sincerity. She has her  
 \* *qu'* *affecté* *politesse* *sincérité* *la*  
 mouth and eyes shut.  
*bouche* f *yeux* *fermé*

RULE 28.—*Adjectives relating to several Nouns.*

1. If there be a verb between them, the adjectives or participles which have reference to several substantives are always put in the plural, though the nouns be in the singular. Examples :

His father and brother are very learned.  
*son père et son frère sont très-savans* — pl. m.  
 His mother and sister are handsome.  
*sa mère et sa sœur sont belles* — pl. f.

2. If the substantives be of different genders, the adjectives and participles which come after the verb, and have reference to them, are always put in the plural masculine Example :

Your brother and sister are prudent and wise.  
*votre frère et votre sœur sont prudents et sages* — pl. m.

2. Modesty and disinterestedness deserve to be praised  
 9 — *tie* 10 *désintéressement mériter d' louer*  
 and admired.— 2. The room and the closet were open,  
 — *rer* chambre f cabinet B ouvert  
 but the window and the drawer were shut.— 2. Men and  
*fenêtre f tiroir B fermer*  
 women are mortal.— 1. My mother and sister are dead.— 2  
*femme mortel mère 63 sœur mort*  
 His son and daughter are happy.— 2. Your courage and  
*fil 63 fille heureux*  
 boldness seem astonishing to me.— 2. Pride and misery are  
 63 *hardiesse paraître étonnant* 47 9 *orgueil* 10 *misère f ne*  
 but too often united.— 2. Health, favour, and power are  
*sont que trop souvent unir* 9 *santé* 10 *faveur pouvoir*  
 common to the good and wicked, and can be taken from  
*commun* 6 *bons* 10 *méchant peuvent nous être ôté*  
 us ; — 1. but glory and virtue are solid, sure, and lasting.— 2  
 9 *gloire* 10 *solide* — *durable*  
 (There are) some persons whose courage and virtue need  
*il y a* 7 *personne* 80 9 — 10 *ont besoin*  
 not be sustained.  
*d'être soutenir*

RULE 29.—*Place of Adjectives.*

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are usually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the last, whether there is one or not in English. Examples :

A just and bountiful God. A long tedious book.  
*un Dieu juste et bienfaisant. un livre long et ennuyeux.*

Great and extensive projects joined to a wise execution.  
*vaste projet joindre sage —*  
 constitute the great minister. A shallow argument has  
*faire (ir) —tre faible —*  
 often persuaded persons who had not been convinced  
*souvent persuader 7 personnes f n convaincu*  
 by palpable and evident proofs. Courtiers often (flatter  
*— é — 7 preuve f courtisan souvent 172 se*  
 themselves) that under a young liberal prince, they  
*flatter sous jeune — —*  
 (shall be able) to attain to a power which they never could  
*pouvoir (ir) \* arriver poste m 120*  
 hope for (in the) service of an old frugal prince. Brave and  
*n'espérer \* au — m âgé économe — —*  
 trusty men are generally humane and merciful; while  
*constant généralement humain miséricordieux pende*  
 men of base and low mind are usually insolent  
*que un bas rampant esprit ordinairement —*  
 and tyrannical, when they have power. A plain, simple, and  
*— que quand autorité 7 uni —*  
 natural style is the only one (to be recommended).  
*—rel — m seul \* recommandable*

RULE 30. — *Adjective put before the Substantive.*

☞ The following adjectives, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux*; also the adjectives of numbers, and the *possessive, demonstrative, and indeterminate* pronouns, precede in French, as in English, the substantive to which they are joined. Example :

A good boy. A good girl.  
*un bon garçon, une bonne fille.*  
 not *un garçon bon, une fille bonne.*

A good king often loses, by the ill-conduct of  
*roi souvent 172 perdre mauvais conduite f*  
 his ministers, the affection of his subjects. Socrates and  
*—tre — sujet —*  
 Plato were two great philosophers. Young men hope that  
*Platon B —phe les jeunes gens espérer \**  
 they shall live long, but no one is sure he shall live  
*\* \* vivre longtemps personne n' sûr \* de*  
 till to-morrow. Little geniuses are dazzled with (every thing)  
*jusqu'à demain 2 Petit génie éblouir de tout*  
 that sparkles, because (every thing) is new to them; great  
*ce qui briller parce que tout nouveau pour eux 2*



geniuses, (on the) contrary, admire but few things, because  
*au contraire n'admirer que peu* 18 f *parce que*  
 few things appear new to them. (How many) books have  
*peu* . *paraître nouveau* 47 *combien* 18 *livre*  
 you got? I have *two* grammars and *one* exercise book. Is  
 \* *grammaire* *livre de thèmes*  
 your father at home? No, sir; but my mother is, and she  
 . 92 *à la maison non* *y est*  
 will be glad to see you.  
*bien aise de vous voir*

### RULE 31.—Adjective put after the Substantive.

☞ The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule are usually placed in French after the substantive which they qualify. Examples:

Cold weather. A round table. The public good.  
*Le temps froid. une table ronde. le bien public.*  
 not *un froid temps, une ronde table, le public bien.*

Humility is the basis of christian virtues. A prejudiced  
 9 *—té* *base* f *chrétien* 2 *prévenu*  
 mind is the source of innumerable errors. The public good  
*esprit* — f 16 *innombrable erreur* *bien*  
 is preferable to private interest. Satirical minds are like  
 — *particulier intérêt* 2 9 *—que esprit comme*  
 'small insects, whose existence is manifested only by the efforts  
*petits insecte* 2 *dont* — *ne se manifeste que* —  
 which they make to corrupt things. Geography is the  
*faire (ir) pour corrompre* 9 9 *Géographie*  
 description of the terrestrial globe. A silent awe, a doubtful  
 — *—tre —m* *silencieux respect timide*  
 eye, and a hesitating voice, are the natural indications of a  
*œil* *tremblant voix* — *rel marque* f  
 true and respectful love. The central fire is the physical  
*vrai* 29 *—tueux amour* — *feu* — *que*  
 cause of the heat of the subterraneous springs.  
 — f *chaleur* *souterrain* *source* f

## SECTION II.

### OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

#### RULE 32. — Adjectives which govern the Genitive.

☞ The adjectives and participles which signify *plenty* or *scarcity*, as well as those followed in English by the preposi-

tion *of, from, with, or by*, are generally followed in French by the preposition *de* without any article. Examples:

Life is full of miseries. I am satisfied *with* you.  
*la vie est pleine de misères.* • *Je suis content de vous.*  
 not • *est pleine des misères*, nor *Je suis content avec vous.*

Nature is content *with* little. I am fatigued *with* running.  
 — *se contente peu* *fatigué* • *courir*  
 He is accused *of* robbery. You are loaded *with* honours.  
 • *—sé vol* *comblé* *honneur*

They are worthy *of* praise. Human life is never free *from*  
*digne louange humain* 31 *vic* 120 *exempl*  
 troubles. Most men are dissatisfied *with* their condition.  
*peine la plupart des mécontent* — •

We are in vain endued *with* reason, if we are not endued  
*en — doué raison* •

*with* virtue. Xerxes being loaded *with* all the advantages of  
 • *—ès* *comblé* *avantages*

body and of fortune, and yet not being satisfied *with* them,  
*corps* † 10 † *cependant n'en étant pas satisfait*

proposed a reward to him who should invent new  
 — *ser c récompense celui qui inventer E nouveau*  
 pleasures for him.  
*plaisir* 8 49

### RULE 33. — *Adjectives which govern the Dative.*

The adjectives which denote *aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, or readiness*; govern the noun in the dative with *à, au, à la, or aux*, according to its gender and number; and the verb in the present of the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, whatever case or preposition they govern in English. Examples:

He is fit *for* any thing. Are you ready *to* go out?  
 • *il est propre à tout.* *êtes-vous prêt à sortir?*

Most children are inclined *to* idleness. A disturbed  
*la plupart des enfans enclin paresse* † *troublé* 31  
 mind is not fit *to* discharge its duty. A christian  
*esprit propre remplir* 68 *devoir* *chrétien*  
 ought to be ready *to* die, rather than deny his faith.  
*devoir* A \* *prêt mourir plutôt que de renier* *foi*  
 It is ridiculous to put one's-self in a passion against objects  
*il —le de mettre se* 48 *en* \* *colère contre objet* 7  
 which are insensible *of* \* our anger. I am sensible *of* your  
*colère*

---

\* Sensible and insensible govern the dative in French, and the genitive in English.

kindness. That is easy to say. Marshy places are  
*bonté cela • facile dire marécageux 31 lieu 9*  
 liable to heavy fogs.  
*sujet épais 31 brouillard 7*

RULE 34.— *Adjectives followed by à and envers.*

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in English by the preposition *in*; such are *curieux à*, curious *in*; *exact à*, precise *in*; *habile à*, skilful *in*; *zélé à*, zealous *in*, &c. Some others take the preposition *envers*; such are, *affable, civil, cruel*, and all those which signify behaviour towards others. Example:

Young people should be civil to every body;  
*les jeunes gens doivent être honnêtes envers tout le monde*

Merchants should be precise in fulfilling their engagements,  
*le marchand doit être exact remplir* —  
 and christians patient in suffering injuries. Your brother is  
*chrétien — souffrir 9 — re*  
 skilful in (doing every thing). Scipio Africanus was  
*habile tout faire Scipion l'Africain B*  
 respectful to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his  
*—tuteur mère libéral sœurs bon*  
 servants, just and affable to every body. I do not like  
*domestique juste — tout le monde aimer*  
 people who are cruel to animals.  
*personnes f — —*

### SECTION III.

#### ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

RULE 35.— *How to express the Adjectives of Dimension.*

The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in French by an adjective or a substantive. Thus, *high* can be expressed by *haut de* or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *long de* or *de longueur*; *wide* by *large de*, or *de largeur*; but *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*. Example:

A house eighty feet long and forty high;  
*une maison de 80 pieds de longueur et de 40 de hauteur.*  
 or *une maison longue de 80 pieds et haute de 40:—*  
 not *une maison quatre-vingts pieds longue et quarante haute.*

Observe to put *de* before the numbers, *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.* when they are not preceded by a verb, and also before the words of dimension, *hauteur, profondeur, &c.*

The monument of London is a round pillar of the  
 — — — — — *—dres rond 31 pilier*  
 Doric order, two hundred feet high; it stands on a  
 31 — *—que ordre cents pied est placé sur*  
 pedestal twenty feet high. The room of the Tower (in  
*piédestal vingt pied salle Tour*  
 which) is the royal train of artillery, is an apartment three  
 'où 31 train 16 — *—rie appartement*  
 hundred and eighty feet long, fifty wide, and twenty  
 \* *quatre-vingts cinquante vingt*  
 high; it has a passage (in the) middle sixteen feet wide, on  
 f — *— au milieu seize pied de*  
 each side of which the artillery is placed.  
*chaque côté duquel placé*

RULE 36. — *Adjectives of Dimension take avoir.*

The English make use of the verb *to be*, when they want to express the height, depth, or breadth of an object; and the French of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the word of number. Example:

That house is fifty feet long.  
*cette maison a cinquante pieds de longueur, not est 50, &c.*

London-bridge is nine hundred and twenty feet long,  
*Londres 17 pont cent \* pied*  
 fifty-five high, and fifty-six wide. Westminster-bridge is  
*cinquante-cinq cinquante-six Westminster 17 pont*  
 forty-four feet broad; the (free way) under the arches  
*quarante-quatre passage sous —*  
 of this bridge is eight hundred and seventy feet; it  
*ce \* soixante-dix*  
 consists of fourteen piers, thirteen large arches, and  
*est composé pile f 21 treize grand — f*  
 two small ones; the two middle piers are each seventeen  
*petit \* du milieu 17 chacun dix-sept*  
 feet wide, and contain two hundred tons of solid  
*contenir tonneau solide 31*  
 stones; all the others decrease in breadth by a foot on  
*pierre autre diminuer en largeur d'un pied de*  
 each side. The (coffee-trees) are commonly forty feet  
*chaque côté élever ordinairement quarante.*  
 high; they yield twice a year an abundant crop. The  
*donner deux fois l'an abondant 31 récolte f*

famous mine of Potosi in Peru, is more than fifteen hundred feet deep. — f — dans le Pérou 39 quinze

## SECTION IV.

## OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The comparative of equality is made by putting *aussi*, or *autant* before the adjective; that of superiority, by putting *plus*; and that of inferiority, by putting *moins*, *si*, or by a negation of equality, and this form requires *si* to be substituted for *aussi*: when there are two or more adjectives, the sign of comparison is repeated before every one.

RULE 37.—*as* expressed by *que*.

The word *as*, used in English after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expressed in French by *que*, and never by *comme*. Examples:

He is as learned as you. I am not so old as he.  
*il est aussi savant que vous. Je ne suis pas si âgé que lui.*

N. B. When *as* is followed by *as*, the first is expressed by *à* *ssi*, as in the example above.

The love of our neighbour is as necessary in society for the happiness of life, as in christianity for eternal salvation. Great talents are of every condition; and if they do not shine so commonly in low people as in

others, it is for want of care and cultivation. The man truly great, preserves his judgment (in the) midst of dangers with (as much) presence of mind, as if he (was

not in) any danger. It is as easy to do good as to do evil. Nothing delights (so much) as the works of nature.

The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine. Paris is not so populous as London.

RULE 38. — by *expressed* by *de*.

The word *by*, which is often used in English after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is expressed in French by *de*, and never by *par*. Example :

Your father is richer than mine *by* much.  
*votre père est de beaucoup plus riche que le mien.*

The condor is a bird of Peru, bigger than the ostrich  
 — oiseau du Pérou plus grand autruche  
*by* much. The goddess Calypso was taller than all her  
*beaucoup* *décasse* — B *plus grand que*  
 nymphs *by* (the whole head). I am older than you *by* two  
*nymphes* *toute la tête* *plus âgé que*  
 years; however, you are taller than I *by* two inches. Your  
*ans* *cependant* *plus grand* *moi* *pouce*  
 son is more learned than mine *by* much.  
*fil* *plus savant* 69 *beaucoup*

RULE 39.—than *expressed* by *que*, or *by* *de*.

The word *than*, which comes in English after a comparative, is expressed in French by *que* before a noun or a pronoun, and by *de* before the cardinal numbers and fractional parts, *one, two, three, half, &c.* Examples :

He is more *than* half ruined. He is taller *than* you.  
*Il est plus d'à moitié ruiné. Il est plus grand que vous.*

He is more *than* twenty years of age.  
*Il a plus de vingt ans.*

Augustus was not perhaps a greater man *than* Antony,  
*Auguste* 14 B *peut-être* \* *Antoine*  
 but he was more fortunate. Nothing is more pleasing to the  
 B *heureux* 118 *agréable*  
 mind *than* the light of truth. The simplicity of nature is  
*esprit* *lumière + vérité* — *té* 4 —  
 more amiable *than* all the embellishments of art. Is there  
*aimable* — *lissement* • 4 — *y a-t-il*  
 (any thing) more natural *than* to love those who do us  
*rien de* — *rel* • *d'aimer ceux* *faire (ir)* 47  
 good? The consumption of wheat in London is more *than*  
*bien* 7 *consommation* f *de blé* à — *dres* *de plus*  
 five millions and • ninety thousand bushels a year;  
*cinq* — \* *quatre-vingt-dix* *mille* *boisseau* *par an*  
 that of oxen and cows more *than* one hundred and twenty  
*celle* *bœuf* 21 *vache* *cent* *vingt*

thousand, and that of sheep and lambs more *than* nine hundred thousand. Virtue is more precious *than* riches. Lewis the fourteenth, in 1681, had sixty thousand sailors, and more *than* a hundred men of war.

celle <sup>c</sup> mouton 21 agneau  
4 vertu précieux 4 richesses Louis  
11 en B soixante matelots  
vaisseau guerre

RULE 40.—*than* expressed by *que de*, and *que ne*.

☞ The word *than*, which comes after a comparative, is expressed by *que de*, when the next verb is in the present of the infinitive; and usually by *que ne*, when the next verb is in any tense of the indicative mood. Examples:

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge.

~~plus~~ <sup>est</sup> plus noble de pardonner que de se venger.

Your son is more learned and wise *than* I thought.

votre fils est plus savant et plus sage que je ne pensais

It is greater to overcome one's passions, *than* to conquer whole nations. There are some authors who write better *than* they speak, and (some others) who speak better *than* they write.

il grand de vaincre ses — conquérir  
entières 31 — 7 il y a 7 auteur écrire mieux  
parler d'autres

You make greater progress *than* I should have thought; and you behave better *than* when you were young.

faire (ir) 8 progrès  
penser se conduire mieux B jeune

We flatter ourselves more *than* we should. It is harder to avoid censure *than* to gain applause; for the latter may (be obtained) by one great action; but

se flatter \* plus devoir B difficile  
d'éviter censure gagner des applaudissemens

to avoid the former, (a man) must never do wrong. Religion teaches us to suffer injuries patiently, rather *than* to revenge.

dermier m pl pouvoir (ir) A s'obtenir mais  
pour éviter premier f on ne devoir A jamais mal

9— *apprendre* (ir) à 47 souffrir 9—re patiemment  
plutôt vous venger

---

\* Ne is left out, when there is a conjunction between *que* and the verb. Example: je me porte mieux *que* quand j'étais en France; not *que* quand je n'étais en France.

• RULE 41.—*the more expressed by plus.*

☞ The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never. Thus, *the more* is expressed by *plus*, and *the less* by *moins*, not by *le plus*, or *le moins*, which are used only in superlatives. Example :

*The more* I study French, *the more* I like it.

plus j'étudie le Français, plus je l'aime.

not, *le plus j'étudie le Français, le plus je l'aime.*

*The more* I know mankind, *the more* I love them.

connaître les hommes aimer

*The more* a man is adorned with moderation, temperance,

doué 32. é— 21 é—

and justice, *the more* valuable is he. *The more* one drop-

il est estimable

sical drinks, *the more* thirsty he is. ~~the less~~ <sup>hy-</sup>

dropique boire (ir) il est altéré

you study, *the less* you will improve. *The more* I

étudier p

profiter

examine that question, *the more* difficult I find it. *The*

—ner —

je la trouve difficile

*more* we want people to serve us, *the less* happy

avoir besoin de gens pour nous servir

nous

are we.

sommes heureux

RULE 42.—*Precedency of plus and moins.*

☞ If the comparatives of proportion are made with two substantives, or two adjectives, the words of the sentence are put in the following order. 1. *Plus* or *moins*. 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The substantive, adjective, or adverb. The rest as in English. Example :

*The richer* people are, *the more* covetous they are.

1 2 3 4. 1 2 3 4

plus on est riche, plus on est avare.

not *le plus riche on est, le plus avare on est.*

as if it were : *more* one is rich, *more* one is covetous ; and so on for all the sentences of the same kind.

*The more* elevated in dignity one is, *the less* pride one

élevé en —té on d'orgueil on

ought to have. *The more* difficult a thing is, *the more*

devoir \*

difficile chose f

honourable.

When a man possesses nothing great

elle est honorable

ne posséder rien 18



but his birth, *the higher* that birth is, *the more* insignificant it must appear. *The shorter* the day is, *the longer* the night. *The less* money he gets, *the less* expense he (is at).  
*faire (ir)*

RULE 43.—*The Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive.*

☞ The superlative always governs the noun in the genitive case in French, and most commonly the verb in the subjunctive mood. Examples :

China is the greatest empire in the world.  
*la Chine est le plus grand empire du monde—genit.*  
 You are the happiest man I know.  
*vous êtes l'homme le plus heureux que je connaisse—subj.*  
 not, empire dans le monde ; nor, que je connais.

Probity is one of the greatest qualities a man can possess. Of all the amusements and pleasures of life, conversation has always been looked upon as the most reasonable method of unbending the mind. In the rich crown which His Majesty wears in parliament, is a large emerald seven inches round, the finest in the world. The best quality a man can have, is to be civil and obliging toward the most uncivil and disobliging people. The city of Troy was formerly the most famous in Asia Minor. The reign of Lewis the Fourteenth was one of the longest, and altogether one of the most glorious which is recorded in history.

—té 9 une —té qu'  
 can possess. Of all the amusements and pleasures  
 pouvoir (ir) posséder tous — les plaisir  
 of life, conversation has always been looked upon as  
 4 vie 9— toujours , considérée \* comme  
 the most reasonable method of unbending the mind. In  
 raisonnable 31 moyen 44 139 délasser esprit  
 the rich crown which His Majesty wears in parliament, is  
 couronne 31 —té f porter au parlement d y  
 a large emerald seven inches round, the finest in the  
 a grosse émeraude f 35 ponce de tour  
 world. The best quality a man can have, is to be  
 monde m meilleur qu' pouvoir (ir) d'être  
 civil and obliging toward the most uncivil and disobliging  
 — obligeant envers incivil 31 désobligeant 44  
 people. The city of Troy was formerly the most famous  
 personne f pl ville Troie n autrefois fameux  
 in Asia Minor. The reign of Lewis the Fourteenth was one  
 Asie Mineure règne Louis 11 c  
 of the longest, and altogether one of the most glorious which  
 tout à la fois glorieux  
 is recorded in history.  
 pl rapportés dans 4 histoire

**RULE 44.**—*The Superlative takes an Article.*

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article *le, la, les*, before them; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first. Examples:

The greatest man in the French army.  
*le plus grand homme de l'armée française.*  
 You are the most obliging man in the town.  
*vous êtes l'homme le plus obligeant de la ville.*

N. B. The superlatives precede the substantive when they are formed from the adjectives mentioned in rule 30, and usually go after when they are formed from any other.

The most learned men are not often the most virtuous.  
*savant 31 souvent vertueux*  
 Sobriety renders the most common way of living agree-  
*sobriété 9 rendre commun 31 genre m vie agré-*  
 able; it gives the most vigorous health, which is the most  
*able elle donner vigoureux 31 santé qui*  
 constant of all pleasures. Pride shuts the mind against the  
*106 plaisir orgueil fermer esprit à*  
 plainest conviction. The Emperor Antoninus is considered as  
*évident 31 — reur Antonin considérer*  
 one of the greatest princes who ever reigned. The  
*un 30 — aient jamais régné*  
 canal of Languedoc is one of the most memorable monuments  
*— du — un mé— 31 —*  
 which have been made in the age of Lewis the Fourteenth.  
*qui 43 faits dans siècle m Louis 11*  
 The most ancient and general idolatry, was the worship ren-  
*29 idolâtrie B culte m ren-*  
 dered to the sun  
*du soleil*

**RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon ADJECTIVES,  
 COMPARATIVES, and SUPERLATIVES.**

The first wing of the noble and superb edifice of Greenwich  
*30 aile f 29 — be bâtiment —*  
 was erected by Charles the Second. The epic poem,  
*c élevé — 11 épique 31 poème m*  
 whether it appear in the majestic simplicity of Homer,  
*soit qu'il paraitre f dans — tueux 31 — té Homère*  
 or in the finished elegance of Virgil, presents an endless  
*finie 31 élé— Virgile présenter sans fin 31*

variety of grand and beautiful objects, which it is impossible  
*variété* 29 — *beau objet qu'* —  
 to contemplate without a perpetual succession of agreeable  
*de* — *pler sans perpétuel* 31 — *agréable* 31  
 emotions. It may be said that a magistrate is a  
*émotions on pouvoir (ir)* A \* *dire* — *trist*  
 speaking law, and the law a dumb magistrate.,  
*parlant* 31 *loi* *muet* 31

The great wall (on the) north of China is about  
*muraille au nord la Chine* 36 *environ*  
 fifteen hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that em-  
*quinze* 35 — 31 —  
 pire is about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of  
 — *dix-huit* 35 *mur*  
 Babylon were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad.  
*Babylone* B 36 *piéd* 35

The fewer desires, the more peace. The more we  
 \* *moins* 18 *désir* \* 18 *pair* 41 *on*  
 abstain from sensual pleasures, the easier we (can do  
*s'abstenir sensuel* 31 *plaisir plus aisément* 42 *pouvoir* A  
 without them); and the more we indulge them, the  
*s'en passer* 41 *satisfaire* 48 41  
 more (desirous we are) to gratify them. An angry man  
*on désire* \* *satisfaire* 48 *en colère* 31  
 who suppresses his passion, thinks worse than he speaks;  
*étouffer* — *penser plus mal* 40 *parler*  
 an angry man who will chide speaks worse than he  
*vouloir (ir)* A *gronder* 40  
 thinks. One of the greatest defects of the Pharsalia, is that  
*un défaut Pharsale* f *cette*  
 fury of imagination which Lucan did not know how to  
*fougue* f — *que Lucain savoir (ir)* B \* \*  
 repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast  
*réprimer en faire (ir)* \* *plutôt enthousiaste* m  
 than a poet  
*poète*

I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young  
*n' pas pitié de misère* f *ceux jeune*  
 and strong, choose rather to beg than to work; but I  
*fort aimer mieux* \* *mendier* 40 *de travailler mais j'ai*  
 pity the old who cannot get their livelihood.  
*pitié des vieillards pouvoir (ir)* A *gagner* *vie*  
 Westminster Abbey, within its walls, is three hundred  
 17 *Abbaye* f *en dedans des mur* 36 *cent*  
 and sixty feet long; at the nave it is seventy feet broad,  
 \* *soixante piéd* 35 *à nef* 36 *soixante-dix* 35  
 and at the cross one hundred and ninety. The front  
*croix* \* \* *quatre-vingt-dix* *façade*

of Somerset House towards the Strand is about one hundred  
 17 vers — p 36 environ \*  
 feet long, and the front towards the principal court is two  
 35 vers 31 — cour 36  
 hundred feet and more.

The most learned men make sometimes the grossest  
 • savant 31 faire (ir) quelquefois grossier 44  
 mistakes. Obedience is the surest means of pleasing  
 faute f obéissance 44 moyen sing. plaire 139 à  
 our superiors.  
 supérieur

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.— See p. 17.

THIS chapter is divided into three sections. The first shows when the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive. The second treats of the pronouns used with reference to animals and things. The third explains the right placing of personal pronouns, &c.

## SECTION I.

### WHEN THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE CONJUNCTIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE.

#### RULE 45.—Personal Pronouns in the Nominative.

1. The personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*, are usually *conjunctive*, and expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, when they are the subject or the nominative case of a verb. Examples:

*I play; thou singest; he dances; we speak;*  
*je joue; tu chantes; il danse; nous parlons.*

2. They are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; first, when divided by a conjunction: as, *lui et moi nous y irons*, not *il et je*, he and I shall go there. Secondly, when they are used in answer to a question: as, *qui a fait cela?* — *moi*, not *je*; who has done that? — *I*. Thirdly, when they come after a comparative: as, *il est plus savant qu'eux*, not *qu'ils*; he is more learned than *they*. Fourthly, when they come before the word *qui* or *seul*: as,

c'est moi qui le dis, not c'est je; it is I who say so: lui seul peut le faire, not il seul; he alone can do it.

1. The eagle has a very piercing eye; he looks at  
                   aigle m                    la très-perçant 31 v're                    regarder \*  
 the sun without lowering his eye-lids; he inhabits the  
                   soleil sans 139 baisser                    les paupière                    habiter  
 cold countries, he builds his nest on the summit of the  
 froid 31 pays                    bâtir                    nid sur                    sommet  
 highest trees. I am not so learned as your brother, but he  
                   31 arbre m                    si savant que                    frère  
 is older than I.—1. You speak too fast.—2. He and your  
                   âgé                    trop vite  
 brother were of the same opinion.

                  c                    même —  
 2. They and my brother are come.—2. They alone have  
                   venir 143                    seul  
 fought the enemy; and consequently they alone deserve  
 combattre (ir) ennemi                    conséquemment                    seul mériter  
 to be rewarded for that brilliant action which ensures our  
 d' récompensés                    brillant 31 —                    qui assurer  
 victory.—2. Telemachus, speaking of his father Ulysses to  
 victoire f                    Télémaque                    Ulysse  
 the goddess Calypso, said to her: Penelope his wife, and I  
                   déesse —                    dire (ir) c 47 Pénélope femme  
 who am his son, have lost all hope (of seeing him  
                   nous                    perdu 106 espérance                    de le revoir  
 again).

Sir, some one has written a book against you.—Who?  
 monsieur \* on                    écrire                    livre m contre                    qui  
 Scopas.—He? I forgive him; what he writes is read (by  
                   lui pardonner ce qu'                    n'est lu de  
 no one); he hurts no one but himself. You like the town,  
 personne ne nuire \* qu'à lui-même                    ville f  
 and I the country.  
                   campagne f

#### RULE 46.—Personal Pronouns in the Genitive.

The personal pronouns, of me, of him, of her, of us, of you, of them, are most frequently disjunctive in the genitive case, and expressed by *de moi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux* or *d'elles*. Example:

They often speak of me, but I never speak of them.\*  
*ils parlent souvent de moi, mais je ne parle jamais d'eux.*

---

\* They are sometimes expressed by *en*, in answer to a question: as, *parlez-vous de moi?*—oui, j'en parlais; *parlez-vous d'eux?*—oui, j'en parlais, &c.

When one advised Philip to expel from his  
*comme on conseiller B à Philippe de chasser*  
 dominions a man who had spoken ill of him; I will take  
*état B mal 172 se garder*  
 care not to do it, replied Philip; he would go (every  
*D. bien de le faire répliquer C aller (ir) E partout*  
 where), and speak ill of me. In the education of youth,  
*\* dans é— des jeunes gens*  
 we ought to instruct them in the religious worship which  
*on devoir A \* instruire 48 religieux 31 culte m*  
 God requires of them. I speak well of you, Damon; you  
*Dieu demander dire (ir) du bien*  
 speak ill of me. What a misfortune is ours! Neither  
*dire du mal quel \* malheur le nôtre on ne nous*  
 of us is believed. If you do not behave better, I will  
*croit ni l'un ni l'autre se conduire mieux*  
 complain of you to your father.  
*se plaindre*

#### RULE 47.—Personal Pronouns in the Dative.

1. The personal pronouns, *to me, to thee, to him, to her, to us, to you, to them*, are conjunctive, and expressed in French by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, before the verb or its auxiliary. Examples:

She speaks to him. She has spoken to them.  
*elle lui parle. elle leur a parlé.*  
 as if it were, she to him speaks; she to them has spoken.

2. They are disjunctive, and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, or à elles*, when several nouns or pronouns in the dative case are governed by the same verb: as, *je parle à vous et à lui*, I speak to you and to him;—when they are governed by a reflected verb: as, *il s'adressa à moi*, he applied to me; *je me fiais à lui*, I trusted to him;—when they are governed by any of the following verbs: *aller*, to go; *courir*, to run; *boire*, to drink; *penser*, to think; and *venir*, to come. Examples:

I think of you. Go to him. He comes to me.  
*Je pense à vous. Allez à lui. Il vient à moi.*

N. B. The pronouns *him* and *her* are expressed by *lui*, and *them* by *leur*, when the preposition *to* can be prefixed to them. They are usually expressed by *le, la, or les*, when it cannot.

1. The forgiveness of our enemies does not consist  
*pardon des \* ennemi \* consister*  
 solely, in not hurting them in their reputation or fortune;  
*seulement à nuire dat. dans ré— 63—*

we must besides love them and do *them* good.—1. A  
*on devoir* A *en outre aimer* 48      *faire* dat. *du bien* \*  
 good heart is as grateful to *you* (for the) advantages  
*cœur* *sait aussi bon gré*      *du bien que*  
 you wish *him* as (for the) presents *you* make *him*.—2.  
*souhaiter* dat. 37      *des présent que faire* dat. \*  
 I forgive both *you* and *him*, because I hope you will  
*pardonner et à*      *à parce que espérer* 83  
 behave better (for the future).—2. When your brother  
*se conduire mieux à l'avenir*  
 came to us, we were not thinking of *him*. You have be-  
*venir* c      *penser* B *à*  
 ceived me; I will not trust *you* any more.—2. The  
*tromper*      *ne se fier plus à* \* \*  
 minister is your enemy; if you apply to *him* you never will  
*—tre*      *si s'adresser* A      172  
 succeed.—1. A young man who follows the good advice  
*réussir* A,      *jeune*      *suivre* (ir)      *conseil* pl  
 which is given *him*, will be a man of merit.  
*qu'on* \* *donne* dat.      *mérite*.

RULE 48.—*Personal Pronouns in the Accusative.*

☞ When the personal pronouns, *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, are in the accusative, they are usually conjunctive, and expressed by *me, te, se, le, la, nous, vous, les*, before the verb which governs them, or before its auxiliary. Examples:

I see <i>them</i> .	I know <i>you</i> .	He loves <i>us</i> .
<i>je les vois</i>	<i>je vous connais</i>	<i>il nous aime</i>
I have seen <i>them</i> .	I have known <i>you</i> .	He has loved <i>us</i> .
<i>je les ai vus</i>	<i>je vous ai connu</i>	<i>il nous a aimés</i>
as if it were, <i>I them see, I you know, he us loves, &amp;c.</i>		

Observe, that *le, la, les*, are called pronouns before a verb, and articles before a noun.

God is a father to those who love *him*, and a protector  
*Dieu le de ceux aimer le —teur*  
 to those who fear *him*. Vice often deceives *us* under the  
*de craindre* 4m 172 *tromper* *sous*  
 shape of virtue. If you would get a friend,  
*masque* m      *+*      *vouloir* (ir) A *avoir* *ami*  
 you must prove *him* first, and not be hasty to credit *him*.  
*il faut éprouver auparavant*      *prompt à vous fier à*  
 A great source of error, is the common practice of  
*—t*      *erreur c'est*      *commun* 31 *pratique* f *de*  
 judging what men will appear in a condition (in, which)  
*juger de ce que paraître*      —      *où*

we have not seen *them*, from what they appear in another  
 (in which) we see *them*.  
*où voir (ir)*

RULE 49. — *Pronouns after a Preposition.*

When the personal pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are always disjunctive, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle; nous, vous, eux, or elles*. Examples:

Do that for *me*. Do not speak against *them*.  
*faites cela pour moi. ne parlez pas contre eux.*  
 not, *faites cela pour me; ne parlez pas contre les.*

May these children be to you what they have been  
*puissent enfant envers ce qu'*  
 to me! O God! do for *them* what I cannot  
*envers H ce que pouvoir (ir) A*  
 myself! repay them thirty years of happiness, which  
*moi-même rendez-leur trente ans. bonheur*  
 owe to their tenderness and virtue. Pisistratus said  
*devoir tendresse 63 vertu —te dire (ir) C*  
 of a drunken man, who had spoken against him: I am no  
*ivre 31 B contre*  
 more angry with him, than if a blind man had run  
*fâché contre aveugle \* s'était jeté*  
 against me. The love of enemies consists in desiring their  
*amour ennemi consister à leur désirer*  
 welfare, in praying for them, and in speaking well of  
*du bien à prier à parler en bien*  
 them, when occasion requires it.  
*quand 9 demander le 50*

SECTION II.

PRONOUNS USED WITH REFERENCE TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

*Of the Personal Pronouns, it, they, or them.*

RULE 50. — *The Pronouns, it, they, them.*

When the pronouns *it* and *they*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate objects, are in the nominative case, they are expressed, *it* by *il* or *elle*; and *they*



by *ils* or *elles*. When *it* and *them* are in the accusative, they are expressed, *it* by *le* or *la*, and *them* by *les* before the verb, as the personal pronouns, of which before. Thus, speaking of a house, we say,

*It* is new;      I will not sell *it*;      but I will let *it*;  
*elle est neuve*;      *je ne la vendrai pas*;      *mais je la louerai*.

Observe to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they have reference.

Ambition is a noble passion, but *it* often occasions  
9 — — 31 — — *mais souvent* 172 — *sionner*  
many mischiefs. Neglect the pleasures of life; the pains  
*bien des mal négliger* 11 *plaisir* 4 *vie* *peine*  
which follow *them* prove how vain *they* are.  
*suivre (ir)* *prouver* *combien* —

The pleasures of a temperate man are durable, because *they*  
*en* *tempéré* 31 — — *parce qu'*  
are regular; and his life is calm, because *it* is innocent.  
*régulier* *vie* *calme* —

The public approbation is the object which makes us  
31 — — *objet* *faire (ir)* 48  
undertake heroic actions, and it is by such actions,  
*entreprendre héroïque* 31 7 — *c'est de telles* —  
that we deserve *it*. (This is) a fine apple-tree, *it* blossoms  
*mériter* *f* *voilà* *pommier* *fleurir*  
every spring; yet *it* seldom produces any fruit. I  
*tous les printemps* *rarement* 172 *produire aucun* —  
will cut *it* down, if *it* yield no apples this year.  
*abattre (ir)* \* *donner* 18 *pomme* *année*

RULE 51.—*en*, for *it* or *them*.

1. The pronouns *it* and *them* are expressed by *en* before a verb which governs the genitive case. Examples:

Do not speak of *it*.      I remember *it* very well.  
*n'en parlez pas*.      *je m'en souviens très-bien*.

2. When the words *some*, *any*, come after a verb, and have reference to a noun antecedent, they are also expressed in French by *en* before the verb. Example:

If he has any pears, he will give you some.  
*s'il a des poires, il vous en donnera*.

2. You have bought fine lace; give me *some*; buy *some*,  
*acheter* 8 *dentelle* 11 *m'* 56 *H*  
if you will have *any*.—1. What avail riches to a  
*vouloir (ir)* A\* *à quoi servent* 4 *richesses*

miser? he does not make any use of *them*.—2. I have  
*avoir faire (ir) aucun usage*  
 many oranges, will you have any? I shall be obliged  
*plusieurs — vouloir (ir) A 55 \* obligé*  
 to you, if you will give me some.—1. Life is a gift of  
 47 • *vouloir A donner 9 vie don*  
 God; to destroy it is a crime.—1. Honour is an inaccessible  
*Dieu \* disposer en crime 9 honneur .31*  
 island: when you have once gone out of it, you cannot  
*il f aussitôt que être \* sortir \* pouvoir (ir)*  
 (come into it again).  
*A y rentrer*

RULE 52.—*lui, leur, y, it, them.\**

1. When the pronouns *it* and *them* are in the dative case, and have reference to animals, they are expressed by *lui* and *leur*, as the personal pronouns. Example:

Your dog is dry; give it something to drink.  
*Votre chien a soif; donnez-lui à boire.*

2. They are both expressed by *y*, when they refer to inanimate objects. Example:

This picture is very good; put a frame to it.  
*Ce tableau est très-bon; mettez-y une bordure.*

1. Your horses are hungry, give *them* some hay.—  
*cheval avoir faim donner II dat. 7 foin*
2. Before you tell a story, it is proper to give the  
*avant de \* conter histoire à propos de donner dat.*  
 company a true idea of the persons who are con-  
*compagnie vrai idée , personne f inté-*  
 cerned in it. When truth appears in all its brightness,  
*ressé dat. 4 vérité paraître éclat*  
 nobody can resist it. My house is in good air; I  
 116 *pouvoir (ir) A résister dat. maison en —*  
 am indebted to it (for the) recovery of my health.—2. Pearls  
*redevable du rétablissement santé 9 perle f*  
 would not (be worth) (so much) money, if luxury did  
*valoir (ir) E tant 18 argent luxe m*  
 not give value to *them*.—2. (How many) people would  
*donner B 7 prix . combien 18 gens*

---

\* When to it or to them are preceded by the verbs to owe or to be indebted, they are always expressed by *lui* or *leur*, even with reference to an inanimate object, and also when they relate to an inanimate object personified.

not be known in society, if gaming did not introduce them  
*connu 4 jeu —duire B 60*  
 into it.  
 dat.

**RULE 53.**—*Pronouns it and them left out.*

When the impersonal pronouns *it* and *them* come after a preposition, and have reference to inanimate objects, they are usually left out, and the preposition becomes an adverb. Examples :

Come near the fire : I am quite near it :  
*Approchez-vous du feu : je suis tout auprès :*  
 not *je suis tout auprès de lui.*

The falling of the water of the Nile makes (so much)  
*phute f eau Nil faire (ir) tant 18*  
 noise that it deafens those who dwell near it. Labour  
*bruit elle rendre sourd ceux demeurer auprès travail 9*  
 is fruitless when nature is against it. Do you know where  
*inutile 4 — contre \* savoir (ir) où est*  
 the treasury of London is ?—Yes, Sir, I do; well then,  
*trésorerie —dres \* où le sais ch-bien*  
 you will easily find your way; near it is York-house,  
*aisément 172 trouver chemin auprès 17*  
 just by is the Horse-Guards, and (over against) it, is the  
*tout auprès garde à cheval f vis-à-vis*  
 royal chapel, where you want to go.  
*31 chapelle où vouloir (ir) \* aller*

**RULE 54.**—*Supplying Pronouns, le, la, les.*

One of these three supplying pronouns, *le, la, les*, is usually put in French before the verb *être* used in answer to a question; they are also used every time the words *it* and *so* are or could be expressed in English.

1. *Le*, indeclinable, is always used with reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers, and to any antecedent clause. Examples :

We have been sick, and are so still.

*nous avons été malades, et nous le sommes encore.*

Are you satisfied, madam? no, I am not.

*êtes-vous contente, madame? non, je ne le suis pas.*

I have not yet bought these books; but I shall do so to-morrow.

*Je n'ai pas encore acheté ces livres; mais je le ferai demain.*

2. When these supplying pronouns have reference to a substantive, they agree with it in gender and number: thus we use *le* with reference to a noun masculine, *la* to a noun femi-

ning, and *les* to a noun plural, when they particularize individual objects. Examples :

Are you Peter's son ? . Yes, . *sir*, I am.  
*êtes-vous le fils de Pierre ? Oui, monsieur, je le suis — m*  
 Are you the daughter of Mr. A ? — Yes, I am.  
*êtes-vous la fille de Monsieur A ? Oui, je la suis — f*  
 Are these your horses ? yes, they are.  
*sont-ce là vos chevaux ? Oui, ce les sont\* — pi.*

1. I thought that Miss B. was married, but she is  
*croire (ir) B mademoiselle B marié*  
 not.—My aunts are sick, and I think they will be so for a long  
*tante malade penser 83*

time.—2. Are you the sisters of Mr. Taylor ? Yes, we are.  
*temps sœur*

1. Are they learned ? No, they are not.—2. Are you the  
*savant Non*  
 brothers of admiral Nelson ? Yes, we are. Are you  
*l'amiral*

the sister of colonel Jenkinson ? No, sir, I am not.  
*du —*

—1. Are your brothers learned ? Yes, they are. Are  
*92 . savant 92*

your sisters married ? No, they are not.—Is your mother  
*marié ? non 92*

sick ? No, she is not.—Is your father rich ? No, he is  
*malade 92 riche*

not.—2. Is that your house ? Yes, it is. Are these your  
*est-ce là sont-ce là*

gardens ? No, they are not. Is that your hat ? Yes, it is.  
*jardin est-ce là chapeau*

Are these your pens ? Yes, they are.—1. Your sisters are  
*sont-ce là plume f sœur*

happy, and we are not so.—1. They have been rich, but are  
*heureux elles riche 59*

not so at present.  
*à présent*

\* *Ce is used in the answer, before le, la, les, when the question is asked by est-ce là, or sont-ce là. Example : est-ce là votre livre ? oui ce l'est : we also answer by oui or non, without repeating the verb by which the question is asked.*

## SECTION III.

## THE RIGHT PLACING OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE 55.— *Place of the Pronouns je, tu, il, &c.*

The personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, &c.* are placed after the verb, when the sentence is interrogative, and before when it is not. Examples :

I speak ; do you speak ? it rains ; does it rain ?  
*je parle ; parlez-vous ? il pleut ; pleut-il ?*

We often (pass judgment) upon men's actions, according  
 172 *juger des — selon*  
 to our love or hatred of the persons who have done  
 \* 63 *haine f pour. personne faites*  
 them. Do you learn French ? have you learnt it  
 48 *apprendre (ir) 57*  
 long ? do you speak it fluently ? Things do not  
*longtemps couramment* 9 chose f  
 always strike us in proportion as they are obvious ; (on the)  
 172 *frapper 48 à — qu' claire au*  
 contrary. some do not strike us at all, because they  
*contraire quelques-unes 48 du tout parce qu'*  
 are obvious (in the) highest degree. Is he young ? are they  
*au haut degré jeune*  
 rich ? is she handsome ?  
*riche beau*

RULE 56.— *Pronouns after the Verb.*

1. The personal pronouns are put in French as in English, immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the second person singular, or in the first or second person plural of the imperative affirmative, and then instead of *me, te*, we make use of *moi, toi*, for the dative and accusative. Examples :

give it me ; sell it him ; send them some.  
*donnez-le-moi ; vendez-le-lui ; envoyez-leur-en*

2. If, however, there were several imperatives affirmative, the governed pronouns should go, in French, after the first verbs and before the last, if this be joined to the others by a conjunction. Examples :

Sell it me ; or give it me ; take it and eat it.  
*vendez-l moi ; ou me le donnez ; prenez-la et la mangez.*

3. If the verb were in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns should go before it, as they go, in all other tenses. Examples :

Do not sell *it* him.      Do not give it them.  
*ne le lui vendez pas.*      *ne le leur donnez pas.*

1. Answer *me*; write *to him*; forgive *them*; speak to  
*répondre*      *écrire*      *pardonner* dat.      *parler*  
 us.—2. Love your enemies, and do *them* good, when  
*aimer*      *ennemi*      *faire* dat.      *bien* 7  
 you can. — 2. Obey your parents, love and respect  
*le pouvoir (tr)* *obéir à*      *respecter*  
 them (as long as) you live. — 1. Consider, O parents! the  
*tant que*      *vivre* D      *considérer*  
 importance of your obligations towards your children; it  
 —      —      *envers*      *enfant*  
 depends on you, (whether or not they will be) useful  
*dépendre de*      *qu'ils soient ou non*      *utile* 31  
 members of society; teach *them* obedience, and they will  
 7 — *bre* 4 *société* *enseigner* dat. *obéissance* 9  
 bless you; teach *them* modesty, and they will be reserved;  
*bénir* 48 *inspirer* dat. 9 — *le*      *réservé*  
 teach *them* charity, and they will be loved; teach *them*  
*inspirer* dat. — *le*      *porter* acc.  
 temperance, and they will enjoy good health. — 3. Do  
 dat. 4 —      *jouir d'une*      *santé*  
 not forgive *him*, but punish *him* directly.  
*pardonner* dat      *punir*      *sur-le-champ*

• RULE 57 — *Pronouns before the Verb.*

☞ The personal pronouns are always put in French before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary, when it is not in the imperative affirmative. Examples :

I know *him*. I have seen *them*. I have spoken to *her*.  
*je le connais.*      *je les ai vus.*      *je. lui ai parlé.*

The second Brutus would have re-established the Romans  
 —      —      E      *rétablir*      *Romain*  
 in their ancient liberty, if he had found *them* as well dis-  
*ancien* — *le*      B      *trouver*      *aussi*  
 posed as they were in the time of the first.  
 — *se* *qu'ils* 54 B      *temps.*

Jupiter, vexed that Saturn laid snares for *him*, armed  
 •      *irrité* • 14 — *e* *tendre* G 7 *piège* \* *lui* C  
 against *him*, drove *him* out of his kingdom, and con-  
*contre* 49 *chasser* C      \*      *royaume* m      *ob-*

strained *him* to quit heaven. Prosperity gets *us*  
*liger c de quitter 9 ciel 9—té faire (ir)*  
 friends, and adversity tries *them*. Do you know the  
*ami 7 9—té éprouver connaître*  
 Prince of Wales? I have seen *him* several times, but  
 — *Galles voir (ir) plusieurs fois mais*  
 have never spoken to *him*. We flatter ourselves in vain  
*120 se flatter \* en —*  
 that we quit our passions, when it is they which quit  
*quitter — ce sont elles*  
*us*. I believe *him*. Do you believe *them*? He will not  
*croire (ir)*  
 punish *me*. Do you not know *her*?  
*punir connaître*

RULE 58.— *Order of the Pronouns before the Verb.*

☞ When a verb which is not in the imperative affirmative governs two or more pronouns, they are always placed immediately before it, or before its auxiliary, in the following order :

Me, te, se, nous, vous,	go before every other.
le, la, les, - - -	go before lui, leur, y, or en.
lui, leur, - - -	go before y or en.
y, - - - - -	goes before en.

N. B. When two pronouns are governed by a verb, that which has reference to persons is put in the dative in French, if the preposition *to* could be prefixed to it in English. Examples :

He gives *it me* ; he gives *it him* ; he gives *it to them*.

*il me le donne ; il le lui donne ; il le leur donne.*

He has sold *it to him* ; he has given *me some* this morning.

*il le lui a vendu ; il m'en a donné ce matin.*

as if it were, *he to me it gives ; he it to him has sold.*

I dare not tell *it them*. Pray, brother, tell it to my

*oser 123 dire (ir) je vous prie 64 56*

mother ; she knows it, I told *it to her* yesterday. If you

*savoir (ir) 57 c hier*

still have your orange, give *it me*. I am sorry  
*encore 172 f 56 fâché*

I cannot give *it you* ; but your sister has been a good  
*de ne pouvoir \**

girl, and I have given *it her* ; I will give *you some* to-morrow,

*filles f 51 demain*

if you exercise be well done.

*thème A*

Do not, say to a friend who asks something of  
*dire (ir)* *demande quelque chose m*  
 you, Go, and come again to-morrow; I will give it you,  
*aller (ir)* *revenir \** *demain*  
 when you can give him (at the time). The duke of  
*pouvoir (ir)* *sur-le-champ* *duc*  
 Bouillon was obliged to give the town of Sedan to  
*c • obliger de* *ville*  
 Henry the Fourth; but this prince, satisfied with his sub-  
*Henri* *il* — *content de* *sou-*  
 mission, gave it him back soon. He gives it to me; he has  
 — *rendre c* *\* bientôt*  
 lent it you; he has sent them to us. He gives it them; he  
*prêter* *envoyés*  
 will lend it to them; he has sent them to him. You have  
*prêter* *envoyés*  
 told it me; I pray you, (never to speak to me any more  
*dire (ir)* *prier* *de ne m'en plus parler*  
 about it). Epaminondas refused the presents of Marius,  
 — *— ser c* *pré—* —  
 and told those who offered them to him from that  
*dire à ceux* *offrir B* *de la part de*  
 king: If he desires nothing of me but (what is) just, (there  
*roi* *demande* 118 *\* me que* *de juste il*  
 is no occasion) for presents; and if he has other de-  
*n. faut pas* *de* *si* *d'autres des-*  
 signs, let him know that he is not rich enough to  
*seins* *savoir (ir) il* *assez riche pour*  
 bribe me.  
 corrompre 57

WHEN PERSONAL PRONOUNS ARE OR ARE NOT TO BE  
 REPEATED.

RULE 59.—Pronouns *je, tu, il, &c.* repeated.

1. The pronouns of the first and second persons, such as, *je, tu, nous, vous*, are usually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case. Ex-  
 ample:

I say, and will always say, that she was in the wrong.  
*je dis et je dirai toujours qu'elle avait tort.*

2. The pronouns of the third person, such as *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, need not be repeated, unless the verb be in different tenses, or separated from the preceding by many words, or one be affirmative and the other negative. Ex-  
 amples:

Cæsar conquered provinces, and subdued whole nations.  
*César conquît des provinces et soumit des nations entières.*



They have seen him, but they have not spoken to him.  
ils l'ont vu mais ils ne lui ont pas parlé.

I maintain, and will always maintain, that we cannot be  
soutenir 172 pouvoir A  
happy without practising virtue. \* Man rises and un-  
sans 139 pratiquer 9 s'élever 4  
folds his faculties by degrees; he advances slowly to  
ployer —té degré avancer lentement 4  
maturity, and afterwards declines gradually, till  
—té ensuite décliner graduellement jusqu'à ce qu'  
he sinks into the grave. Beware of drunkenness; it  
descendre 1 tombeau éviter H \* 9 ivrognerie  
impairs the understanding, tarnishes reputation, and con-  
abrutir entendement ternir ré —  
sumes the body. He says so, but he does not believe  
—mer corps dire (ir) le croire (ir)  
it. We have spoken, and will speak again in your favour.  
parler encore en faveur

RULE 60.—Pronouns me, te, se, &c. repeated.

The personal pronouns must be repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, though they are not repeated in English. Examples :

I honour and respect him. I say and repeat it.  
je l'honore et je le respecte. je le dis et je le répète.  
as if it were, I him honour and him respect.

The most beautiful flowers last but a short time,  
beau fleur ne durer que \* peu 18 temps  
the least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the  
moudre pluie ternir vent flétrir  
sun scorches them; not to mention an infinite num-  
soleil brûler pour ne pas parler d'un infini 31 nom-  
ber of insects, that spoil and hurt them. A  
bre 18 —te gâter les faire du mal leur  
passionate temper renders a man unfit for business, de-  
31 —né caractère rendre. inapte 4 affaire pl pri-  
prives him of his reason, robs him of all that is great  
rer raison ôter lui \* tout ce qu'il y a de  
in his nature, and makes him unfit for society. The Holy  
— fait qu'il n'est plus propre société 4  
Scriptures teach us what we ought to be; let us  
écriture apprendre (ir) ce que devoir A \* \*  
therefore read them, meditate upon them, and make  
par conséquent lire (ir) 11 méditer \* faire (ir)  
them the rule of our conduct. A well-educated son never  
en règle f conduite bien élevé 31 120

rebels against his father; he loves, honours, and  
*se révolter contre* *aimer honorer*  
 respects him.  
 —ter

RULE 61.—Pronouns, himself, herself, &c.

1. The pronouns, *himself*, *herself*, *themselves*, are expressed, in French, by *se*, with a reflected verb; and, most frequently, by *lui-même*, or *elle-même*, &c. in other cases. Examples:

He is too proud; he does not know *himself*.

*il est trop fier; il ne se connaît pas.*

He blames in others the faults he commits *himself*.

*il blâme dans les autres les fautes qu'il fait lui-même.*

2. *Soi* is used for *one's self*, or *himself*, in speaking of persons in general; that is to say, in a vague sense, and without any specification. Example:

One ought not to speak of *one's self*, unless with modesty.  
*on ne doit parler de soi qu'avec modestie.*

2. (Every body) acts for *himself*. — 2. When a man does  
*chacun agir* *quand \* on*  
 not mind any body but *himself*, he does not deserve to live.  
*penser \* \* qu'à \* on mériter de vivre*

1. It is not the part of a courageous man to expose  
*il n'est pas \* \* —eux 31 de —ser*  
*himself* to danger without necessity. — 1. They are easily

— *sans nécessité on pardonne aisément*  
 pardoned who endeavour to withdraw *themselves* from their  
*à ceux chercher à retirer*

errors. — 2. When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is  
*erreur quand \* on n'aime \* que on*  
 not fit for society. — 2. To excuse in *one's self* the faults

*propre 4 \* —ser en faute*  
 which one cannot bear in others, is to like  
*on ne pouvoir (ir) à souffrir dans les autres c'est \* aimer*

better to be foolish *one's self* than to see others so. — 1.  
*mieux \* fou soi-même 40 de voir tels*

Your brother knows *himself*; he often makes reflections  
*connaître souvent 172 faire ré—x—7*

upon *himself*, and I hope he will soon correct *himself*  
*sur espérer bientôt 172 corriger*  
 of his bad habits.

*mauvais habitude*

RULE 62.—*itself expressed by lui or soi.*

The pronoun *itself*, preceded by a preposition, is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*, with reference to an animate object, or even inanimate, considered as a person; but it is usually expressed by *soi* with reference to a pronoun, or to an inanimate object taken in a general sense. Examples:

That is good in *itself*. Vice is odious of *itself*.  
*cela est bon en soi. le vice est odieux de soi.*

The remedy which you propose is harmless of *itself*.  
*remède m proposer innocent en*  
 Men often reject truth, though evident in *itself*,  
*souvent 172 rejeter vérité quoique é—*  
 because the sight (of it) displeases them. Self-love  
*parce que vue en 58 déplaire leur 58 amour propre*  
 directs (every thing) to *itself*. Virtue is amiable of *itself*.  
*diriger tout aimable en*  
 Whatever is good in *itself*, is not always approved. The  
*tout ce qui bon toujours approuver*  
 palm-tree incessantly rises of *itself*, whatever efforts  
*palmer sans cesse 173 se relever quelques effort*  
 are made to depress it.  
*qu'on fasse pour courber 48*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the „PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

To forget one's birth by doing bad actions, or  
*\* oublier sa naissance 142 8 mauvais —*  
 to remember it only (out of) vanity, is to dishonour  
*se souvenir en 58 seulement par c'est \* déshonorer*  
 it equally. God requires your heart; you cannot  
*la 48 également demander cœur ne pouvoir (ir) A*  
 refuse it him. A flatterer has not a good opinion of himself  
*—ser 58 flatteur \* — 61*  
 nor of others. A gross mistake is not only that  
*ni des autres grossier 31 faute f seulement celle*  
 which every reader perceives, but it is moreover that  
*79 tout lecteur apercevoir c'est encore celle*  
 which we find gross, after another has made us per-  
*79 trouver après qu'un autre faire 58 aper-*  
 ceive it. If you have promised any thing to an  
*cevoir 58 promettre (ir) quelque chose*

enemy, you ought not to break the promise you have  
*ennemi devoir A \* manquer à promesse 83*  
 made him.  
*faite 47*

We confess small failings, only to persuade others  
*n'avouer 8 petit défaut que pour —der aux autres*  
 that we have no great ones. There is no age  
*nous n'en avons 18 \* il n'y a point 18 siècle*  
 or condition but can reap great benefits  
*n 21 — qui ne pouvoir (ir) F recueillir 8 avantage*  
 from history; when properly taught, it proves a  
*histoire elle est bien enseignée elle devenir*  
 school of morality for all men; cries down vices,  
*école f morale pour tous les 59 décrier \* 9*  
 unmasks false virtues, dispels vulgar errors, and  
*démasquer fausses 31 . dissiper vulgaire 31 erreur*  
 demonstrates, by a thousand instances, that there is nothing  
*prouver \* exemple qu'il n'y a rien de*  
 great but honour and probity. You will find it impos-  
*que honneur 4 —te trouver \* —*  
 sible, said Mentor to the king of Salentum, to bring  
*dire (ir) c Salente de ramener*  
 men back to the principles of virtue, after you have  
*9 \* —pe la après que D*  
 taught them to despise it.  
*appris leur 47 à mépriser 48*

You have promised me a watch; when will you give  
*promis 57 montre f quand donner*  
 it me? If we did not flatter ourselves, flattery would not  
*58 se flatter B nous-mêmes —rie*  
 (be hurtful) to us. The law of nature forbids us to hurt  
*nuire E 47 loi — défend de nuire à*  
 (any body). I have bought some new pamphlets; I  
*personne acheter S nouveau —*  
 will send them to you, if you will return  
*envoyer (ir) 58 vouloir (ir) A rendre*  
 them to me next week. You have many  
*58 la prochaine 31 semaine beaucoup 18*  
 oranges; pray give me some. The merit of our  
*— je vous prie de 51 — mérite m*  
 actions comes from the motives which produce them, and  
*venir motif —duire 48*  
 from their conformity to the laws of God.  
*—té loi*

Posterity renders to men of merit the justice which  
*9 —térité rendre 2 mérite — 79*

their contemporaries often refuse them. Lend me your  
 —rai 172 —ser leur 47 prêter 56  
 grammar; I will return it to you to-morrow; if you  
 —maire f rendre 58 demain  
 refuse it me, I cannot do my exercise, nor learn  
 —ser 58 ne pouvoir (ir) A thème apprendre  
 my lesson; because I have lost mine. I tell you the  
 leçon parce que perdre la mienne 57  
 truth, and you will not believe me. Do you know  
 vouloir (ir) A croire 57 connaître  
 the Princess of Wales? I have seen her, and had the ho-  
 —cesse Galles vue 57 j'ai eu  
 nour to speak to her several times. You said you  
 de 47 plusieurs fois dire (ir) B que  
 would give me a watch when I could  
 donner E me 57 montre f pouvoir (ir) E  
 write French; my exercise is without fault; when will you  
 écrire en sans faute quand  
 give it me? Have patience; you shall have it soon.  
 38 H — bientôt

## CHAPTER V.

## OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 19.

RULE 63.—*Possessive Pronouns are repeated.*

1. The possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes, &c.* are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number. Example:

*My father, mother, and sisters are in the country.*  
*mon père, ma mère, et mes sœurs sont à la campagne.*  
*not, mon père, mère, et sœurs sont à la campagne.*

2. We use the pronouns masculine *mon, ton, son*, before a noun feminine, when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute; thus we say, *mon âme*, f. *son honnêteté*, f. not *ma âme*, *sa honnêteté*, which would have a bad sound.

3. The possessive pronouns *son, sa, ses*, do not refer to the gender of the noun antecedent, like the English *his, her, its*; but agree in gender with the noun they are joined to: thus we say, speaking of a woman,

*Her son is learned;*  
*son fils est savant;*

*her brother is young;*  
*son frère est jeune*

and of a man,

*His mother is old ;*

*sa mère est âgée .*

*his sister is married ;*

*sa sœur est mariée.*

1. Such are men ; *their* ingratitude is often the price of  
*tels 4 — prix*  
 our favours.—2. A good king does not (so much) consult  
*bienfait tant 172 —*  
 his own dignity and elevation, as the advantage and  
*propre —lé élé— 37 avantage*  
 happiness of *his* subjects.—1. The laborious man shuts  
*bonheur sujet laborieux 31 bannir*  
 out idleness from *his* house ; he considers it as *his*  
*\* 9 paresse maison —dérer 57*  
 greatest enemy ; he (rises up) early, he exercises *his*  
*ennemie f se lever de bon matin —cer*  
 mind with contemplation, and *his* body with labour :  
*esprit dans 4 — corps en travaillant*  
 the slothful man, (on the) contrary, is a burden to him-  
*paresseur \* au contraire à charge 61*  
 self ; *his* body is diseased for want of exercise, *his* mind is  
*corps malade \* faute —ce esprit*  
 in darkness, *his* thoughts are confused, *his* house is in  
*dans 4 ténèbres pl pensée —se maison en*  
 disorder, he deplores *his* fate, but he has no resolution  
*désordre m déplorer sort mais le courage*  
 to remedy it. —3. *His* mother is dead ; *her* father is  
*d'y apporter remède mère mort père*  
 dead ; *his* wife is handsome, *her* husband is young.—2.  
*femme beau mari jeune*  
*His* ambition is great ; *her* soul is elevated ; *my* history is  
*— âme f élevé histoire*  
 short.—*His* shame is great.—2. *Her* hope is ill-grounded.  
*court honte f espérance mal fondé*

RULE 64.—*Possessive Pronouns used in French and not in English.*

☞ When we speak to our relations or friends, we use the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes*, before the words *père, mère, frère, sœur, &c.* Example :

• Where are you, daughter ? here I am, mother.

*Où êtes-vous, ma fille ? me voici, ma mère.*

These pronouns are left out in English.

(At last) the girl being come near the house, mother,  
*enfin fille venue près de mère*

*mother*, cried she, (come out), *mother*, come out, (here is)  
*s'écrier* C *sortir* H *voici*  
 a gentleman who has brought us a letter from my father :  
*monsieur* *apporter* 57 *lettre* *père*  
 at that summons (out came the mother); (what is the  
*appel* *la mère sortit* *qu'avez-*  
 matter), *child*? said she, seeing her daughter with a  
*vous* *enfant* C *en voir* (ir) *filie*  
 messenger, &c. Lend me your knife, brother. I can-  
*messager* *prêter* H 56 *couteau* *ne sa-*  
 not, sister, I want it. Where are you, daughter?  
*voir* (ir) E *j'en ai besoin* *où* *filie*  
 (Here I am), father. Come, friends, let us fly to glory.  
*me voici* *allons* *voler* H 4 *gloire*

RULE 65.—Monsieur, &c. before *votre* or *vos*.

We prefix in French the qualifications of *monsieur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle*, &c. to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos*, when we speak to persons of their relations or friends, unless they are our inferiors or intimate friends. These qualifications are not used in English. Examples :

How does your mother do ?

*comment se porte Madame votre mère?*

Is your cousin in town ?

Monsieur *votre cousin est-il en ville ?*

I have invited your sisters and your cousin to dine with

—*ter*

*cousine* f à dîner

us, I hope they will come. Is your father at home ?

*espérer* 83

*venir*

92

*la maison*

How does your wife do ? Do your sisters learn

*se porter*

*épouse* \*

92

*apprendre* (ir)

geography ? Is your brother in France ? Is your aunt

*géographie* 92

180

*tante*

well ? Is not your mother returned from the country ?

*bien* 92

*revenue*

*campagne* f

I saw yesterday your father and mother, but I did not see

*voir* (ir) C *hier*

C

your sister ; is she sick ?

*malade*

RULE 66.—Possessive Pronouns by the Personal.

When the possessive pronouns are joined to a verb which denotes an action over any part of the body, they are rendered in French by the personal pronouns : thus, *my* is expressed by *me* ; *his* or *her* by *se* or *lui* ; *our* by *nous* ; *your* by

rons; and *their* by *se* or *leur*, before the verb; the definite article (*le, la, les*) is put in the same place in which the possessive pronouns are in English. Examples:

He has cut *his* hand; you have cut *his* hand.

*Il s'est coupé la main; vous lui avez coupé la main.*

As if it were, he to himself has cut the hand; you to him have cut the hand; and so on for others.

When the possessive pronoun in English refers to the person performing the action, in French the verb becomes reflected with *se* in the dative case.

My brother died last year in Germany; it was I  
mourir (ir) c l'an passé en Allemagne c 45  
who closed *his* eyes. I will pare *your* nails, if you  
fermer c yeux rogner ongles  
will cut *my* hair. My brother broke *his* leg  
vouloir à couper cheveux pl casser c jambe f  
yesterday morning. Our carriage ran unfortunately  
matin voiture passer c malheureusement  
over *his* body, broke *his* leg, and bruised *his* left  
sur corps c meurtrir c gauche 31  
shoulder. Do not speak so loud, you split *my* head. If you  
épaule f si haut fendre tête f  
do not take care, you will cut *your* fingers. A  
prendre (ir) à garde couper doigt  
cannon ball (shot off) *my* arm. Do not tread upon  
boulet de canon emporter c bras marcher h sur  
*my* foot. Wash *your* hands. Warm *your* feet.  
pied laver h main chauffer h

#### RULE 67.—Possessive Pronouns left out.

1. When the verb does not express an action, as before, the possessive pronouns, *my, his, her, &c.* which come before the words *hand, leg, head, or any other part of the body*, are usually left out in French, and the definite article (*le, la, les*) is used instead of them. Example:

I have a pain in *my* leg, in *my* hand, in *my* eyes.

*j'ai mal à la jambe, à la main, aux yeux.*

2. If, however, there were an equivocation to be feared, that is to say, if the sentence did not sufficiently explain whose *leg, feet, or arm, &c.* we are speaking of, the possessive pronouns should be used in French as in English. Example:

I see that *my* leg swells.

*je vois que ma jambe enfle.*



1. In the last battle our general lost his leg, my  
*dernière bataille f perdre c*  
 brother was wounded in his shoulder, and I, who stood  
*c blesser à épau 45 être B*  
 by him, had my thigh (taken off).—He (tells a false-  
*auprès de lui f c cause f emportée mentir*  
 hood) as often as he opens his mouth.—2. I see that my  
*toutes les fois que ouvrir bouche f voir (ir)*  
 arm swells.—2. Do you think my foot will ever (be cured)?  
*bras enfler croire 83 pied \* 172 guérir r*  
 —1. It (would be better) for a man of probity to lose his  
*valoir (ir) E mieux —té \* perdre*  
 life than his honour by a criminal action.—1. Cæsar had a  
*vie honneur criminel 31 — César B la*  
 bald head, but he covered this defect with a crown of  
*chaue 3 tête f cacher u défaut couronne*  
 laurels.  
*laurier sing.*

#### RULE 68.—Its expressed by *son* or *en*.

When the possessive pronouns *its* and *their* relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*.—1. When they relate to the nominative of the preceding verb as personified. 2. When they are in the genitive or dative, or are preceded by any preposition whatever. 3. When, being in the nominative, they are joined to a substantive qualified by an adjective, or specified by some other words. 4. When, being in the nominative, the next verb is or may be followed by the preposition *de*. Example:

1. London has *its* beauties.  
*Londres a ses beautés.*
2. I admire the size of *its* streets.  
*j'admire la grandeur de ses rues.*
3. *Its* regular buildings please at the first sight.  
*ses bâtimens réguliers plaisent au premier coup-d'œil.*
4. *Its* ships bring the riches of all countries.  
*ses vaisseaux apportent les richesses de tous les pays*  
*Its* trade produces immense resources.  
*son commerce produit d'immenses ressources.*

5. On any other occasion, *its* and *their* are expressed by *en* before the verb, and the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, before the substantive. So we should say, still speaking of London:

*Its* situation is very convenient.  
*la situation en est très-convenue*

*Its squares appear to me beautiful.*  
*les places m'en paraissent superbes.*  
*I particularly admire its rich warehouses.*  
*J'en admire surtout les riches magasins.*

5. This illness is dangerous, I know *its* origin and effects.  
*maladie — reux connaître origine effet*  
 — 2. Jealousy has love for *its* father, and fear for *its*  
*jealousie amour crainte f*  
 mother. — 5. (This is) a fine tree, *its* fruit is delicious. —  
*voici arbre m — pl délicieux*  
 1. Nobles, remember that an illustrious birth receives  
*— se ressouvenir H — tre 31 naissance*  
 from virtue *its* most shining lustre. — 2. Flattery has • great  
*beau lustre m — rie une*  
 sweetness in *its* voice; it is difficult not to listen to it.  
*douceur voir — ile de n'y pas prêter l'oreille*  
 — 5. This water is not good for you, I know all *its* qualities,  
*eau connaître — té*  
 and I would never recommend it in such cases. — 1. Every  
*120 recommander en pareil cas chaque*  
 science has *its* principles.  
*— — pe*

5. Paris is a fine city; but *its* streets are too narrow, and  
*ville mais rue f trop étroit*  
*its* houses too high. — 1. War has *its* theory like other  
*maison haut • guerre théorie comme*  
 sciences. — 5. To paint the passions with accuracy, it is  
*— pour peindre passion vérité*  
 necessary to have studied the heart of man, and to know  
*nécessaire 135 étudier cœur connaître*  
 all *its* springs.  
*ressort*

RULE 69. — Mine, expressed by *le mien*, &c.

The pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. always take in French the definitive article *le*, *la*, *les*, before them, and agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference. Example :

Your garden is larger than *mine*, but my house is  
*votre jardin est plus grand que le mien, mais ma maison est*  
 larger than *yours*.  
*plus grande que la vôtre.*

Your book is better than *mine*, but my gloves  
*valoir (ir) mieux mais gant*

are better than *yours*. His action is blamable, *yours* (on the)  
 — *blâmable* au  
 contrary, is praiseworthy. I have learnt my lesson,  
*contraire digne de louange apprendre (ir) leçon*  
 but my sister has not learnt *hers*. Your country is larger  
 — *plus grand*  
 • than *ours*, however our king is more powerful than *yours*  
*cependant* • *roi* *puissant*  
 Is that your book? Yes, it is *mine*. Is that your house?  
*est-ce là* *ce* *est-ce là*  
 No, it is not *ours*

**RULE 70.**—*Mine, expressed by mes, &c.*

☞ When the disjunctive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers,* &c. preceded by the preposition *of*, are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses,* &c. before the substantive, which is put in the plural. Examples :

A friend of *mine* ; a book of *yours*, &c.  
un *de mes* amis ; un *de vos* livres.

as if it were, one of my friends, one of your books ; and so on for all other sentences of the same kind.

I have found a book of *yours* among mine. A book of *mine*,  
*trouver* *parmi* 69  
you say, show it me; no, it is not mine, I am sure,  
*dites-vous montrer H* 56 *71 en sûr*  
because I have sold it. Do you know that gentleman?  
*parce que* *vendre* *connaître* *monsieur*  
yes, madam, he is a relation of *mine*. A friend of *ours*  
*madame ce* *parent* *ami*  
came yesterday to see us, who spoke to us about you.  
*venir c hier* \* *voir* *parler* 57 *de*  
(This is) a trick of *yours*. I think that it is yet some  
*voula* *tour* *croire (ir)* *c'est encore quelqu'une*  
contrivance of *his* own. I have been witness to several ma-  
*invention* \*  *témoin c : plusieurs*  
chinations of *yours*. \* If you see any friend of *mine*, do  
— *voir (ir)* *quelqu'un*  
not forget to mention my return.  
*oublier H de parler de* *retour*

RULE 71.—Mine, expressed by à moi.

✎ When the disjunctive pronouns come after the verb *to be*, signifying *to belong*, they are expressed :

<i>mine</i> by à moi	<i>ours</i> by à nous
<i>thine</i> by à toi	<i>yours</i> by à vous
<i>his</i> by à lui	<i>theirs</i> by à eux m
<i>hers</i> by à elle	<i>theirs</i> by à elles f. Examples :

This book is *mine* ; that house is *ours* ;  
ce livre est à moi ; cette maison est à nous.

When the verb *to be* signifies *to belong*, the substantive which comes after it is put in the genitive case in English, and in the dative in French. Example :

This horse is *my father's*, and that, *my brother's*.  
ce cheval-ci est à mon père, et celui-là, à mon frère.

Is that your house ? No, it is not *mine*, I have sold it. I  
est-ce là maison vendue  
thought it was *yours*.—Whose horse is this?—*Mine*.  
croire (ir) B à qui est ce cheval-ci  
And that?—*My father's*. Whose gardens are these?—*Mine*.  
celui-là à qui sont ces jardins

Take up) . that watch and carry it to your brother. I  
ndre (ir) H montre f porter 56  
think it is *his*. No, certainly, it is not *his*, he has  
croire (ir) qu' certainement  
no watch. Whose is it then ? I do not know, unless  
18 à qui donc savoir (ir) à moins que  
it be my *uncle's*, who was here yesterday evening.  
ne f tante B ici hier au soir

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

As a lame person<sup>a</sup> would in vain praise the  
de même qu'un boîteur en vain 172 louer  
beauty of his legs, since he cannot (make use of them)  
jambe f puis que pouvoir (ir) se servir en 58  
without showing that they are bad ; so, a fool would in  
sans 139 montrer mauvais ainsi sot

130 EXERCISE UPON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

vain boast of his learning, since he cannot speak without  
*se vanter scienoe puisque parler sans* 139  
 showing his extravagance.

63 —

The depravity of human nature is so great, that we  
*dépravation humain* 31 — f " si  
 oftener please with our failings, than with our good  
*souvent* 172 *par défaut par*  
 qualities. It is a great comfort to have a friend to  
 — *té c'est consolation que d' au*  
 whom you may communicate your thoughts, and who  
 81 *pouvoir (ir) r — quer pensée*  
 participates in your pleasures and pains.  
*partager r \* 63 plaisir peine*

Cæsar, determined to pass over into Britain,  
*étant déterminé passer \* en Bretagne*  
 despatched Volsenius, a lieutenant of his, to cruise on the  
*envoyer c — é — — 70 \* croiser sur*  
 coast of that island.  
*côte f île f*

If you will lend me your horse to-day, I will  
*vouloir (ir) prêter* 47 *aujourd'hui*  
 lend you mine, when you want it. England  
*prêter* 69 *aurez besoin en* 57 *Angleterre* 5  
 was (at first) called Albion, signifying rich and happy,  
*c d'abord appeler — qui signifie heur*  
 in regard to its fertility, temperature, and riches.  
*par rapport* 68 *— té* 63 — *richesse*

Sir, here is one of your books among mine. A book of  
*voici livre parmi* 69 *livre*  
 mine, you say, let me see it; no, it is not mine, it is  
 70 *dites-vous montrez-le-moi non* 71  
 my brother's. You hurt my arm. The dog has bit  
*frère* 71 *blessé* 66 *bras chien mordre*  
 my leg. You will cut your finger. Every language  
 66 *jambe f couper* 66 *doigt chaque langue*  
 has its peculiar phrases and beauties. Hercules made  
 68 *particulier* 31 — f — *té — faire (ir) c*  
 a present to Philoctetes, his companion and friend, of his  
 \* — — *êtes* 63. *— gnon*  
 arrows, dyed in the blood of the Hydra. Men often reap  
*flèche f teindre sang Hydre* 172 *tirer*  
 more fruit from their errors, than from their most glorious  
 18 *erreur* 44 *glorieux* 31  
 actions.

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 20.

RULE 72.—*Ce, cette, ces.*

☞ The demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that* are expressed by *ce* or *cet* before a noun masculine, and by *cette* before a noun feminine; *these* and *those* are both expressed by *ces*, before a noun plural of both genders. Examples:

*This* carpet; *that* tree; *that* house; *these* books, &c.  
*ce tapis*; *cet arbre*; *cette maison*; *ces livres*, &c.

N. B. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine when it begins with a consonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

2. The demonstrative pronouns are repeated in French before every substantive, though they are not in English. Example:

I speak to *that* man and woman.  
*Je parle à cet homme et à cette femme.*

*This* picture is fine. *That* man is learned. *These* oranges  
*tableau* *savant* — f  
are not ripe. *This* cake is for you; *that* bird is mine; *these*  
*mâre gâteau oiseau* 71  
*houses* are new. If you do not alter your conduct, and  
*neuf* *changer de \* conduite et si*  
(make amends for) your former injustice, *this* widow  
59 *ne réparer premier — f veuve*  
whom you have oppressed, *this* poor woman whom you have  
79 *opprimée pauvre*  
forsaken, *these* unfortunate beings whom you have despised,  
*abandonnée malheureux \* méprisés*  
will accuse you (in the) day of judgment. *That* woman is  
*accuser 57 au du jugement*  
whimsical, she changes her resolution every day.  
*capricieux —ger de \* ré— tous les jours*

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela.*

" The demonstrative pronouns are expressed, *this* by *ceci*, and *that* by *cela*, when they are used to point out some object without naming it. Example:

*This* is for me, and *that* for you.  
*ceci est pour moi, et cela est pour vous.*

Do not do *that*, I will do it myself. If you refuse me *that*,  
 you will repent it.<sup>57</sup> *This* is good, *that* is bad; *this* is for  
 me, and *that* for you. Why did you do *that*? You  
 should not speak of *that* before (any body). *That* is good to  
 eat. You are very curious; you always ask why *this*  
 and why *that*.

RULE 74.—*ce qui, ce que.*

1. The pronouns *that which*, and *what*, signifying *that thing which*, are usually expressed by *ce qui* for the nominative case, *ce dont* for the genitive, *ce à quoi* for the dative, and *ce que* for the accusative. Example:

*What* gratifies the senses, softens the heart.  
*ce qui flatte les sens, amollit le cœur.*

2. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* is usually repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it be followed by a pronoun, a verb, or a substantive; but not if it be followed by an adjective without any substantive. Examples:

*What* renders men miserable is cupidity.  
*ce qui rend les hommes misérables, c'est la cupidité.*

*What* you say is true.  
*ce que vous dites est vrai* — not *c'est vrai*.

1. Consider, O man! *what* the law of God commands,  
 and *what* society requires of you.—2. *What* I ask from  
 you, is a reciprocal friendship, as it existed between  
 your father and mine.—1. Tragedy excites terror: it is  
*that which* renders it tragical: the epic poem excites ad-  
 miration; it is *that which* renders it heroical.

1. Education is to the mind *what* cleanliness is to the  
 body.—2. *What* I fear most is treason.—1. I know  
 and why *that*.

what you speak of. What you expected has not taken  
 174 dat. s'attendre A avoir  
 place.—2. What you fear is to be discovered.—1. What  
 lieu craindre d' découvert  
 shines outwardly, is sometimes far from being substantial  
 briller au-dehors quelquefois très-peu \* solide  
 inwardly.—1. What costs little, is too dear, when it is of no  
 au-dedans coûter peu trop cher il n'est d'aucun  
 use.  
 usage

RULE 75.—*celui-ci, celui-là, &c.*

When the demonstrative pronouns refer to several substantives antecedent, they are expressed, *this*, by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci*; *these*, by *ceux-ci* or *celles-ci*; *that*, by *celui-là* or *celle-là*; *those*, by *ceux-là* or *celles-là*. *Celui-ci*, &c. mark the nearest object; *celui-là*, &c. the most distant. Example:.

There are two snuff-boxes: this is a gold one, that is only gilt.  
*Voilà deux tabatières: celle-ci est d'or, celle-là n'est que dorée.*

The state of the brute is very different from that of man:  
 état —f très-différent 76 4  
 that is clothed and armed by nature; this is not; that  
 vêtu armé 4 — ne l'est pas  
 soon attains its vigour and perfection, this continues  
 bientôt 172 arriver à 63 vigueur — rester  
 long in infancy. Which of these houses do you advise  
 longtemps l'enfance laquelle conseiller  
 me to buy? This will cost me six hundred pounds, and  
 57 d'acheter coûter 57 livre sterling  
 that seven. I do not like either of them; if, however,  
 aimer ni l'une ni l'autre cependant  
 you take one, I would advise you to buy this  
 en prendre (ir) A une conseiller 57 d'  
 rather than that.  
 plutôt

RULE 76.—*celui, celle, that.*

☞ When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by a noun in the genitive case, or by a relative pronoun, they are always expressed, *that* by *celui* or *celle*, and *those* by *ceux* or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples:

He has changed his own name for that of his cousin.  
*Il a changé son nom, et pris celui de son cousin.*



131 EXERCISE UPON THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These books are better than *those* which I have sold.

*Ces livres valent mieux que ceux que j'ai vendus.*

The system of Copernicus, which asserts that the earth  
système Copernic 14 assurer que terre  
turns round the sun, is more probable than *that* of Ptolemy,  
tourner autour du soleil — Ptolémée

who is of a contrary opinion. The sight of the mind is more

contraire 31 — vue f esprit  
extensive than *that* of the body. The goods of fortune are

étendu corps bien 4 — f

not to be compared with *those* of the mind. The disorders

comparables à maladie

of the mind are more dangerous than *those* of the body. The

—reux  
term of life is short; *that* of beauty still more so.

temps 4 vie court 4 encore davantage 54

Eternal happiness is infinitely superior to *that* which a man  
31 éternel bonheur —ment au-dessus de

can possess in this world. The injuries which we re-

pouvoir posséder monde m outrage 79

ceive from a man in a passion, are not so great as *those* which

en \* colère si 37

the same man commits in cool blood.

commettre (ir) de sang-froid

As men hate *those* who are unmindful of a benefit.

haïr ne sont pas reconnaissant bienfait

We ought to encourage *those* who apply themselves

devoir à \* —rager s'appliquer 61

to arts and sciences. This play will do you more honour

4 — comédie 57 plus 18 honneur

than all *those* you have composed before.

83 faites auparavant

RULE 77.—*celui qui*, he who.

☞ When the personal pronouns are the antecedents of *who*,  
*that*, or *which*, they are expressed in French, *he who*, by *celui*  
*qui*; *she who*, by *celle qui*, *they who*, by *ceux qui*, m. and by  
*celles qui*, f. Example:

*They who* despise learning know not the value of it.

*Ceux qui méprisent les sciences n'en connaissent pas le prix.*

*He who* cannot keep a secret is incapable of governing.

ne pouvoir garder — — 139 gouverner

Nobody is more speedily oppressed, than *he who*

personne ne promptement opprimer

fears nothing; because security is often the beginning<sup>4</sup>  
*craindre* 118      4 *sécurité*      commencement  
of calamity. *They who* are not satisfied with what they  
*malheurs* pl      *content* de 74  
possess at present, will probably never be pleased with what  
*posséder à présent* 172      120      le 54 de 74  
they may possess in future. *He who* never was acquainted  
*pouvoir* à l'avenir 120      a éprouvé  
with adversity, says Seneca, has seen the world but on one  
\* 9 — *—* *Sénèque n'a vu*      que d'  
side, and is ignorant of half the scenes of nature. *They who*  
*côté* \* *il ignore* \* *la moitié des* — 4  
overcome their passions, conquer their greatest enemies.  
*surmonter* — *terrasser*      ennemi.

RULE 78.—*celui* and *qu'* must be joined.

☞ When the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which*, are separated in English from their antecedents, *he*, *she*, or *they*, they must be joined in French, and then the second part of the sentence is put the first. Example:

*He* is contemptible, *who* supports idleness\*.  
*Celui qui encourage la paresse, est méprisable.*  
*not, celui est méprisable, qui encourage la paresse.*

*They* do not know the human heart, *who* trust to the  
77      connaître      humain 31 cœur      se fier  
vain promises of men. *They* do not always succeed, *who*  
*promesse* 172      réussir  
take their measures best. *He* is happy *who*  
*prendre (ir)* mesure      le mieux 172      heureux  
wants nothing. *They* are unworthy the glory of heaven,  
*ne manque de rien*      indigne de      gloire      ciel  
*who* give themselves up to the pleasures of this world. *They*  
*se livrer* 61      \*      plaisir      monde m  
are happy *who* content themselves with little.  
*se contenter* 61      de      peu

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We cannot sufficiently esteem those judges, *who*  
98 *ne pouvoir (ir)* assez estimer      juge

---

\* *Turn*, he who supports idleness is contemptible; and so on, for all other sentences of the same kind.

always directed by equity, never do any thing\* through  
*toujours dirigés* 4 *équité* 120 *faire* \* *rien* *par*  
 favour or solicitations. We naturally expect from  
*faveur* 21 *solli—* " *—rellement* 172 *attendre*  
 others what we have done to them before. They who  
*autres* 74 *faire* 47 *aspirant* 77  
 oppress the poor to increase their riches, shall be  
*opprimer le pauvre pl pour augmenter* *richesse pl*  
 punished by God.  
*punis de*

A philosopher shuns both riches and dignities: he  
*—phe éviter* \* *richesse* 9 10 *—té*  
 fears these, and despises the former. They (are  
*craindre* 75 *mépriser celles-là* 78 *se*  
 mistaken) who think that kings are the happiest of all  
*tromper croire (ir) roi* 9  
 men. Cyrus began the Persian monarchy, and Ninus  
*commencer c de Perse* 17 *—che* —  
 that of Assyria. Alexander, though ambitious, was sensible  
 76 *—ne* *—dre quoique* *—teurs* 11 *persuadé*  
 that he who coveted nothing was more happy than he who  
 77 *désirer* A 118 A 77  
 aimed at the possession of the whole world.  
*aspirer* A à — *entier* 31 *monde* 11

Cæsar said after the battle of Pharsalia, he is  
*César dire (ir) c* *bataille* *—sable* 78  
 a great general, who can expose himself like a  
*pouvoir (ir)* *—ser se* 61 *comme*  
 private soldier, during the battle; but he is still greater  
*simple soldat pendant* *mais* 78 *encore*  
 who can rejoice like a private man after the victory.  
*se réjouir comme simple particulier après* *victoire*  
 Wisdom (is content) with what is present, and expects  
*le sage se contenter de* 74 *pré—* *attendre*  
 patiently what is to come. Those who speak without  
*patiemment* 74 *à venir* 77 *sans*  
 reflection, are liable to say many (foolish things).  
*réflexion* *exposé à* *bien* 18 *sottise* f

Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the  
 9 *n'est autre chose qu'* *entier* 31 *—té*  
 eternal rule of things; Vice is the infringement of that  
*eternel* 31 *règle* f 4 9—r *infraction*  
 rule: this causes the misery of men, that makes them  
 75 *faire (ir)* \* *malheur* 4 75 *rendre* 57  
 happy; let us, therefore, love that, and detest this.  
*donc* 172 H 75 *avoir* H *en horreur*

He is truly a good man, who has a natural abhorrence  
 78 *vraiment* \* *homme de bien* 31 — *rel* *horreur*  
 of vice and love for virtue.  
 † — *m* *l'amour de* ‡

## CHAPTER VII.

### OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 21.

RULE 79.—*qui, que, who, &c.*

1. The relative pronouns *who, that, and which* are expressed by *qui*, when they are in the nominative case; *whom, that, and which* are expressed by *que* when they are in the accusative. Examples:

The man *who* speaks; the book *which* is on the table.

*l'homme qui parle; le livre qui est sur la table.*

The woman *whom* I see; the watch *which* I have.

*la femme que je vois; la montre que j'ai.*

Cicero was one of those *who* were sacrificed to the  
*Cicéron c* *c sacrifier*  
 vengeance of the triumvirs. The woman *whom* God formed

— *former c*  
 with one of Adam's ribs was the cause of his sin. The  
*d' une* 17 *côte c* — *péché*  
 books, *which* you read are good, but difficult to (be  
*livre m* *lire (ir)* *difficile à*

understood). Synonymous terms are words *which* signify  
*comprendre* 9 — *me* 31 *terme* • *mot* 7 — *fier*

the same thing. Marcus Aurelius used to say, that he  
*même chose f* *Marc-Aurèle avoir* *B coutume de dire*

would not part with what he had learned for all the  
*vouloir (ir)* *E donner \** 74. *B apprendre (ir)*

gold (in the) world; and that he had more glory from  
*or* *du monde* *retirer* *B plus* 18 *de*

what he had read of written, than from all the king-  
 74 *B lire (ir)* *écrite* *que*

doms he had conquered. Titus spent eighty millions  
 83 *B conquérir (ir)* *dépenser c* —

in the public games *which* he once gave to the Roman  
 31 *jeux* *une fois* 172 *donner c* 31

people.

RULE 80. — *dont, de qui, duquel.*

☞ 1. The relative pronouns *whose, of whom, or of which*, are usually expressed in French by *dont* for all sorts of objects.  
Examples :

I know the man *of whom* your brother complains.  
*je connais l'homme dont votre frère se plaint.*  
I have seen the house *of which* you speak.  
*j'ai vu la maison dont vous parlez.*

2. If the pronouns *whose, of whom, and of which* were joined to a noun preceded by any preposition, we should use *de qui* instead of *dont*, with reference to persons; and *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, or desquelles* with reference to animals and things, and they must be placed after the substantive governed by the preposition. Example :

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust.  
*c'est un homme à la discrétion de qui je n'ose me fier.*  
Providence, without the assistance *of which* we cannot succeed.  
*la providence, sans le secours de laquelle nous ne pouvons réussir.*

1. All the advantages *which* we enjoy on earth come from God.— 1. The same pride which makes us blame the faults from *which* we think ourselves free, induces us to condemn the good qualities which we have not.— 2. Many affect to condemn those honours (with the) desire *of which* they are inflamed.— 1. The young man, *of whom* I have spoken to you, deserves (to be) encouraged.— 2. Alexander, to *whose* courage they give (so many) praises, died at thirty-three years of age.— 1. The clemency *of which* men make a virtue is often practised (out of) vanity.— 2. The daughter of Minos gave a thread to Theseus, by means *of which* he (went out) of the labyrinth.

*avantage dont jouir sur 4 terre venir*  
*orgueil 79 faire 48 blâmer*  
*croire (ir) nous 48 exempt porter 48 à*  
*condamner —té 79 plusieurs*  
*affecter de mépriser les honneur du désir*  
*enflammé homme*  
*parler 47 mériter d'être encourager Alexandre*  
*— 98 donner tant 18 louange mourir c à*  
*âge de trente-trois ans clemence*  
*faire pratiqué par*  
*filles — donner c fil Thésée au moyen*  
*sortir c —the m*

RULE 81.—*qui*, or *lequel*, &c.

☞ When the relative pronouns *whom* or *which* are in the dative, or after a preposition, they are usually expressed by *qui*, in speaking of persons, and always by *lequel* or *laquelle*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, in speaking of animals and things. Examples :

The man *to whom* I write is very learned.

*L'homme à qui j'écris est très-savant.*

The reasons upon *which* I rely, are without answer.

*Les raisons sur lesquelles je me fonde sont sans réplique.*

N. B. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. must be also employed instead of *qui* in the nominative, when the relative is separated from its antecedent by another substantive to which it might seem to relate.

The glory to *which* heroes sacrifice, is often a false glory.  
 4 héros — fier — fausse  
 It is evident that there is a God, by *whom* all things are  
 il — il y a tout \* est  
 governed. Idleness is a vice to *which* young people are  
 gouverner paresse 9 — m jeunes gens  
 much inclined. He who gets riches knows not for *whom*  
 très-enclin 77 amasser 7 savoir (ir)  
 he gets them, nor for *whose* sake he is concerned. Ulysses  
 48 qui \* \* s'intéresse  
 (carried away) the palladium in *which* the Trojans had  
 emporter c — dans Troyens B une  
 particular confidence; it was a statue of Minerva, on *which*  
 — her 31 confiance ce B — f Minerve de  
 depended all the success of the war. Lying is a vice  
 dépendre B succès guerre mensonge m — m  
 for *which* we cannot have (too much) horror. The  
 98 ne pouvoir (ir) trop 18 horreur  
 canal of Languedoc runs across a river over *which* a  
 — du — passer sur rivière sur  
 bridge is built in the form of an aqueduct, under *which* the  
 pont en \* forme aqueduc sous  
 river continues its course.  
 continuer cours ,

RULE 82.—*où* or *lequel*, &c.

When a relative pronoun comes after a preposition, and refers to an inanimate object, it is almost indifferently ex-

pressed by *où* or by *lequel, laquelle*, &c. provided the verb denote motion or rest, at least figuratively. Example :

Avoid the faults into *which* I have fallen.

*Évitez les fautes où (or dans lesquelles) j'e suis tombé.*

Many (learned people) do not adopt the principles  
*bien des savant —ter —pes m*  
 from *which* the system of Descartes is derived. If I had  
*système — dériver B*  
 known before the déplorable condition to *which* you  
*connaître auparavant dé— 31 état*  
 are reduced, I would certainly have sent you some  
*réduire certainement 172 envoyer 57 7*  
 money. The allies of Rome, ashamed to acknowledge as  
*argent alliés — honteux de reconnaître pour*  
 their head a city from *which* liberty seemed banished,  
*maîtresse ville f — té paraître B bannie*  
 shook off a yoke which they bore with pain,  
*secouer c \* joug porter B peine*

**RULE 83.**— *Relative Pronouns never suppressed.* .

§ 83. The relative pronouns *whom, which, that*, and the conjunction *that*, are often understood in English, but *qui* and *qu'* are never omitted in French, and particular care must be had to use them every time they could be used in English. Examples :

I think he will come.      It is to you I speak.  
*je crois qu'il viendra.      C'est à vous que je parle.*

The exercise you have given me to write, is too long  
*theme donner 57 à écrire trop —*  
 and too difficult. The company I keep is very honest.  
*difficile —gnie fréquenter honnête*  
 The wine we drank yesterday was very good. The man  
*vin boire (ir) c hier. B*  
 I have spoken to, is just come from France. The reasons  
*parler 174 vient d'arriver — raison*  
 I rely upon are solid. We must not keep the promises  
*se fonder 174 solide il faut garder promesse*  
 which are hurtful to those to whom they were made. I  
*79 nuisible ceux on les a faites*  
 think you are in the right. I believe they will make peace  
*penser avoir \* \* raison . 98 faire paix*  
 this year. I will never forget the favour you have done me.  
*année 120 oublier grâce faite 57*

## RULE 84.—Place of these Pronouns.

The relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. are always put immediately after the nouns to which they have reference, and agree with them in gender, number, and person. Example :

It is you *who* have told me so.  
*c'est vous qui me l'avez dit.*

Remember, O man, that thy station on earth is appointed by the wisdom of the Eternal, *who* knows thy heart, *who* sees the vanity of thy wishes, and *who* often rejects thy prayer. The world is a stage upon which men, always masked, play upon one another. Let our appetites obey reason, to *which* they are subjected by the law of nature. Grandeur of air, accompanied with freedom of manners, are qualifications *which* attract general approbation.

*se ressouvenir* H      *état* 4 *terre*  
*fi.xé*      *sagesse*      *Eternel* 78 *connaître*  
*cœur*      *voir (ir)* •      *—té*      *désir*      *souvent*  
*rejeter*      *rière*      *monde* m      *théâtre* m • 81  
*toujours masqué se jouer les uns des autres* . *que* .  
*appétit obéir* H à *la raison* 81      *soumettre (ir)*  
*loi* 9 —      *un air de grandeur accompagné de*  
*manière* f pl *aisé*      *est une qualité*      *général*  
31      9 — •

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Choose a man whom you esteem, who is able and willing to serve you in need. The thing of which a miser thinks the least, is to relieve the poor. The christian yoke is safer than full liberty; it is a yoke that makes the practice of virtue pleasant, that secures us from the violence of passions, and that prevents us from ruining ourselves. We should always re-

*Choisir* H      79      *estimer* F      *avoir* F le *pouvoir*  
*la volonté de servir* 57      *au besoin*      *à* 81  
*avare penser*      *moins c'est à soulager les pauvres*  
*joug du christianisme*      *sûr*      *une*      *—té* 170  
79      *rendre*      *pratique* f 4      *agréable*  
*garantir* 57      • — 4 —      *empêcher*  
57 139      *perdre*      *nous* 57      *devoir* A •      *nous res-*



member the cares of those by whom we have been brought  
*souvenir des soins* ceux 81 élevé  
 up.

Death is an evil for which there is no remedy.

*Mort* mal dat. 81 *il n'y a point* 18 *remède*  
 Philip said to his son Alexander, on giving him Aristotle  
*Philippe dire (ir) c* — *dre en donner lui* 57 — *te*

for his preceptor, Learn, under so good a master, to

\* *précepteur apprendre H* un si \* *maître à*

avoid the faults into which I have fallen. Prudence and

*éviter* faute f 82 *je suis tomber* — 9

moderation gain us the esteem of those with whom we

*modé—* *gagner* 57 *estime* 81

converse. Men do not reflect enough on all the dangers

— *ser* *réfléchir assez* sur —

to which they are exposed. Let us consider the effects of

81 — *ser* — *déranger H* effet

prosperity and adversity, and then we shall easily

*prospérité* 9 21 — *té* *alors* aisément 171

perceive which is the most desirable. Let us

*apercevoir laquelle* dé—

endeavour to render ourselves able to fulfil the duties

*tâcher H* de rendre nous 57 *capables de remplir devoir*

of the situation to which God destines us. Choose well

— *état* 81 — *ner* 57 *choisir H*

the friend to whom you intend to give your confidence.

81 *rouloir (ir) \** confiance

After the existence of God (there is nothing) of which I

*après* — *il n'y a rien* 80

doubt less than of the immortality of the soul. Ulysses

*douter moins* — *té* âme — *e*

crossing the sea, commanded his soldiers to stop their

*traverser* mer — *der c à* soldat de boucher 66

ears with wax, and caused himself to (be tied) to the

*oreilles* 7 *cire f* *fure (ir) c se* 57 \* *attacher*

mast of the ship to keep himself from the charms of

*mât* vaisseau pour défendre se 57 charmes

the Sirens.

### *Sirènes*

Ignorance is a dishonour to human kind, and in

— *deshonneur pour* 4 *genre humain* en

a manner reduces men below the beasts, whose

*quelque manière* 59 *réduire* au-dessous de 80

ignorance is the consequence of their nature, and not the

— *consé—* —

effect of neglect or indifference.

effet 4 négligence 10 indifférence

## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. — See p. 21.

RULE 85.—*qui?* who?

☞ The interrogative pronouns *who*, *whose*, *to whom*, &c. are expressed by *qui* or *qui est-ce qui* for the nominative, and by *qui* in all other cases; but never by *que* or *dont*, as are the relative pronouns before mentioned. Examples :

Who is there? of whom do you speak? whom will you consult?  
*Qui est là? de qui parlez-vous? qui consulterez-vous? &c.*

Who doubts that a young man who loves virtue and science,  
*douter jeune 9*  
 enjoys more solid happiness, than he who spends his  
*ne jour r d'un solide 31 bonheur 77 passer*  
 life in dissipation and pleasure? Who goes there? to whom  
*dans 4 — plaisir là*  
 do you speak? whom can one trust to (now-a-days)?  
 \* 91 *parler pouvoir (ir) 98 se fier 174 aujourd'hui*  
 For whom does a miser get riches? whom shall I apply  
 \* *avare amasser 92 7 s'adresser*  
 to? who is the man who can be certain of constant happiness?  
 174 *pouvoir r d'un — 31 bonheur*  
 For whom shall I believe henceforth?  
*heur croire (ir) désormais*

RULE 86.—*lequel, laquelle*, which?

☞ When the word *which* is interrogatively used, it is always expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular, and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural. Examples :

Which of your brothers is married? Which of your sisters  
*lequel de vos frères est marié? laquelle de vos sœurs*  
 learns French?  
*apprend le Français?*

Of all these pictures, which should you like best,  
*tableau aimer le mieux*  
 and which do you think (is worth) most money? I  
*croire (ir) valoir le plus 18 argent*  
 have heard that one of your brothers is dead; pray  
*apprendre (ir) mort je vous prie*  
 tell me which? Which of your sisters learns geo-  
*dire (ir) H 56 apprendre 9 géo-*

graphy? Which of the maritime powers has the best  
*graphic* — 31 *puissance* *meilleur*  
 navy? England. Which of these horses will you buy?  
*marine* f *cheval vouloir* (ir) A  
 You have read Telemachus and Jerusalem Delivered;  
*lire* (ir) — *que* *la* *Jé* — *délivrée*  
 which of these two poems do you prefer?  
*poèmes* 91 *préférer*

RULE 87.—*quel?* what?

☞ When the pronoun *what* is used in an interrogative sentence, it is always expressed by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive singular, and by *quels* or *quelles* before a substantive plural. Examples:

What book do you read? What lesson have you learnt?  
*quel* *livre* *lisez-vous?* *quelle* *leçon* *avez-vous apprise?*

What are your reasons? What are her motives? What  
*raison* *motif*  
 passion is he inclined to? What dreadful news! What  
*passion* *enclin* 174 *fâcheux* *nouvelle*  
 crime has this man committed (that he should be  
*crime* m 92 *commettre* (ir) *pour* *le*  
 punished) so severely? What is the opinion of your father  
*père* *si sévèrement* —  
 on that affair? What news have you learnt in town to-  
*sur* *affaire* f *nouvelle* pl *appprises* *en*  
 day? What misfortune can we fear after we have lost  
*malheur* *pouvoir* *après* *que* *perdre*  
 every thing?  
 105

RULE 88.—*que?* what?

When the interrogative pronoun *what* signifies *what thing*, and is not governed by a preposition, it is usually expressed by *que* or *qu'est-ce que*. Example:

What do you ask?  
*què* *demandez-vous?* or *qu'est-ce que vous demandez?*

What are men before God? What avail riches without  
*devant* *dat.* *servir* *richesse* *sans*  
 health? What does he want? What have you done with  
*la santé* *demande* *faire* *de*  
 your books? What were you doing in the garden? What  
*jardin* *qu'est-ce*

did the master tell you? *What do you say of the French*  
*que maître dire B 57 31*  
 revolution?  
*ré—*

RULE 89.—*quoi?* what?

When the word *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a preposition, and signifies *what thing*, it is always expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence is interrogative or not. Example:

What are you thinking of?  
*à quoi pensez-vous?*

If you be idle when young, you will not know  
*à paresseux vous êtes jeune savoir (ir)*  
*what to apply yourself to in your (old age). What are you*  
*appliquer vous 57 174 vieillesse*  
 speaking of? On *what* will you interrogate him? In  
*parler A 174 sur vouloir (ir) A —ger 57*  
*what am I guilty? Of what do you accuse me? In what*  
*culpable accuser 57*  
 pray have I neglected to fulfil my duty? *What*  
*je vous prie négliger de remplir devoir*  
 are they complaining of? *What* do you aim at? *What* does  
 \* *se plaindre A 174 viser 174*  
 your brother apply himself to?  
 92 *s'appliquer 174*

CHAPTER IX.  
 OF INTERROGATIONS.

RULE 90.—*où, d'où, comment, &c.*

Besides the interrogations of which we have treated above, a question is often asked with the adverbs *combien, comment, pourquoi, où, d'où*, and some others. Examples:

Where are you going? whence do you come? &c.  
*cù allez-vous? d'où venez-vous?*

*How* (comes it to pass) that scarcely (any body) lives  
*arrive-t-il presque personne n'est*  
 content with his condition? (*How long*) have you lived in  
 — de — combien de temps demeurer

France? *How* can the members of the same body deceive  
*pouvoir membre 92 corps se tromper*  
 and hate one another? *why* do you do that? *where* have  
*se haïr les uns les autres? pourquoi faire cela?*  
 you been? *how many* shillings in the purse? *how*  
*schelling à livre f*

RULE 91.—*Pronouns after the Verb.*

☞ 1. The personal pronouns are put after the verb or its auxiliary, when it is used interrogatively. Examples:

Will you come? Will they speak?  
*viendrez-vous? parleront-ils?*

2. When the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put a (-t-) with two hyphens between them. Examples:

Does she sing well? Will he come?  
*chante-t-elle bien? viendra-t-il?*

1. Who art thou, O man! who presumest on thy own  
*être présumer de*  
 wisdom?—1. Have you seen my father?—2. Has he  
*sagesse voir (ir)*  
 given you any money for me?—2. Will he come to-morrow  
*donner 57 de l'argent 49 venir demain*  
 to see me? Are you in good health? Are you going soon  
*\* voir 57 santé aller bientôt*  
 into the country? Is there (any thing) greater than to  
*à campagne f y a-t-il rien 18 40 de*  
 (make use) of one's talents to procure the public happiness?  
*employer \* ses — à —rer 31 bonheur*

RULE 92.—*Substantive before the Verb.*

☞ 1. When a substantive is the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, the substantive is placed in French before the verb; but one of these pronouns *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, must be put after the verb, as if there were no substantive before. Examples:

Is your father at home? are your sisters learned?  
*votre père est-il à la maison? vos sœurs sont-elles savantes?*  
 as if it were: your father is he at home? your sisters are they  
 learned? and so on for all others.

2. However when the sentence begins with an interroga-

tive expression, as, who, *qui*, what, *que* or *quoi*, how much, *combien*, where, *où*, when, *quand*, &c. the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, may be omitted, and the substantive should be placed after the verb, and even after the participle, in the compound tenses. Examples :

*What does your son do? Where is my uncle gone?*  
*quo fait votre fils? où est allé mon oncle?*

N. B. In the preceding sentences the interrogative expression is the accusative or object-case of the verbs; otherwise the first rule should be applied.

1. Was ever (any body) more faithful to his country  
*c jamais personne in fidèle pays*  
 than Regulus, who would rather expose himself to certain  
*aimer c mieux se 57 une 31*  
 death, than not fulfil his engagements? Alas! said  
*mort 40 ne pas remplir — Hélas dire c*  
 Telemachus, I am but too certain that my father is dead;  
*Télémaque je ne suis que trop —*  
 I will go even to hell to seek his ghost: did  
*aller (ir) même enfer pl pour chercher ombre*  
 not Theseus descend thither? yet the profane Theseus  
*Thésée —dre c y 57 cependant —*  
 wanted to insult the infernal deities, and it is piety which  
*vouloir B\* outrager 31 — divinité c'est 4 piété*  
 is my motive; did not Hercules descend thither? I am  
*motif — c y 57*  
 not Hercules, but (an attempt to imitate him is noble);  
*mais il est beau d'oser l'imiter*  
 did not Orpheus, by the recital of his misfortunes  
*avoir A Orphée récit malheur*  
 move the heart of Pluto? I am more worthy of com-  
*touché cœur Pluton digne 19*  
 passion than Orpheus, for my loss is greater. Has my  
*car perte f*  
 sister written to her husband? Is that good to eat? Has  
*écrire mari cela à manger*  
 (any body) asked for me? Is the French master come? Is  
*quelqu'un demander \* 57 17 venir*  
 your book lost? Is your lesson learnt?  
*perdre leçon apprendre (ir)*

2. Who is that tall, pale man? What does your sister  
*qui 30 31*  
 apply to? How much does that coat cost to you? What  
*s'appliquer 174 habit coûter 47*  
 was the master saying to you? At what o'clock will your  
*dire (ir) B à 87 heure f*

*brother* (set off)? What have those *children* done? When  
*partir* *enfant faire* (fr)  
 did your friend return?  
*est* *revenir*

RULE 93.—*est-ce là? n'est-ce pas là?*

The English prefix the words *this* or *that* for the singular, and *these* or *those* for the plural, to the possessive pronouns *his, our, your, their, &c.* when they ask whose is such or such a thing: these questions are expressed in French, is that, by *est-ce là?* are these, by *sont-ce là?* is not that, by *n'est-ce pas là?* Examples:

Is that your son? are these your sons?

*est-ce là votre fils? sont-ce là vos fils?*

Is not that your house? are not these your houses?

*n'est-ce pas là votre maison? ne sont-ce pas là vos maisons?*

Is that your house? Are these your gardens? Is not that my book? Are not these your pens? Is this your muff?

*Are these your gloves? Is not that my hat? Are not these*

*gant* *chapeau*  
 your apples? Is that your daughter? Are these your bro-  
*homme*

thers? Are not these your sisters? Are these your horses?  
 Is not that your dog? Are not these your gardens?

RULE 94.—*est-ce que? n'est-ce pas?*

1. The English often ask a question, less to be informed if such a thing be or be not, than to have the assent of others to what they say: questions of this sort are expressed in French by *est-ce que*, without negation, if the first part of the sentence be negative in English. Example:

He is not dead, is he? *est-ce qu'il est mort?*

2. They are rendered by *n'est-ce pas* at the end of the sentence, when the first part is affirmative, and the second negative. Example:

He is dead, is he not? *Il est mort, n'est-ce pas?*

1. It does not rain, *does it?*—2. We have seen the  
*pleuvoir* (ir) *voir* (ir)  
 king, have we not, brother?—1. It is not cold, is it?—2. You  
 64 *il fait froid*

learn French, *do you not?* — 1. Your father is not dead,  
*apprendr. (ir) le Français*  
*is he?* — 2. It is dinner-time, *is it not?* — 2. It is fine weather,  
*temps de dîner* *il fait temps*  
*is it not?* — 2. You have received a letter from your father.  
*recevoir (ir) lettre*  
*have you not?*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INTER-  
 ROGATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

When was Rome built? what were the achievements  
*quand c 92 f bâtir 87 exploit*  
 of king Romulus? how long did he reign? what is the  
 — *combien de temps 91 régner c 87*  
 history of Tarquinius Superbus? when, and (for what)  
*histoire Tarquin le Superbe quand pourquoi*  
 was he expelled from Rome? what efforts did he  
*c chasser 87 efforts m*  
 make (in order to) be restored? what was the number of  
*faire c pour rétablir 87 c nombre m*  
 the Roman kings, and how long did the regal  
*de Rome 31 combien de temps \* royal 31*  
 authority subsist? what kind of government suc-  
*autorité 92 subsister c 87 sorte f gouvernement suc-*  
 ceeded at Rome? who were the first consuls? how  
*céder c c premier — comment*  
 did Brutus show his zeal for liberty? when were the  
*92 montrer c zèle m 4 liberté c*  
 decemvirs created? why were they deposed? what  
*déceuvir 92 créer pourquoi c déposer 87*  
 kind of government followed? when were the mili-  
*suire (ir) c c —*  
 tary tribunes created with consular authority at  
*taire 31 tribun 92 créer — laire 31*  
 Rome? who were the first plebeian consuls? how  
*c plébéen 31*  
 was the first triumvirate formed? what provinces were  
*c — rat 92 formé 87 — f c*  
 assigned to the triumvirs? what were the conquests  
*— gner — 87 c conquête*  
 of Julius Cæsar in Great Britain? what (account  
*Jules-César dans la Bretagne f 88 rapporte-*  
 have we) of Cæsar after the civil wars? when and by whom  
*t-on 14 après*  
 was he slain?  
*c tuer*



How long, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our patience?  
*Jusqu'à quand Catilina abuser de* —  
 How long shall thy frantic rage baffle the efforts of  
*frénétique — f 92 se jouer des —*  
 justice? (To what height) meanest thou to carry thy in-  
*4 — f jusqu'où . avoir dessein de porter*  
 solence? Seest thou not that the senators are apprised of  
*— voir (ir) que sénateur informer*  
 thy conspiracy? Wast thou not last night in the house of  
*— ration B hier au soir*  
 Lucca, with many other associates in guilt and madness?  
*plusieurs complices de ton crime 63 folie*  
 Darest thou deny this? Why art thou silent? Oh, im-  
*oser . nier le garder le silence*  
 mortal gods! what country do we inhabit? what city do we  
*— tel 31 87 pays habiter 87 ville f*  
 belong to? what government do we live under? Hast  
*appartenir 174 87 vivre (ir) 174 être*  
 thou not rendered thyself infamous by every vice that can  
*rendre te 57 infâme tout 106 m pl pouvoir*  
 brand a private life? What guilt has not stained thy  
*deshonorer privé 31 87 crime m souiller*  
 hands? What pollution has not defiled thy whole body? &c.  
*87 infamie souiller corps*  
 —Cicero against Catiline.

(How many) years from the creation to the deluge? in  
*combien 18 années 176 création — m*  
 how many days did God create the world? who were the  
*combien 18 92 créer c monde c*  
 first man and woman? who were their sons? what was  
*premier 30 27 c c*  
 their occupation? when did Enoch flourish? what became  
*— 92 fleurir c que devint-il*  
 of him? who was his son? (how long) did he live?  
*\* \* qui c combien de temps vivre (ir) c*  
 what was the usual length of life at that time? by  
*B ordinaire 31 longueur t époque f*  
 whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what design, and—  
*c 92 tour f bâtir à dessein*  
 when? why was the building (laid aside)? when was  
*quand c 92 bâtiessef abandonné c 92*  
 Abraham called by God? what is the history of his life?  
*appeler de 87*

(How many) years from the vocation of Abraham to the  
*combien 18 176 —*  
 departure of the Israelites from Egypt? whose son was  
*départ Israélites Egypte de qui B 92*

Isaac? when was he born? who was his wife? who were  
 — \* *naître (ir) c* *femme c*  
 his sons? when did Jacob live? (how many) sons had  
 92 — *vivre (r) c* *combien 18 c*  
 he? what is the history of Joseph? when and upon whose  
 87 — *à l'invitation*  
 invitation did Jacob and his family (go down) to Egypt?  
*tation de qui* \* 92 *famille aller c en*  
 when was Moses born? how was he educated? by whose  
 92 *Moïse c* *c élevé par le secours*  
 assistance, and when did he bring the Israelites out of  
*de qui quand emmener c hors*  
 Egypt? what miracles attended the Israelites at their  
*l* 87 — *accompagner c*  
 departure from Egypt and through the deserts? who was  
*sortie l dans déserts c*  
 their high priest? when was the law given to Moses? who.  
*grand-prêtre c* 92 *lui donnée*  
 was Moses' successor?  
*c* 17 *le —seur*

What is the history of Joshua, and what are his wars?  
 87 *Josué* *guerre*  
 when did he and the Israelites come to the possession of  
 45 92 *entrer c en* \* —  
 Canaan? when came Saul to the throne? by what means,  
 — *monter c* 92 *Saül sur trône m* *moyen*  
 and when, did David obtain the kingdom? how long  
 92 *David obtenir c* *royaume combien de temps*  
 did he reign? who were his sons? how long reigned Solomon?  
*régner c c c Sa—* 92  
 when did he dedicate the temple? what was his character?  
*dédier c — m* . 87 *c caractère*  
 what (is recorded) of Judith? what was the fate of Jo-  
*que rapporte-t-on — c sort Jo-*  
 siah? how long did he reign? when and by whom was Je-  
*sias c c*  
 rusalem burned? what is said of Daniel? what is the his-  
 92 f . *brûler* 88 98 *dire* 87  
 tory of his life? how long did he live? when was Jesus  
*vivre (ir) c* 92  
 born? what was his mission? by whom and when was he  
*naître c* 87 *B* *qui c*  
 crucified?  
 —*fier*

## CHAPTER X.

## OF THE DIFFERENT USES OF QUE.\*

RULE 95.—*que, admirative.*

The *que* admirative answers to the English words *how, how much, how many, what*. The adjective, if there be any, is always put after the verb in French, and before in English. Examples:

*How pretty you are! how unhappy I am!*  
*que vous êtes jolie! que je suis malheureuse!*

as if it were, how you are pretty! how I am unhappy! and so on for others.

*How small is the part of the world which is com-*  
*mitted to our eyes! How late it is to begin to live*  
*well when death is (at hand)! What (a piece of work is*  
*man)! how noble is his reason, how extensive† his*  
*faculties, and how admirable his form! how (much trouble)*  
*you take for me! What misfortunes you have*  
*undergone!*

*petite partie monde in con-*  
*fiée yeux que tard de commencer à vivre*  
*mort proche l'homme est un be-*  
*ouvrage raison étendu*  
*—té — forme de peine*  
*prendre (ir) 49 de malheurs*  
*éprouvés*

RULE 96.—*que, conditional.*

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence for the word *whether*, and in the middle, to avoid the repetition of *si*: in both cases, it governs the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Example:

*Whether it rain or not, I must go out directly.*  
*qu'il pleuve ou non, il faut que je sorte sur-le-champ.*

\* There are five particular sorts of *que*, called *relative, interrogative, admirative, conditional, and conjunctive*. As we have spoken at large of the two first, we will treat here only of the three others.

† The verb *être* must be repeated before every adjective.

If I were rich, and *had* children, I would give them  
*à riche . que G enfant 7 donner 47*  
 a good education. *Whether* he come or not, I do not care.

*é— venir non je ne m'en soucie*  
 If the French master come, and I am not at home,  
*pas 17 maître venir A que à la maison,*  
 tell him. I have been obliged to (go out) on business.  
*dire (ir) 47 83 —ger de sortir pour affaire*  
*Whether* you be rich or poor, you should be a man of probity.  
*riche pauvre devoir A probité*

### RULE 97.—*que, conjunctive.*

The *que* conjunctive is used particularly for the following conjunctions: *afin que, à moins que, avant que, cependant, de peur que, depuis que, jusqu'à ce que, parce que, quand, and pourquoi.* Example:

Wait till the rain is over.

*Attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus*

*que* in that sentence stands for *jusqu'à ce que*. \*

Epaminondas, having been wounded at the battle of  
*14 avoir blesser bataille*  
 Mantinea, would not allow the physicians to draw  
*—née vouloir (ir) C permettre aux médecins de tirer*  
 the arrow out of his wound, *before* he received the news  
*flèche f \* blessure ne recevoir G nouvelle*  
 of the victory. A miser would have all the gold (in the)  
*victoire avare or du*  
 world, yet he would not be satisfied. When you have  
*monde in content D*  
 acknowledged your faults, and you have repaired them, I  
*reconnaître faute f que D réparées 48*  
 will forgive you. *Why* did you not tell it?  
*pardonner 57 dire (ir) B*

Our companions please us less by the charms. we  
*compagnons plaire 47 moins charme m 83*  
 find in their conversation, than by those they find in  
*trouver — que par 76 83*  
 ours. The moment we die our fate is determined  
*au moment 83 mourir (ir) sort déterminer*

\* See, for more examples, the same rule in the grammar: *que* governs the same mood as the conjunction for which it is used. This rule is not difficult, because the conjunction may be used as well as *que*.

154 EXERCISE UPON THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

for ever. How long is it *since* your father went into the  
*toujours combien y a-t-il est allé à*  
country? You shall not (go out) *before* it is light.  
*campagne f sortir ne f jour*  
Wait *till* the rain is over. Come here *that* I may speak to  
*attendre pluie f passée venir ici parler*  
you.  
57

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98.— *Use of the Particle on.*

⚙ **ALL** vague and general expressions of reports, such as *one says, people say, it is said, it is reported, &c.* are rendered in French by the particle *on*, with the verb in the third person singular of the active voice. Example:

They speak of peace.

*On parle de la paix.*

**N. B.** When the passive verb is not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by*, it is generally expressed in French by the active verb, and the pronoun *on*—as:

Astonishing news are reported.  
*on rapporte des nouvelles surprenantes.*

When *one* has deviated from the paths of virtue, *one*  
*s'est écarté sentier 4*  
ought to endeavour to get (into them) again. It (has been)  
*devoir A \* chercher rentrer y 52 \* on a*  
often lamented that the origin of almost every nation is  
*souvent regretter origine f presque 108 — f*  
either lost in fables, or buried in obscurity.  
*ou perdre dans 7 f ensevelir 4 —té*

*People* attribute the invention of gunpowder to  
*attribuer — canon poudre 23 f*  
Berthold Schwartz of Friburg. *It is reported* that Pytha-  
*Fribourg rapporter —*  
goras required a silence of five years from those he in-  
*gone exiger B — ans ceux 83 in-*  
structed in philosophy.  
*struire B 4 —phie*

RULE 99.—*l'on* for *on*.

1. *On* takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et*, *si*, *ou*; and also after *que*, if the next word begins with *c* or *qu*. Example:

You have been or will soon be rewarded.  
*on vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.*

2. *On* never takes an *l'* in the beginning of a sentence, nor when it is followed by *le*, *la*, *les*. Examples:

They say so. Put here your letter, it will be read.  
*on le dit. mettez-là votre lettre, on la lira*  
not, *l'on le dit*; nor, *mettez-là votre lettre, l'on la lira*; which would have a very bad sound.

1. Death arrives (in the) moment one thinks the least of it, and one passes in an instant from pleasure to the grave.—1. As, when a picture is finished, one runs a risk of spoiling it, if one adds new touches to it; so likewise you will spoil a period, if you unseasonably add to it synonymous words, which neither contribute to the clearness of expression, nor to the embellishment of speech. We learn better what we understand, than *discours on apprendre (ir) mieux 74 comprendre* what we do not.—2. They say that he is dead.  
*74 comprendre*

RULE 100.—*Le même*, the same.

The word *the same*, is expressed by *le même* or *la même* for the singular, and by *les mêmes* for the plural of both genders. Examples:

Is that *the same* book which I have lent you?—Yes,  
*Est-ce là le même livre que je vous ai prêté?—Oui,*  
*it is the same.*  
*c'est le même.*

*The same* manners which (are becoming) when natural, are ridiculous when affected. It is rare to  
*manière siéent quand elles sont —rel —le elles sont —ter il — de*

see two persons of the same temper, and of the same  
 voir personnes caractère m  
 opinion. Whatever misfortunes happen to a philosopher,  
 — quelque 110 malheur qui arriver — phe  
 he is always the same. The same thing does not please at  
 toujours  
 all times.  
 temps

RULE 101.—*plusieurs*, many, several.

The words *many* and *several* are usually expressed by *plusieurs*, always plural, of both genders. Example :

I have several books for you.  
*J'ai plusieurs livres pour vous.*

Many poems of the first merit appear obscure because  
 poème m mérite m paraître obscur parce que  
 the reader is not sufficiently acquainted with the ancient  
 lecteur \* assez 172 connaître 31  
 fables, historical facts, or natural objects, to which the  
 — f 10 — que 31 fait — rel 31 objet 81  
 poet alludes. Many had rather suffer the loss of life  
 poète fait allusion aimer à mieux souffrir perte f 4  
 than of a good name. When we apply ourselves to  
 celle réputation quand 98 s'appliquer  
 several sciences, we seldom succeed in any.  
 — 98 rarement réussir dans aucun

RULE 102.—*un autre*, another.

The pronoun *another* is usually expressed by *un autre*, and *others* by *les autres*, unless it be in the genitive, or dative ; in which cases they are expressed by *autrui*, when speaking of persons not named before. Examples :

I have lost my knife, I must buy another.  
*J'ai perdu mon couteau, il faut que j'en achète un autre.*

Do not take others' goods.  
*Ne prenez pas le bien d'autrui.*

Another would not have forgiven you so easily as  
 pardonner 57 si facilement 37

\* However, the word *several* is expressed by *différent* or *différente*, when it is preceded in English by the, or a possessive pronoun.

I did. *Another's* disgrace often deters a tender mind  
*je l'ai fait* 17 . — 172 *détourner* 31 *cœur*  
 from many vices. Do not speak ill of *others*, if you wish  
*bien* 18 *mal* *autres* *vouloir* (*ir*)  
 not that *others* should speak ill of you. Charity rejoices  
*que* *F* *mal* 9 — *se réjouir*  
 (in the) happiness of *others*, and is contented that *others* be  
*du bonheur* . *content* . *F*  
 preferred. Bear the imperfections of *others* without  
*préférer* *souffrir* H — *sans vous*  
 vexation.  
*troubler*

RULE 103.—*chacun*, every one

1. The pronouns *every one* and *every body* are both expressed by *chacun*, always masculine, unless *every one* relate to a feminine expressed before. Example :

*Every one* thinks of himself.  
*chacun* *pense à soi.*

2. The word *every* is always an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque* Example :

*Every* science has its principles.  
*chaque science a ses principes.*

3. The word *each* is an adjective, which being substantively used, is expressed by *chacun* always singular. Example :

They have *each* a good place.  
*Ils ont chacun une bonne place.*

1. *Every one* lives after his own way.—1. *Every body*,  
*vivre* (*ir*) à \* *manière*  
 has his own faults.—1. We must give *every body* his own.—1.  
 \* *défait* *il faut donner à* 69 m \*  
 After the ladies had danced all night, *every one* of them  
*après que* *dame* c *danser* *la nuit* *d'elles s'en*  
 went home.—2. *Every* country has its customs and laws.  
*aller c* *chez elle* *pays* *cout me* 63 *loi*  
 —3. Your brothers have *each* a good place.—1. *Every one*

must take care of himself — 3. The epic poem of Voltaire  
*devoir* *A prendre garde à soi* 31 *poème* m —  
 and that of Milton have *each* their merit.—2. There is, in *every*  
 76 — *avoir* *mérite* 469



plant, a certain quality which renders it wholesome or hurtful.  
*plante f — rendre 48 salutaire nuisible*

— 1. *Every one* has his own manner of thinking and acting.  
*manière penser 139 177 agir*

RULE 104.—*quelqu'un*, somebody.

1. The pronouns *somebody* and *any body* are both expressed in French by *quelqu'un*, always singular and masculine. Example :

*Somebody* has told it me.  
*Quelqu'un me l'a dit.*

2. The word *some* or *any* is usually expressed by *quelque* before a substantive, and by *quelqu'un* or *quelqu'une*, singular, *quelques-uns* or *quelques-unes*, plural, when they are not immediately followed by a substantive. Examples :

There are *some* defects in your book.  
*il y a quelques défauts dans votre ouvrage.*

Those pears are fine, I will take *some*.  
*ces poires sont belles, j'en prendrai quelques-unes.*

1. When we are in town, we have almost every day  
*en ville presque tous les jours*  
*somebody* to dine with us.—Has ever *any body* seriously  
*à dîner 92 sérieusement*  
doubted of the immortality of the soul? — 2. Of the *ma-*  
*louter —té âme parmi*  
gistrates, *some* voted the death of the admiral, and *some* for  
*—trat voter c amiral \**  
his banishment; but the majority was for setting him  
*bannissement —té c pour mettre 139 57*  
at liberty. The vestal virgins were obliged to preserve  
*en vestale 31 vierge B obliger de conserver*  
their virginity while they waited on the goddess Ves-  
*—té pendant que servir B \* déesse*  
ta; if *any* sinned against that law, she was buried alive.  
*pécher B contre B enterré vif*  
I have *some* books for you, and *some* also for your bro-  
*aussi*

ther Gather *some* of those flowers.  
*cueillir (ir) H fleur*

RULE 105.—*le tout*, the whole.

1. The *whole*, not followed by a substantive, is expressed by *le tout*, always singular and masculine. Example :

I will take the whole.  
*Je prendrai le tout.*

2. *Every thing*, *all*, *all things*, are expressed by *tout*, without any article, and it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, when in the accusative. Examples :

*All* is mutable in this world.      He has lost *every thing*.  
*tout est variable en ce monde.*      *il a tout perdu.*

1. The whole is greater than a part. — 1. (How much) *le tout* *combien*  
do you ask for the whole? — 1. I will not sell  
*demander*      *vouloir (ir) A vendre*  
the whole; I must keep a part for myself. — 2. The  
*il faut que j'en garde moi*  
Pyrrhonians were philosophers who doubted of every thing.  
— *men B — ple 7 douter B*  
— Every thing is vanity in this world. — 2. Every thing dis-  
— *lé dans monde m* *dé-*  
pleases you. — 2. He takes every thing. — 2. She has taken  
*plaire 57 prendre*  
every thing for herself. — Piety refers all things to God;  
*elle piété rapporter*  
self-love, (on the) contrary, applies every thing to  
*amour-propre au — traire rapporter à*  
itself.  
*soi*

RULE 106.—*tout le*, all, the whole.

1. When the words *all* and *the whole* come before a substantive, they are both adjectives, and expressed by *tout le*, or *tout la*, for the singular, and by *tous les*, or *toutes les*, for the plural, and they are both repeated before every substantive. Example :

I have eaten all the apples.  
*J'ai mangé toutes les pommes.*

2. When *tout* stands for *every*, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular, except with the word *monde* taken in the sense of *persons*. Example :

Every man is mortal.  
*Tout homme est mortel, Tous les hommes sont mortels.*

1. *All* the grandeur, wealth, and power of the earth, cannot satisfy an ambitious mind. — 2. The passions of youth are pliant to every impression. — 2. Come and see us every day. — 2. We naturally ascribe to God every kind of perfection, as wisdom, power, and goodness without bounds, existing through all ages, pervading all space, providing for all mankind in general, and for every creature in particular. — 1. *The whole* fleet is at sea.

*richesse* *pouvoir*  
*faire* 31 — *lieux esprit*  
*jeunesse* \* *cèdent* — pl *venir* H  
 \* *voir* 57 pl *naturellement* 172 *attribuer*  
*sorte* f 16 4 *sagesse* 10 *pouvoir*  
*bonté* sans fin *exister* dans siècles m  
*remplir* espace *pourvoir* (ir) à genre humain  
 à pl — *lier*  
*flotte* f ex m

# RULE 107.— *tout ce qui*, all that.

☞ The words *all that*, *every thing that*, and also *whatever* signifying *all that*, are expressed in French by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*, always masculine and singular. Examples :

*All that* you say is true. *All* is not gold *that* glitters.  
 Tout ce que vous dites est vrai. Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.

*All that* does not tend to the glory of God, or to the good of society, is mere vanity. *Every thing that* is lofty, vast, or profound, expands the imagination, and dilates the heart. *Whatever* is good in itself, is not always approved. *Whatever* tends to enlighten the understanding, or to impress the heart with right feelings, may be pronounced useful.

*tendre* *gloire*  
*bien* n'est que *élevé*  
*vaste* *profond* *tendre* — *dilater*  
*cœur* *soi* *approuver*  
*tendre à éclairer* *entendement* *à imprimer*  
*dans* *de* *bon sentiment* *pouvoir* (ir) *appeler*  
*utile*

RULE 108.—*tout*, quite.

☞ The word *tout* is frequently used to express the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, *although*, or the first *as*\* of a sentence where two are used. In this case it is always indeclinable, except (which is worthy of notice) before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant. Examples :

She was *quite* surprised.

*Elle fut tout étonnée*—indeclinable.

She is *quite* altered since her illness.

*Elle est toute changée depuis sa maladie*—declinable.

Philosophers, *as* learned as they are, are sometimes mistaken. Your mother was *quite* cast down at that news; however, *as* sorry as she was, she received me kindly, and desired me to dine with her. This fashion is *quite* new.

*philosophe*      *savant* . •      \* *quelquefois* 172  
*se tromper*      C      *abattre* \*      • *nouvelle*  
*cependant*      *affligé*      B      *recevoir* C 57 *avec bonté* .  
*prier* • 57 *de dîner*      *elle*      *mode* f      *nouveau*

Your sister is *quite* altered by her illness. Hope *as* deceitful as it is, serves at least to lead us to the end of life through a pleasant way. The wife, mother, and daughter of Darius, *as* afflicted as they were, when Alexander took them prisoners, could not forbear admiring his generosity.

*sœur*      *changer*      *maladie* *espérance*  
*trompeuse*      *servir* *au moins* *à conduire* 57  
*fin* 4      *par* *agréable* 31 *chemin* *femme* *mère* 10  
*filles*      14—      *affligé*      B      *quand*  
*faire* C 57      *prisonnières* *pouvoir* C      *s'empêcher*  
*admirer*      *générosité*

RULE 109.—*quelque* indeclinable.

When the words *however*, *howsoever*, *though ever so*, *so much*, or *so little*, come before one or several adjectives or participles, they are expressed by *quelque* indeclinable, which is repeated before every adjective. • The words are placed

\* The first *as* should be expressed by *aussi*, if there be a comparison of objects, as we have seen before, Rule 37. The second *as* is always expressed by *que*, and never by *comme*.

thus : 1. *Quelque*. 2. The adjective. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive mood. 5. The substantive; the rest as in English. Example :

*Though* your faults be *ever* so great,  
 1. *Quelque* 2. *grandes* 3. *que* 4. *soient* 5. *vos fautes*,  
 they will forgive you.  
*on vous pardonnera.*

As if it were, however great your faults may be, they will forgive you.

Philosophers, *however* extolled their sentiments may be,  
 — *phc* 9 . *élevés* —  
 are exposed to some practical frailties as well as other  
*exposer quelque pratique* 31 *faute aussi-bien que*  
 mortals. *Though* men be *ever* so incredulous during their life,  
*mortel incrédule pendant*  
 they often change their disposition when death approaches.  
 172 *changer* \* *de* — *approcher*  
 All the nations of the earth worship a Supreme Being, *how-*  
*adorer* 31 — *Être m*  
*ever* different they may be in their temper, manners, and  
*m pl* \* \* 63. *caractère mœurs* .  
 inclinations. *Though* fashions be *ever* so foolish, people  
 — *mode f* *folles* *on*  
 always follow them. *However* skilful and learned  
*toujours* 172 *suivre (ir)* 57 *habile* *savant*  
 we may be, let us not make a vain show of our  
*faire (ir)* — *étalage*  
 knowledge.  
*science*

#### RULE 110:—*quelque* declinable.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *to be*, is expressed by *quelque* or *quelques*, adjective and declinable. We put, 1. *Quelque*. 2. The substantive. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive; the rest as in English. Example :

*Whatever* faults you have committed, they will forgive you.  
*Quelques fautes que vous ayez commises, on vous pardonnera.*

He who possesses virtue will be loved by all good men, in  
 77 *posséder* 9 *aimer de* 106 *gens de bien*  
*whatever* country he lives. *Whatever* mental accomplish-  
*vivre (ir)* *talent de*  
 ments a man may have received from nature, he may  
*l'esprit* *reçus* + *pouvoir* Δ

improve them by art and study. Charity does not  
*perfectionner* 57 *étude*  
 rejoice in iniquity, *whatever* advantage she may reap  
*se réjouir de* 4 — *le* *avantage* *recueillir* (ir)  
 from it. *Whatever* services you have done me, I have  
*en* 57 — *m* *rendus* 57  
 been thankful (for them).  
*reconnaissant en* 57

RULE 111.—*quel que*, in two words.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive and the verb *to be*, is expressed by *quel que*, or *quelle que*, for the singular, and by *quels que*, or *quelles que*, for the plural. We put, 1. *Quel*, or *quelle*. 2. *Que*. 3. The verb *être*, in the subjunctive mood. 4. The substantive: the rest as in English. Example:

Whatever your faults may be, they will forgive you\*.

*Quelles que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera.*

as if it were, whatever may be your faults; putting always the verb in French before the substantive.

*Whatever* your birth may be, *whatever* your elevation  
 plf *naissance* pl \* 63 *élévation*  
 and glory, you ought to despise nobody. *Whatever* may  
*gloire* *devoir* A *mépriser* 116  
 be the power of a king, he cannot hope to increase nor  
*pouvoir* *espérer de augmenter*  
 even to preserve it, if he be not (particularly attentive)  
*même de conserver* 60 A *très-attentif*  
 to gain the affection of his subjects. *Whatever* your  
*à gagner* — *sujet*  
 motives may be, your conduct will be condemned.  
*motif* *conduite* f *condamné*

RULE 112.—*quelque chose que*, whatever.

1. The word *whatever*, meaning *all things soever*,\* is usually expressed by *quelque chose qui* or *que*, or by *quoi que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive. Example:

Whatever he does, do not punish him.

*Quelque chose qu'il fasse (or quoi qu'il fasse), n. le punissez pas.*

\*. I have repeated the same sentence in these three rules, to render more sensible the application of *quelque*, *quelques*, and *quelles que*.

2. *Nothing whatever* is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *quoi que ce soit* after it. Example :

I have found nothing whatever.  
Je n'ai trouvé *quoi que ce soit*.

1. *Whatever* happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against the Divine Providence.—2. Those who apply to nothing whatever, are very contemptible.—1. *Whatever* may happen in our family, give (me notice of it).—2. I complain of nothing whatever.—1. *Whatever* you undertake, you will never succeed in it, if you do not take your measures better.  
*il arriver vertueux 120 mur-*  
*murer contre — — 77 s'ap-*  
*pliquer très-méprisable*  
*ever famille n'en avis*  
*se plaindre entreprendre (ir)*  
*- 120 réussir y 57 mesure*  
*mieux 172*

### RULE 113.—*quiconque*, whoever.

1. The pronouns *whoever* and *whosoever* are usually expressed by *quiconque* for the nominative case. Example :

*Whoever* spares the bad, does harm to the good.  
*Quiconque épargne les méchants, fait tort aux bons.*

2. When *whomsoever* is preceded by *of*, *to*, or any other preposition, it is expressed by *qui que ce soit que*, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Example :

*Of whomsoever* he speaks, I do not believe him.  
*De qui que ce soit qu'il parle, je ne le crois pas.*

1. *Whoever* is prudent, will avoid talking much of any particular science in which he is not (remarkably skilled), — *—lier — dans 81 très-versé* because he has nothing to get, and much to lose.—2. *Of* *whomsoever* you speak, avoid calumny.—2. To *whomsoever* you apply, they will tell you the same thing.—1. *parce qu' 118 à gagner à perdre*  
*whomsoever parler éviter 9 calomnie*  
*soever s'adresser on dire 57 chose f*  
*Whoever (is not ashamed) of his faults (is deserving) of*  
*n'a pas honte faite mériter*

punishment.—1. *Whoever* is modest, seldom fails  
*punition* • • • • • *modeste* *rarement* 172 *manquer*  
to gain the good will of those he converses with.  
*Ac gagner* \* *estime* 83 —*scr* 174

RULE 114.—*l'un l'autre*, one another.

The pronouns *one another*, and *each other*, are expressed by *l'un l'autre*, or *l'une l'autre*, when speaking only of two; and by *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, for the plural. The first of these pronouns is always in the nominative: hence, if there be any preposition in English, it must be put between them in French. Example:

They speak ill of one another.  
*ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre*, not *ils parlent mal de l'un l'autre*.

The faculty of interchanging our thoughts with one another has always been considered as one of the greatest privileges of reason, and as what more particularly raises mankind above the brute. We are guilty of great injustice towards one another, when we are prejudiced by the features of those whom we do not know. The happiness of the people makes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with one another.

—*lége* 4 *raison* 74 172 *élever*  
*l'homme au-dessus de* — *f* *coupable*  
— *f* *envers* pl • *nous nous laissons*  
*prévenir* *trait* *ceux que* *connaître*  
*bonheur* *peuple m faire* 76  
*intérêt* *liés* *dat.* *pl*

RULE 115.—*l'un et l'autre*, both.

The word *both* is expressed by *l'un et l'autre*; *either* is expressed by *l'un ou l'autre*; and *neither* by *ni l'un ni l'autre*. If there be any preposition in English, it must be repeated in French before *l'un* and before *l'autre*. Example:

I speak of neither of them.  
*je ne parle ni de l'un ni de l'autre*.

I love my father and mother; I would do every  
*faire (ir)*

\* *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires *ne* before the Verb.



thing to please them *both*. The slothful and the  
 105 *pour leur plaire à* .  *paresseux*  
 diligent are (upon a level) if *neither* of them knows what  
 — *de niveau* <sup>o</sup> \* \* *savoir (ir) quoi*  
 to do. Your brother and mine have great abilities; but  
 \* *faire* 69 8 *talent mais*  
 they *both* make very bad use of them. *Both* suspect  
 \* *faire mauvais usage en* 57 *soupçonner*  
 him, but *neither* will say why. Either of you  
*vouloir (ir) pourquoi vous pouvez*  
 can do me a great favour.  
*l'un ou l'autre plaisir*

RULE 116.—*ne* and *personne*, nobody.

☞ 1. *Nobody* is expressed by *personne*, and by *ne* which is put before the verb. Examples:

*Nobody* loves mischief as mischief. He thinks of  
*Personne n'aime le mal pour le mal. Il ne pense à*  
*nobody.*  
*personne.*

2. Observe that *personne* is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive.

1. I know *nobody* so learned as you.—2. I know a *person*  
*connaître si savant* 37 *connaître*  
 more learned than you.—1. *Nobody* more impatiently  
*savant* 39 *—ticment* 172  
*suffers injuries*, than he who is (most forward) in doing them.  
*souffrir* 9 77 *le premier à faire en* 57  
 He who pleases *nobody*, is less unhappy than he whom *nobody*  
 77 *plaire à malheureux* 77 *à qui*  
 pleases. *Nobody* becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.  
*plaire devenir débauché vertueux tout-à-coup.*

RULE 117.—*pas un, aucun* and *ne*, none.

☞ The pronouns *none, not one*, are expressed by *aucun, pas un*: both require the particle *ne* before the verb. Examples:

None of the judges were against you.  
*Aucun des juges n'était contre vous.*  
 All the soldiers have been taken prisoners, *not one* has  
*Tous les soldats ont été faits prisonniers, pas un n'a*  
*escaped.*  
*échappé.*

Of all the nations of the earth, there is none but has an idea of God. Of the great number of friends who surround us in prosperity, there often remains not one in adversity. Fortune exempts many (bad men) from punishment but none from fear. I had many friends, yet not one has relieved me.

*il n'y en a qui n'ait*  
*idée nombre m ami envi-*  
*ronner 57 dans 4 —périté il n'en 172 rester*  
*4 —té 9 — f sauver bien 18 méchant 4 • puni-*  
*tion mais 4 crainte f B 101 cependant*  
*secourir (ir) me 57.*

RULE 118.—*ne* and *rien*, nothing.

The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien* and by *ne* before the verb. Example:

Nothing should hinder a Christian from telling truth.  
*Rien ne doit empêcher un Chrétien de dire la vérité.*

God requires nothing from us, but what is for our advantage. Nothing is more common than the word friendship, and nothing more rare than a true friend. Nothing is more dangerous for a young man than bad company. Charity does nothing without consideration and order.

*demande \* 57 que 74 avan-*  
*tage. tage commun 39 mot amitié*  
*n'est — véritable*  
*—reux 4 —guie*  
*—té 9 faire (ir) sans — ni sans ordre*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Idleness is the mother of all vices. Charity is the first of all virtues. Though true love be ever so uncommon, yet it is less so than true friendship. With you, every road is easy, every river fordable, every country fertile. Whatever may be the happiness of the grandees of the earth, a

*paresse 9 — m —té 9*  
*109 véritable amour rare*  
*cependant • 54 • f 106*  
*chemin facile rivière guéable pays —*  
*11 • bonheur • grand •*

true Christian should propose to himself something more solid  
*Chrétien devoir A proposer se 57. quelque chose de solide*  
 and lasting.  
*de plus durable*

One is truly amiable, when one is modest and learned  
*98 vraiment aimable modeste savant*  
 at the same time. Your sisters, handsome and amia-  
*en \* temps 108 belle amia-*  
 ble as they are, do not marry. Whoever cannot  
*ble se marier 113 pouvoir (ir)*  
 bear suffering, has not a great soul. Alexander used  
*souffrir âme f —dre avoir B*  
 to say, I am (as much) indebted to Aristotle, as to  
*coutume de aussi redevable —te*  
 my father; for, if I am indebted for life to the one, I am in-  
*de " l'un*  
 debted for virtue to the other. You should not distrust  
*devoir E vous défier*  
 one another as you do.  
*de 114 faire (ir)*

Whoever attentively considers the misery of human  
*113 172 —vement considérer misère f humain*  
 life, will certainly prepare for a better; since infancy  
*31 172 se préparer meilleure puisque enfance*  
 (is attended) with folly, youth with disorder, and (old  
*se passe dans 4 folie jeunesse désordre m vicil-*  
 age) with infirmities.  
*lesse —té.*

If you would be happy, desire nothing too  
*vouloir (ir) A heureux désirer H 118 avec trop*  
 eagerly, rejoice not excessively, nor grieve  
*d'empressement se rejouir H —vement ne s'affliger*  
 (too much) for disasters; and (above all) never forget  
*trop des malheur surtout 120 oublier*  
 the concerns of your soul.  
*salut âme*

Nobody can flatter himself he shall live till to-  
*116 flatter se de \* vivre (ir) jusqu'à*  
 morrow. The people often suffer by the wars which  
*demain peuple pl ; 172 souffrir des. guerre*  
 princes make with one another. Whoever reveals  
*se faire (ir) dat. 114 113 révéler*  
 secrets loses his credit. Honours, whatever they are,  
*9 perdre crédit honneur 111*  
 do not make men truly great, if they have no personal  
*rendre vraiment*

merit. With time and patience we tame  
 31 *mérite m* le *temps* — 98 *apprivoiser*  
 wild beasts, though ever so savage.  
*sauvage* 31 *bête f* *quelque farouches qu'elles soient*

Every moment is dear to him who knows the value of  
 106 *pl* — *cher* 77 *connaître* *prix* 4  
 time. Every man seeks tranquillity, and nobody finds it.  
*temps* 106 *pl* *chercher* — *té* 116 *trouver* 48  
 Envy and hatred are always united and strengthen one  
*envie* *haine f* *unir* 143 *se fortifier* 114  
 another in the same individual; they are only distinguish-  
*sujet* *on ne peut les* *distin-*  
 able from one another in this: the one keeps close to  
*guér* 114 *qu'en ceci* *s'attacher*  
 the person, the other to his situation.  
 116 *état*

## CHAPTER XII.

## SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.

RULE 119.—*ni, ni ne, neither.*

1. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni*, and *ne* is put before the first verb. Example:

He knows *neither* how to read *nor* write.  
*Il ne sait ni lire, ni écrire.*

2. If they come before two verbs in any tense of the indicative, *neither* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni ne*. Examples:

I *neither* love *nor* hate them.  
*Jc ne les aime ni ne les hais.*  
 I *neither* praise *nor* blame you.  
*Je ne vous loue ni ne vous blâme.*

1. Henry the fourth was a great king: *neither* his palace  
 11 *B* *palais*  
*nor* his heart was shut against (any body); but they were  
*cœur B fermer à personne B*  
 particularly open to men of merit.—2. Adversity,  
 —*fièrement* *ouvert* *mérite* —*té* 4

*neither* troubles *nor* casts down the just; prosperity  
 troubler abattre (ir) \* juste prospérité  
*neither* spoils him, *nor* makes him prouder.—2. Virtue is  
 aveugler 57 rendre 57 fier \*  
*neither* lost by shipwreck, *nor* changed by the alter-  
 ne se perd point naufrage change point vicis-  
 sations of time.—2. I *neither* love *nor* hate you; you  
 situde temps aimer 60 haïr 57  
*neither* please *nor* displease me.—1. You can *neither*  
 plaire déplaire 60 savoir (ir) A  
 read *nor* write.—1. We despise those who are useful  
 lire écrire on mépriser 76 utile  
*neither* to themselves, *nor* to others.  
 eux-mêmes 102

RULE 120.—*ne jamais*, never.

✎ *Never* is expressed in French by *jamais*; by no means is rendered by *nullement*; both require *ne* before the verb. Examples:

*Never* speak ill of any body.

*Ne parlez jamais mal de personne.*

I by no means approve of your conduct.

*Jc n'approuve nullement votre conduite.*

*Never* make public what has been trusted to you in se-  
 rendre H 74 confier \* 57 en  
 cret. Shining characters are not always the most agree-  
 brillant 31 caractère m agréable  
 able; the mild radiance of an emerald is by no means less  
 able doux radiation émeraude f  
 pleasant than the glare of a ruby. Time past *never* re-  
 agréable 39 éclat rubis passé re-  
 turns; and a word, once uttered, *never* can be recalled.  
 venir mot une fois prononcé rappeler  
 Scipio Africanus used to say, that he was *never*  
 Scipion l'Africain avoir B coutume de dire B  
 less at leisure, than when at leisure; *nor* less alone,  
 \* oisif quand il était \* oisif seul  
 than when alone.  
 quand il était

RULE 121.—*ne aucun*, non, no.

✎ 1. When the word *no* comes before a substantive, it is usually expressed by *aucun* or *aucune* for the singular, and by *aucuns* or *aucunes* for the plural, with *ne* before the verb. Example:

There is *no* knowledge more useful than that of ourselves.  
*Il n'y a aucune connaissance plus utile que celle de nous-mêmes.*

2. The word *no* is expressed by *non*, when it is used in answer to a question. Example :

Do you learn geography? — No, sir.  
*apprenez-vous la géographie? — Non, monsieur.*

1. No bounds can restrain the glory of the Almighty,  
*limite restreindre gloire Tout-puissant*  
*no* dimension of time can limit his reign. There is *no*  
*— temps limiter règne m il n'y a*  
 grief which length of time does not lessen or mollify.  
*chagrin \* \* le temps diminuer F n'adoucir F*  
 A clear conscience needs *no* excuse, and fears *no*  
*pure 31 — avoir besoin de — craindre*  
 accusation. — 1. No inheritance can supply the want of a  
*— héritage suppléer au défaut*  
 good education. — 1. No revenge is more heroic than  
*é— vengeance héroïque*  
 that which torments envy by doing good. — 2. Have you  
*76 tourmenter envie en le bien*  
 seen the queen of England? No, I have not. — 2. Do  
*voir (ir) reine Angleterre 5 ne l'ai pas vue*  
 you know the king? No, madam. — 1. No reverse of for-  
*connaître madame revers*  
 tune ought to alter friendship.  
*devoir A \* altérer 9 amitié*

RULE 122. — *ne pas*, or *non*, not.

§ 1. The word *not* is expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after. Example :

I do *not* speak. We have *not* spoken to him.  
*Je ne parle pas. Nous ne lui avons pas parlé.*

2. *Ne* and *pas* go before the verb, when it is in the present of the infinitive. Example :

I will do it, in order *not* to displease your father.  
*Je le ferai pour ne pas déplaire à votre père.*

\* Not, followed by *that*, is expressed by *non*, *que* or *non pas* *que*, *as*, *je le ferai*, *non que* j'y sois obligé, mais pour avoir la paix ; I will do it, *not* that I am obliged to do it, but to have peace.

1. As the earth <sup>o</sup> does *not* only produce roses and  
*comme* *seulement* 172 *produire* 7 —  
 lilies, but likewise Erics and thistles; so the world  
*lis* *mais* *aussi* *ronces* 7 *chardons* 7 *gusi* *monde* 119  
 does *not* always afford us contentment and pleasure, but  
 \* 172 *donner* 57 —*tement* 7 *plaisir* 7  
 sometimes afflictions and troubles.  
*quelquefois* — 7 *peine* 7

2. You must be blind *not* <sup>2</sup> to <sup>1</sup> see, that this man  
*il faut que vous* 157 *aveugle* *pour*  
 wants to deceive you. — To forgive one's enemy before  
*vouloir* (*ir*) \* *tromper* 57 \* *à* *avant qu'*  
 he is sensible of his faults, is to encourage him in his  
 158 *persuadé* *faute c'est* \* *encourager* 57  
 faults; *not* to forgive him at all, is to sin one's self.  
*lui* 57 *du tout c'est* \* *pécher soi-même*

#### RULE 123.—*ne* without *pas*, *not*.

The word *not* is expressed by *ne* without *pas*, when it is joined to the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and also to *savoir*, used for *to be able*, followed by an infinitive. Examples :

He does not cease complaining. *Il ne cesse de se plaindre*  
 I cannot speak French. *Je ne saurais parler Français.*

*not*, *Il ne cesse pas de se plaindre*, nor, *je ne saurais pas parler Français.*

As antiquity cannot authorise an error, so novelty  
*comme* *ancienneté* *autoriser* *erreur* *ainsi* *nouveauté*  
 cannot prejudice truth. When we dare *not* blame

*porter préjudice à* *on oser* *blâmer*  
 a prince after his death, it is a sign that his successor  
 — *après mort c'est signe m* — *seur m*

is like him. Some people do *not* cease to complain  
*ressembler lui* 57 104 *personne* 116 *cesser de se plaindre*  
 of fortune, though they are loaded with its favours. When

— *f* *quoiqu'* 158 *chargé* 32 *faveurs*  
 Darius offered to Alexander to divide Asia equally with  
*offrir c* *de partager Asie* 5 *également*  
 him, he answered: The earth cannot bear two suns, nor  
 49 *répondre c* *pouvoir souffrir* *soleil ni*  
 Asia two kings.

**RULE 124.** — *Distinction between pas and point.*

1. *Point* denies absolutely, and signifies not at all; *pas* denies sometimes but in part: thus this sentence, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables*, signifies that none of the accused are guilty; and this, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables*, only signifies that they are not all guilty.

2. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of a thing, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it: thus, in this sentence, *n'avez-vous point vu mon frère?* I doubt if you have seen him or not; and in this, *n'avez-vous pas vu mon frère?* I am persuaded you have seen him.

Though this distinction be exact, and conformable to the practice of the best authors, yet it is not always observed; and there are many cases, in which *pas* and *point* can be almost indifferently used.

**RULE 125.** — *que ne, than.*

When the word *than* comes before a verb in any tense of the indicative mood, it is usually expressed by *que*, and by *ne*, which is put before the verb. Example:

He is younger *than* I thought.

*Il est plus jeune que je ne croyais.*

not, *il est plus jeune que je croyais.*

Courage is often allied to vice, *than* cowardice is to  
 — *plus souvent allier m lâcheté* 54  
 virtue. We despise those who speak otherwise *than* they  
 98 *mépriser* 76 *autrement*  
 think. Ireland is more powerful at present, *than* were  
*penser Irlande* 5 f *puissant à* 54 B  
 the three kingdoms at the death of queen Elizabeth. A  
 • *royaume mort reine* —  
 traveller often relates things otherwise *than* they are.  
*voyageur* 172 *rapporter*

**RULE 126.** — *ne after craindre, &c.*

The particle *ne* is used in French after the verbs *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *prendre garde*, and *empêcher*, when they are affirmatively used, but not when negatively. Examples:

I fear he will do it.

I do not fear he will do it.

*Je crains qu'il ne le fasse.* . *Je ne crains pas qu'il le fasse.*



From these examples you may observe, that there is always a negation in the sentence where these verbs are used.\*

I have not heard<sup>entendu parler</sup> of my son for these six months<sup>depuis \* mois</sup>;  
 I fear lest some misfortune have befallen him. I fear my  
<sup>que</sup> father will come; I do not <sup>malheur être F arriver lui 57</sup> fear he will come. I will hinder  
<sup>\* venir F</sup> him from punishing you; I will not hinder him from punish-  
<sup>qu'il \* punir F 57</sup> ing you, because you deserve it. <sup>qu'il \*</sup>  
<sup>57 parce que mériter le 57</sup>

RULE 127.—*ne* after *à moins que*.

☞ The particle *ne* is used in French after the conjunctions *à moins que*, *de crainte qu'*, *de peur que*, *que* for *unless*, and *que* for *before*; though there is no negation in English. Example:

*Unless* you punish him, he will not study.\*

*A moins que vous ne le punissiez, il n'étudiera pas.*

No man was ever (cast down) by the injuries of fortune  
<sup>personne C abattre (v) revers — f</sup>  
*unless* he had before suffered himself to be deceived by  
<sup>à moins qu'il se fût auparavant laissé \* \* tromper</sup>  
 fair favours. I will not go into the country <sup>unless</sup>  
<sup>favor aller (ir) à campagne f à moins</sup>  
 you go with me. Go home<sup>49</sup> for fear my  
<sup>que venir F 49 aller H à la maison de crainte que</sup>  
 father come and find you here.\* A judge ought to  
<sup>ne trouver 57 ici juge devoir A \*</sup>  
 examine his own heart, lest passion prevent justice.  
<sup>examiner cœur de peur que — 9 empêcher — f</sup>  
 I will not forgive you, *unless* you beg pardon. I will  
<sup>\* pardonner 57 que demander B —</sup>  
 not (set off) before my cousin have come.  
<sup>partir que — être F venir</sup>

RULE 128.—*ne que*, but, only.

☞ When the words *but* and *only* come after a verb, and mean *no more*, *nothing else*, or *nobody else than*, they are

*These verbs and conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood.*

usually expressed by *ne* before it and by *que* after it. Examples;

I have but few friends. *Je n'ai que peu d'amis.*

He is but twelve years old. *\* Il n'a que douze ans.*

Knowledge without humility produces nothing but pride,  
*science 9 4 —té produire \* orgueil*  
 vanity, and presumption. We confess small failings, only to  
*—té présomption avouer 8 défaut pour*  
 persuade others that we have no great ones. I am but  
*—der aux autres 18 grand en 57 avoir*  
 twenty years old. God requires nothing of us but what is for  
*ans \* demander \* \* 57 74*  
 our advantage. Friendship (is to be purchased) only by  
*avantage amitié 9 peut s'acheter par*  
 friendship.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the NEGATIONS.

There is no reproof more mild, no exhortation more  
*il y a 121 reproche m doux 121 —*  
 effectual, than good example. Afflict nobody, never  
*efficace exemple m affliger n 116 120*  
 blame without reason, never reprove with passion, and  
*blâmer 120 réprimander*  
 be always ready to pardon injuries. Two things cannot  
*prêt à pardonner injure 9 chose pouvoir (ir)*  
 be more contradictory than truth and falsehood; yet per-  
*—toire vérité fausseté peut-*  
 haps, none are so mixed and united. Charity never looks  
*être 117 mêler ni si unir —té 120 regarder*  
 on others with contempt.  
*mépris*

No strength of genius, no vivacity of wit, can excuse  
*121 force f génie 121 —té esprit excuser*  
 immorality in authors. There would be neither navigation  
*—té auteur il n'y aurait 119 —*  
 nor agriculture, without the industry of men. What is  
*— sans —trie 74 se*

\* However, *qui* is used when but is placed between the nominative and the verb. Example: *il n'y a personne qui ne craigne la mort, there is nobody but fears death.*

done in anger, *cas* neither be done well, nor  
*fait dans colère ne pouvoir (ir)* 119 *fait* 122  
 be approved by any body. The waves of the Channel are  
*approuver de personne vague f Manche f*  
 not more agitated by the winds of the east or the west,  
 122 *agité vent \* est \* ouest*  
 than my heart was when I heard of that sorrowful  
 125 *accrur 54 c apprendre (ir) c \* fâcheux*  
 accident.

Unless magistrates be on their guard, they will  
*à moins que* 127 *—trat . v* *garde pl*  
 (be made) instruments of the revenge of wicked men.  
*devenir — vengeance méchants \**  
 There is no object more pleasing than the sight of a man  
*il y a* 121 *objet agréable . ruc f*  
 whom you have obliged,  
 79 *obliger*

## CHAPTER XIII.

## OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE 129.—*Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The verbs which govern the genitive in French are,  
 1. the following, *abuser, avoir besoin, avoir pitié, hériter,*  
*jouir, manquer, médire, rougir,* and *user,* whatever case they  
 govern in English. Examples:

He traduces every body. I enjoy good health.  
*Il médit de tout le monde. Je jouis d'une bonne santé.*  
 not, *il médit tout le monde ; nor, je jouis une bonne santé.*

2. Most of the reflected verbs. Examples:

He repents his faults; she distrusts every body.  
*Il se repent de ses fautes ; elle se défie de tout le monde.*

3. Most of the verbs followed by the prepositions *of, from,*  
*with, or by.* Examples:

I am loaded with spoils. He is loved by his master.  
*Je suis chargé de butin. Il est aimé de son maître.*  
 not, *je suis chargé avec butin ; nor, il est aimé par son maître.*

2. The *impious* mock at virtue, and ridicule  
*—pie pl se moquer* *tourner en ridicule*  
 religion.—2. Do not laugh at others' misfortunes, instead  
*—se moquer* 102 • *malheur* *au lieu*  
 of pitying them.—1. You abuse the favours of for-  
*de avoir pitié* 139 *en* 57 *abuser* *faveur*  
 tune, and you do not use your victory with moderation.—  
*—user* *victoire* *modération*  
 1. Death pities nobody, neither rich nor poor.—1. Never  
*mort avoir pitié* 116 119 *du riche* *pauvre* 120  
 traduce (any body).  
*médire* *à* *personne*

3. Covetous men are tormented with the desire of increas-  
*avare* \* *tourmenter* *désir* *augmen-*  
 ing what they have, and the fear of losing it.—1.  
*ter* 139 74 • 21 *crainte* *perdre* *le* 57  
 Nature wants few things.—3. She is contented with  
*—avoir besoin* 18 *se contenter*  
 little.—1. It is grievous to want money in a foreign  
*peu* *fâcheux* *de manquer argent* *étrang.*  
 country.  
 31 *pays*

RULE 130.—*Verbs which govern the Dative.*

The following verbs, *consentir*, *contrevenir*, *controuuer*, *dé-  
 plaire*, *désobéir*, *nuire*, *obéir*, *obvier*, *pardonner*, *parvenir*, *pen-  
 ser*, *plaire*, *remédier*, *ressembler*, *résister*, *songer*, *subvenir*,  
*succéder*, and *survivre*, govern the dative in French, what-  
 ever case they govern in English. Examples :

He obeys his master. You please every body.  
*Il obéit à son maître. Vous plaisez à tout le monde.*  
 not, *il obéit son maître ;* nor, *vous plaisez tout le monde.*

Flattery can hurt nobody, but him whom it pleases. If  
*—rir* *nuire* \* • 128 77 *plaire*  
 we do not forgive others, we must not expect that God  
*pardonner* 102 *il ne faut pas espérer* • *Dieu*  
 will forgive us. Remember, O my son! the counsel  
 \* 159 57 *se souvenir* *à* 129 • *conseil* 83  
 I give thee, it will profit thee much: obey the law of  
*donner* 57 *profiter* 57 *beaucoup obéir* *à* *loi*  
 God. Obey the king and all the subordinate magistrates,  
 • *—donné* 31 *—trai-*  
*resist* your passions, forgive your enemies, hurt nobody,  
*résister* • *à* • *ennemi nuire* *à* 116

and never yield to the allurements of pleasure. He that  
 120 *céder* H *attrait* 4 77  
 resists his evil inclinations, deserves greater praises than  
*résister* mauvais — *mériter* 8 *éloge* m  
 he who conquers kingdoms, and cannot command his  
 77 *conquérir* (ir) — *der* à  
 passions.

RULE 131.— *Verbs which govern the Accusative.*

All verbs which may be used in the passive voice govern the accusative in French, whatever case they govern in English. Examples:

I accept of your offer: your offer is accepted.  
*J'accepte* votre offre: *votre offre est acceptée.*

God accepts of our endeavours after holiness  
*accepte* v *effort* pour arrive: à 4 *sainteté*  
 provided they be sincere. He that was never acquainted  
*pourvu qu'* 158 77 \* 120 *connaître* c  
 with adversity, says Seneca, knows the world but on  
 \* 9 — *le* *Sénèque* *connaître* monde 128 d'  
 one side. If you seek for happiness (any where) but in  
*côté* *chercher* \* *bonheur* ailleurs que en  
 God, you are sure to be disappointed. Henry the Fourth  
 — *de* *tromper* 11  
 looked upon the good education of youth as a thing  
*regarder* \* *é* — *jeunesse* comme chose f  
 (upon which) depends the felicity of kingdoms and people.  
*d'où* *dépendre* *bonheur* 4 *peuple* pl

RULE 132.— *Accusative and Genitive.*

The following verbs, *absoudre*, *accabler*, *accuser*, *avertir*, *bannir*, *blâmer*, *chasser*, *comblér*, *corriger*, *débusquer*, *dégouter*, *délivrer*, *détourner*, *dissuader*, *exclure*, *expulser*, *informer*, *louer*, *menacer*, *priver*, *remplir*, *soupçonner*, and a few others, govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing. Example:

To expel the impious from society.  
*Chasser* les impies de la société.

\* When these verbs govern one noun only, it is usually put in the accusative, whether it have reference to a person or to a thing.

It is the part of a fool to *accuse* another of a fault  
*c'est fait fou d'accuser un autre faute f.*  
of which he is himself guilty. Our infirmities often  
80 61 • *culpable* • —*té* 172  
*mind* us of mortality, sickness warns us of  
*faire ressouvenir* 57 —*té* • *maladie avertir* 57  
death, adversity ought to *admonish* us of our duties, and  
—*té devoir* A \* *avertir* 57 *devoir*  
make us think of religion. To load an enemy with in-  
*faire penser* 130 — \* *charger ennemi d'in-*  
juries; to exclude a liar from society; to free one's country  
*jure* \* *exclure menteur* *délivrer son pays*  
from tyranny.  
—*nie*

RULE 133.—*Accusative and Dative.*

The following verbs, *accorder*, *adresser*, *annoncer*, *apporter*, *attribuer*, *avouer*, *communiquer*, *confesser*, *confier*, *conseiller*, *déclarer*, *dédier*, *démander*, *devoir*, *dire*, *donner*, *écrire*, *enseigner*, *envoyer*, *épargner*, *expliquer*, *ôter*, *pardonner*, *prédire*, *préférer*, *prendre*, *présenter*, *prêter*, *procurer*, *promettre*, *raconter*, *rapporter*, *refuser*, *rendre*, *renvoyer*, *répéter*, *reprocher*, *répondre*, *révéler*, *vendre* and a few others, govern in French the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. Example:

Take that sword from your son.  
*Otez cette épée à votre fils.*

Observe, that no verb governs two accusative cases in French.

We must give children an honest liberty, and forgive  
*il faut enfant honnête —té pardonner*  
them the faults which they commit through ignorance  
52 *faute* *commettre (ir) par* —  
or levity. Ask nothing of your friend, but what is  
*légèreté demander* \* *ami* 128 74  
right. Prefer virtue to riches. If we were allowed  
*juste préférer richesses* *si nous était permis*  
to take away from others, whatever we should think  
*de prendre* \* 102 107 *juger*  
proper, the society of men would be soon overturned.  
*à propos* *bientôt renverser*  
When I see birds build their nests with (so much) art  
*oiseau bâtir nid tant* 18 —  
and skill, I ask what master has taught them  
*adresse demander maître enseigner c* 52

mathematics and architecture? Justice gives (every body)  
*mathématiques* — — f *donner* *chacun*  
 his own. Intemperate youth transmits a wasted  
*le sien une* — *pérée* 31 *jeunesse, transmettre* *épuisé*  
 • body to (old age).  
 31 *corps* *vieillesse*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

It is the duty of a Christian to please God, to hurt  
*c'est* *devoir* *Chrétien de plaire* 130 *nure*  
 nobody, and to do good even to his enemies. An honest  
 '116 *bien* 7 *même* *ennemi* *honnête*  
 man ought to endeavour to satisfy his creditors. We  
*devoir* A, \* *tâcher* *de satisfaire* 131 *créanciers*  
 ought to use diligence, and not to abuse time,  
*devoir* A \* *user* 129 — 122 \* — *ser* 129 *temps*  
 because the life we enjoy is short. Fortune often  
*parce que* 80 *jour* 129 *court* — f 172  
 snatches away wealth from the rich; but she cannot  
*ôter* 133 \* *richesses* *riche* *mais*  
 take away probity from the virtuous.  
*ôter* 135 \* *probité* *vertueux*

Solomon asked wisdom of God; God said unto  
*Sa— demander* c 133 *Dieu* *dire* c  
 him: Because thou hast asked this thing of me, and  
*lui* 57 *parce que* *demandeur* *me* 57  
 hast not asked long life, nor riches, nor the life of  
*que* *une longue* *richesses* 7  
 thy enemies, I have given thee a wise and understanding  
*ennemi* *donner* 57 31 *intelligent*  
 heart, also riches and honour. We cannot easily  
*cœur, et richesses* 7 *honneur* *aisément* 172  
 withstand the allurements of pleasure.  
*résister* 130 *attrait* *plaisir* 4

The country is encompassed on all sides with craggy  
*pays* *environner* *de* *côté* *de escarpé* 31  
 rocks, so that it needs few troops to defend  
*rocher si bien qu'on a besoin* 129 *peu* 18' *pour*  
 it; such is the fruitfulness of the soil, that it  
*le* 57 *telle* *fertilité* *terrain*  
 is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty  
*se nourrir* 129 *propre richesse* *telle* *quantité*

of fountains and woods; that it is watered with abundance  
*fontaine bois arroser 129 un grand*  
 dance of rivulets, and affords the diversions of hunting. I  
*nombre ruisseau procurer plaisir chasse*  
 will abuse your patience no longer. Did you think of  
*abuser 129 — davantage 172 penser 1130*  
 my business? Has he perceived your trick? Resist the  
*affaire s'apercevoir 129 tour résister 1130*  
 wicked. He will not obey his master.  
*méchans obéir 130*

## CHAPTER XIV.

## OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood comprehends the *present*, the *gerund*, and the *participle*. As these three forms demand particular attention, they will be explained separately.

## OF THE PRESENT.

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Preposition.*

1. A verb in the present of the infinitive has no preposition before it, when it comes after any of the following, *aimer mieux, aller, croire, daigner, déclarer, devoir, entendre, envoyer, espérer, faire, faillir, falloir, laisser, nier, oser, paraître, prétendre, pouvoir, savoir, sembler, souhaiter, soutenir, valoir mieux, voir, and vouloir*. Examples:

Deign to answer me.  
*daignez me répondre.*

You ought to write to him.  
*vous devriez lui écrire.*

2. A verb is also put in the present of the infinitive without any preposition, when it is the subject or the nominative case of another verb. Examples:

To speak too much is dangerous. To walk is wholesome.  
*trop parler est dangereux. se promener est salubre.*

1. Should you be as rich as Cræsus, if you do not  
*quand E 37 Crésus 123*  
 know how to put bounds to your desires, you will al-  
*savoir \* \* mettre borne ? dés*  
 ways be poor.—2. To keep up acquaintance with vicious  
*172 vivre familièrement vicieux*



people, is to authorise vice. 1. A wise man desires  
 \* *c'est* \* *autoriser* m *le sage* *désirer*  
 nothing, but what he can get justly, use with  
 \* 128 74 *c* *gagner avec justice consommer avec*  
 sobriety, and distribute cheerfully.—2. To mourn without  
*sobriété* — *buier avec joie* *pleurer sans*  
 measure, is folly, not to mourn at all is insensibility.—1.  
*mesure c'est folie* 122 *du tout c'est* — *le*  
 Men ought to shun vice and stick to virtue. Those who  
*en devoir* A *éviter* *pratiquer* \* 77  
 pretend to be learned, are often very ignorant. I will go  
*prétendre*  
 and see him to-morrow, If I have time.  
*le* 57 *demain* *le temps*

RULE 135.—*Infinitive with de.\**

☞ We place the preposition *de* before a verb in the infinitive mood,

1. After a substantive which so governs a verb as to be inseparably connected. Examples :

It is time to set out.  
*Il est temps de partir.*

You have no cause to be angry with me.  
*Vous n'avez pas sujet d'être fâché contre moi.*

You have plenty of time to consider that question. Read-  
*tout le examiner* — *lec-*  
 ing is a method of conferring with men, who, in every  
*ture* 9 *manière* *conférer avec* 4\* 106  
 age, have been the most distinguished for their learning,  
*siècle pl se sont* — *gués par science*  
 of (becoming acquainted with) the result of their mature  
*connaître* *résultat* *mûre*  
 reflections, and of contemplating at leisure the finished pro-  
*réflexions* — *pler à loisir meilleur*  
 ductions of good authors. It is folly to think of escaping  
 — *autour* 170 *folie* *penser à échapper*  
 censure, and a weakness to (be affected) (by it). He  
*à* 4 — \* *faiblesse* *s'affecter* *en* 58  
 had not the courage to resist. I discover no reason to post-  
*c* — *résister* *découvrir* 121 *raison* *dis-*  
 pone my journey.  
*férer* *voyage*

\* We have given more extent to this rule and the following, as it much puzzles foreigners to know when they are to employ *à* or *de* before an infinitive.

2. The English preposition *for* with a gerund after a substantive is generally expressed by *de* with the infinitive. Example:

I make you my compliments *for* having succeeded.

*Je vous fais mes complimens d'avoir réussi.*

I feel a great obligation to you *for* having spoken in my behalf. Receive my thanks *for* having (exerted yourself so much) for the success of my affair.

*avoir*                      47                      *en*  
*behal.*    *Recevez mes remerciemens*    *prendre tant de*  
*peine*                      *succès*                      *affaire* f

3. After an adjective, whenever, by inverting the sentence, the infinitive may serve as a nominative to this expression, *is to be* (*c'est être*), followed by the adjective, and likewise after *capable*, *incapable*, *digne*, *indigne*. Examples:

You are very clever to have succeeded so well.

*Vous êtes très-adepte d'avoir si bien réussi.*

We may say: to have succeeded so well *is to be* very clever; *avoir si bien réussi, c'est être très-adepte.*

He is worthy of being selected for that employment.

*Il est digne d'être préféré pour cet emploi.*

Indeed, we are too good to listen to such nonsense.

*en vérité*                      *trop*                      *écouter* \* 8 *pareil sottise* f pl

That man is very curious, to ask (so many) questions. You are very amiable in having come to pay us a visit. She is too complaisant, in obliging a man who deserves it so little.

*bien*                      *faire* tant 18                      —  
*aimable*                      *être* *venir* \* *rendre* 57 \* — *te*  
—                      — *ger*                      *mériter* 50 *si peu*

He is not able to go so far.

*capable si loin*

4. After any adjective preceded by the impersonal verbs *est*, *il est*; *il semble*, it seems; *il paraît*, it appears; and after several impersonal verbs which could be expressed by *il est* with the adjectives derived from them: *as*, *il convient*, *il suffit*, *il importe*, for, *il est convenable*, *suffisant*, *important*. Examples:

It is dangerous to trust every body.

*Il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.*

It is enough to speak to him.

*Il suffit de lui parler.*

It is impossible *to please* every body. It (is import-  
 — *à tout le monde* —  
 ant) *to be* careful when one is in a public situation. It  
*ter soigneux* 98. — 31 —  
 ought *to (be enough)* for you not *to have* been punished ;  
*devoir A \* suffire* 57 —  
 and it is unjust *to ask* a reward for an action which  
*injuste demander récompense* —  
 deserved punishment. It would be advantageous for a  
*mériter B punition avantageux*  
 nation *to be governed* by men entirely free from pas-  
*gouverner 7 entièrement exempt*  
 sions ; but it appears impossible *to find* such perfect  
 — *trouver 7 si parfait* 31  
 beings on the earth.  
*êtres sur*

5. After most of the reflected verbs. Examples :

I will abstain from doing it. He repents of having said it.  
*Je m'abstiendrai de le faire. Il se repent de l'avoir dit.*

6. After the following verbs, *accuser, affecter, avertir, blâ-  
 mer, cesser, commander, conjurer, conseiller, craindre, détourner,  
 défendre, différer, dire, dispenser, dissuader, écrire, empêcher,  
 enjoindre, entreprendre, essayer, feindre, finir, menacer, mériter,  
 négliger, offrir, omettre, ordonner, oublier, parler, permettre,  
 persuader, plaindre, presser, prescrire, prier, promettre, pro-  
 poser, refuser, remercier, résoudre, sommer, soupçonner, and  
 supplier.* Example :

I advise you *to stay* here.  
*Je vous conseille de rester ici.*

6. The law of nature forbids us *to do* injustice to one  
*défendre \* se faire tort p'*  
 another.—6 God commands us *to love* our enemies, and  
 114 *commander 57 aimer ennemi*  
*to do* them good.—6. They deserve *to be* encouraged, who  
*faire leur 57 bien 7 78 mériter* —  
 undertake *to serve* the public.—6. Never promise *to do*  
*entreprendre servir 120 promettre*  
 a thing, when it is not in your power *to do* it.—5. I pro-  
*chose quand pouvoir se pro-*  
 pose *to go* and see your mother to-night.  
*poser \* voir ce soir*

RULE 136.—*Infinitive with à.*

We place the preposition *à* before a verb in the infinitive mood,

1. After a substantive when we have to express something to be done. •Examples•

I have no time to lose.  
*Je n'ai point de temps à perdre.*

I know of a house to be sold.  
*Je connais une maison à vendre.*

I have found a fine garden to let. Is your house to  
*trouver louer 92*  
sell or to let? I have (so much) work to do that I  
*vendre tant 18 ouvrage faire*  
have not a moment to lose. You know my disposition to  
*perdre connaître*  
oblige my friends. I think I perceive in him a kind of  
*—ger ami croire \* apercevoir en 49 sorte f*  
repugnancy to learn mathematics.  
*répugnance apprendre (ir) mathématiques pl*

2. After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by *in* with the gerund. Example:

I have great pleasure to see you (*in seeing you*).  
*J'ai beaucoup de plaisir à vous voir (en vous voyant).*

You know his courage in facing dangers. Your son  
*connaître — affronter —*  
spends all his time in laughing and playing. A true Christian  
*passer rire jouer vrai Chrétien*  
places all his happiness in relieving the unfortunate.  
*mettre (ir) soulager malheureux pl*  
The true hero experiences an infinite satisfaction in sacrificing  
*héros éprouver — ni 31 — — fier*  
himself for his country. There is more glory in dying like  
*sc 57 pays 169 18° mourir comme*  
Nelson than in living in unmerited honours.  
*vivre au sein des honneurs qu'on n'a pas mérités*

3. After any adjectives, except in the two cases mentioned in the preceding rule, and in case the verb express a reason for using the adjective. Examples:

I am ready to go out. This fruit is good to eat.  
*Je suis prêt à partir. Ce fruit est bon à manger.*

o But we ought to say, I am glad to see you, *je suis aise de vous voir*, as the sentence means, I am glad *because* I see you.

Is French easy *to learn*? Is that question difficult *to resolve*? Let a prince be slow *to punish*, and quick *to reward*. Charity is ready *to sacrifice* her own interests *to recompense* those of others. One thing useful *to acquire* is to know how *to live* contented with the situation (in which) we have been placed by Divine Providence.

— —

4. After the verbs, *accoutumer, admettre, aider, aimer, apprendre, apprêter, astreindre, autoriser, borner, chercher, commencer, condamner, consister, contribuer, dépenser, destiner, disposer, donner, employer, encourager, engager, enharhar, enseigner, exercer, exciter, exhorter, habituer, hésiter, inviter, montrer, parvenir, persister, porter, préparer, pousser, réduire, renoncer, réussir, servir, songer, soumettre, tendre, viser*, and some others mentioned in the list of verbs at the end of the grammar, which govern the next verb in the infinitive with *à*. Examples :

I learn *to dance*. He likes *to play* at cards.  
*J'apprends à danser.* *il aime à jouer aux cartes.*

True wisdom consists *in knowing* one's duty exactly, true eloquence *in speaking* of it clearly, and true piety *in doing* what we know to be good. Love *to help* the unfortunate, and *to comfort* the afflicted. A good education teaches us *to behave* well *to every body*. The latter part of a wise man's life is (taken up) *in curing* the false opinions and prejudices which he had contracted in the former.

— — — — —

**RULE 137.**—*Infinitive with de or à.\**

1. *Manquer* governs the infinitive with *a* when it is affirmatively used, and with *de* when negatively. Examples :

**The unfortunate never fail to complain.**

*Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre.*

**I have failed *to* do what I had promised you.**

*J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avais promis.*

2. *Tâcher* governs the infinitive with *de* when it means *to endeavour* ; and with *à* when it means *to aim at*. Examples :

I will endeavour to satisfy you.

*Je tâcherai de vous satisfaire.*

He aims at doing me a prejudice.

*Il tâche à me porter préjudice.*

3. *Tarder* governs the infinitive with *à* when it signifies *to delay*, and with *de* when it is used impersonally to signify *to long*. Examples :

He is long before he comes. I long to see him.

*Il tarde bien à venir. il me tarde de le voir.*

4. *Venir* governs the infinitive mood without a preposition, when it signifies *to come*: as, *venez me voir*, come and see me: with *de*, when it signifies a thing just done: as, *il vient de sortir*, he is just gone out; and with *à*, when it signifies *to happen*: as, *s'il vient à pleuvoir*, *vous serez mouillé*, if it happens to rain, you will be wet.

1. I will not fail to punish you, if you neglect to do your  
*manquer punir 51 manquer*  
 exercise.—2. You ought to endeavour to learn your  
*thème devoir E 134 apprendre*  
 lessons better. That man aims at nothing but running those  
*leçon mieux 172 \* 128 ruiner 76*  
 who trust to him.—3. I long to see your mother; she  
*se fier 49 il me tarde voir*  
 delays long in coming.—4. Come and see us to-morrow.  
*tarder longtemps à venir venir \* 57*  
 Is your father at home?—4. No, he is just (gone out). As  
*92 \* père chez lui venir sortir*

\*. *The following, commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, and obliger, govern the infinitive with de, rather than à, when there is nothing vague in the use of the infinitive.*

religion obliges us to love princes, so princes are obliged to  
 f obliger 57 à aimer ainsi  
 protect us.  
 protéger

RULE 138.—*Infinitive with pour.*

☞ We use the preposition *pour* before the present of the infinitive, when we want to express the end, the design, or the cause for which a thing is done; and, in general, every time that the preposition *to* can be changed into *in order to*, without altering the sense. Example:

I am come to see you.

*Je suis venu pour vous voir.*

I will do every thing to oblige you.

*Je ferai tout pour vous obliger.*

He who tells a lie, (is not sensible) how great  
 faire (ir) mensonge ni ne savoir (ir) pas quelle \*  
 a task he undertakes; for he may be forced to  
 \* tâche f entreprendre (ir) pouvoir (ir) forcer d'en  
 invent twenty more to maintain that one. It is necessary to  
 inventer autres soutenir le premier 135

know the human heart, to judge well of others. God has  
 connaître 31 juger 172 des autres

not given us a heart to hate one another. He who has a  
 57 nous haïr 114 pl 77 une

good estate, and makes use of it to promote the glory of  
 belle fortune f qui usage en 57 procurer

God, and to help those who are in need, is beloved by  
 soulager 77 dans le besoin aimer de

every body. Palamedes invented the game of chess, to  
 tout le monde — 14 inventer c jeu échecs

serve for diversion to his soldiers, and to teach them  
 servir d'amusement soldats apprendre 52

the stratagems of war.

*stratagème 4 guerre*

RULE 139.—*Infinitive instead of the Gerund.*

☞ We never put a gerund in French after any other preposition than *en*. Thus we put the present of the infinitive

\* *Pour* is also used after the words *assez*, *trop*, *suffisant*, and the verb *suffire*

after the prepositions *de, à, pour, après, sans, par*, and every other.

You cannot go there, *without* disobeying your father.

*Vous ne pouvez y aller, sans désobéir à votre père*

I must begin *by* saying my lessons.

*Il faut que je commence par réciter mes leçons.*

After *having* terminated some affairs at home, I shall

—ner 104 *chez moi*

begin by *paying* some visits; and after *having* dined

*commencer rendre 104 —le*

with a friend of mine, I will spend the evening with you.

70 *passer soirée*

Nobody can be happy, without *practising* virtue. We

116 *pratiquer*

should never undertake (any thing) before *having* con-

devoir F 120 *entreprendre rien avant de*

sulted the will of God, and implored his divine assistance.

—ter volonté —rer 31 —

If Titus passed one day without *doing* good to (anybody).

*passer B bien 7 quelqu'un*

he used to say, I have lost that day.

*avoir B coutume 135 perdre journée*

### RECAPITULATOR'S EXERCISE upon the INFINITIVE with *de, à, pour, sans, &c.*

Youth cannot forbear gaming. All men are liable

*les jeunes gens 134 s'empêcher 135 jouer sujet*

to mistake. Men are born to labour as birds

132 *se tromper naître (ir) 138 travailler oiseau*

to fly. There are persons whom we hate, others whom

138 *voler Il y a personne 7 que haïr d'autres*

we love, without knowing why; the one is injustice, the

*aimer 139 savoir une —f*

other a weakness. The desire of deserving the praises which

*faiblesse désir 135 mériter louange*

are given us strengthens our virtue. Giddy minds begin

98 *donner 57 fortifier légers 31 esprits*

many things, without ever finishing any.

*plusieurs 139 en finit aucune*

There are two sorts of curiosity; the one of interest

*il y a sorte f 16 —tés intérêt*

which incites us to desire to learn what can be useful

*porter 136 désirer d'apprendre 74 utile*



to us; the other of pride, which proceeds from the desire  
 57 *orgueil* *venir* *désir* 139  
 of knowing what others are ignorant of. The greatest  
*savoir* 74 \* *ignorent* \*  
 wisdom of a man consists in knowing his own follies, and in  
*sagesse* *ter* 136 *connaître* *folie*  
 taking measures to (make amends) for them.  
*prendre* 7 *mesure* 138 *réparer* \* *les* 57.

Life is given us to glorify God, and to save our souls,  
 138 *—ficr* 138 *sauver* *âme*  
 by good actions. In general, young men are more fond  
 8 — *les jeunes gens* \* 172 *aimer*  
 of hearing strange things, than ready to believe  
 136 *entendre étrange* 31 7 *qu'ils ne sont prompts* 136 *croire*  
 them. Death is an eternal decree, to which all men ought  
 57 *éternel* 31 *décret* 81 *devoir* A  
 to submit. Men often think of death when it is too  
 134 *se soumettre* , 172 *penser* 130 *trop*  
 late; and begin to study how to live, when they  
*tard* , *commencer* 136 *apprendre* \* 136 *vivre quand*  
 should learn how to die.  
*devoir* E *apprendre* \* 136 *mourir*.

People are often afraid of seeing themselves such as  
*on* \* 172 *craindre* 137 *voir* *se* 57 *tel qu'*  
 they are, because they are not what they should be. No-  
*on* *parce qu'on* 74 *on* *devoir* E  
 body (is able) to write well, who has not learnt to  
 116 *pouvoir* 134 *écrire* 172 *s'il* *apprendre* 136  
 think well, to arrange his thoughts methodically, and to  
*penser* 136 *—ger* *idée* \* *avec méthode* 136  
 express them with propriety. To be a Christian, is to  
*exprimer* 57 *—été* 134 \* *Chrétien* *c'est* \*  
 follow the precepts delivered by Jesus Christ, to love what  
*suivre* *précepte* *donné* *Jésus* — \* *aimer* 74  
 he loved, and to condemn what he condemned.  
 B \* *condamner* 74 B

## OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

RULE 140.— *Participle pres. invariable.*

☞ When a word ending in *ing*, coming from verbs, pre-  
 cedes the substantive in English, it goes after it in French,  
 and is always declinable like an adjective. Examples :

A • convincing proof.  
*Une preuve convainquante.*

Charming girls.  
*Des filles charmantes.*

2. When a word ending in *ing*, coming from verbs, goes after the substantive in English, it is a part. pres., and invariable in French. Example:

A proof convincing every body.

*Une preuve convainquant tout le monde* — not *convainquante*.

This distinction is an invariable rule by which one may easily know when a part. pres. is declinable or invariable. It qualifies in the first case as an adjective; and in the second it denotes an action as a verb.

1. The loadstone has *surprising* effects. — 1. Your sister  
*aimant* *surprenant* *effet*  
 is a *charming* girl. — 2. The soldiers of Alexander, *forgetting*  
*charmant* *oublier*  
 their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold  
*regarder* *B* \* *de la Perse* 31 or  
 as their plunder. — 1. *Lowing* oxen, and *bleating* sheep,  
*butin* *mugissant* *bœufs* *bélant* *brebis* pl f  
 came in flocks; they could not find stables enough to  
*B* *fouler* *on* *B* *trouver* *étable* 18 138  
 shelter them.  
*mettre à couvert* 57

2. The Asiatics, remembering the dignity of Berenice,  
*—tigue se souvenir* 129 *Béré* —  
 and pitying her hard fortune, sent her aid. — 1.  
*avoir pitié* 139 *mauvais* — *envoyer* c 52 *secours* 7  
 As on the margin of a brook a zephyr, with a cooling  
*comme* *bord* *ruisseau* *rafraichissant*  
 breeze, revives the languishing flocks, which the burning  
*haleine* f *ranimer* *languissant* *troupeau* *brûlant*  
 heat of the summer consumes, so this speech allayed  
*chaleur* *été* — *met* *ainsi* *discours* *apaiser* 2  
 the goddess's despair.  
*déesse* 17 *désespoir*

ROLE 141. — Indicative used instead of the Part. pres.

When the verbal noun in *ing* refers to a substantive or a pronoun which is not in the nominative case, it must be rendered in French by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, with the relative pronoun *qui* before it. Example:

I have seen my brother playing in the garden.  
*J'ai vu mon frère qui jouait dans le jardin.*  
 not, *j'ai vu mon frère jouant.*

Clouds and fogs (are formed) from the vapours arising  
*nuage brouillard se former vapeur s'élever A*  
 from the earth. Variety of colours depends on the position  
*—été 4-couleur dépendre de —*  
 and order of the objects diversifying the light in the reflection  
*ordre objet diversifier A lumière réflexion*  
 of their rays. Alexander, at the point of death, asked his  
*rayon sur — mourir 133*  
 friends standing about him if they thought they could  
*se tenir B auprès de croire (ir) B 83 • G •*  
 find a king like him. Men act most frequently from motives  
*comme 49 agir souvent par motif 7*  
 arising from present circumstances.  
*venir A 31 circonstance*

RULE 142.—by expressed by *en*.

The preposition, *by*, followed by the verbal noun ending in *ing*, is most commonly expressed in French by *en* with the gerund. Example :

We have obtained peace *by* making great sacrifices.  
*Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices—*  
 not, *par faisant de grands sacrifices.*

*By* (taking revenge), a man is but equal with his enemy;  
*se venger 128 égal à ennemi*  
*by* passing it over, he is his superior. You may easily  
*pardonner lui \* lui \* supérieur*  
 get praise, *by* complying (with the) wishes of the  
*obtenir louanges 7 vous conformer aux désir*  
 people you converse with, and *by* preferring others to  
*personne 83 —ser 174 préférer*  
 yourself. If you have rashly engaged to do a  
*imprudemment s'engager à*  
 thing which ought not to be done, do not make  
*devoir A se faire \* rendre H le*  
 bad, worse *by* persisting to do it. The grace of  
*mal plus grand —ter 136 la 57*  
 God works upon us, *by* suggesting good thoughts and keeping  
*opérer en suggérer • 8 pensée 177 éloigner*  
 off bad ones.  
*\* les mauvaises \**

## OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

RULE 143.— Cases in which the Participle past is declinable.

1. A part. past is always declinable in French as an adjective, when it comes after a substantive which it qualifies. Examples :

A book well written.

Un livre bien écrit.

A letter well written.

Une lettre bien écrite.

2. When it comes after any tense of the verb *être*, not holding the place of *avoir*, or after *paraître* or *sembler*. Examples :

My brother is esteemed.

Mon frère est estimé.

My sister is esteemed.

Ma sœur est estimée.

He appears afflicted.

Il paraît affligé.

She seems afflicted.

Elle semble affligée.

3. In the compound tenses of reflected verbs, when the second pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, are in the accusative, which is always the case when the reflected verb is not followed by another accusative. So we must say,

She has wounded herself; *elle s'est blessée* ;  
because *se* is in the accusative: but we should say,

She has wounded her foot; *elle s'est blessé le pied* ;  
because *se* is in the dative, and stands for *à elle-même*.

4. In compound tenses with *avoir* and *être*, when the accusative governed by that tense goes before the auxiliary, the participle must agree with it in gender and number. Examples :

The woman I have seen is very handsome.

La femme que j'ai vue est très-belle.

The rules which I have learnt are easy.

Les règles que j'ai apprises sont faciles.

The part. past *vue* agrees with *femme*, and *apprises* with *règles*; because if you ask me, whom have I seen? my answer will be a handsome woman; what have I learnt? — easy rules.

2. He has arrived from France. She has arrived from Spain.  
*être arriver* *Espagne*

—1. A noble, but confused thought, is a diamond covered  
31 *confus* *pensée* *diamant* *couvrir*

with dust.—1. Alms given without ostentation acquire  
*de poussière aumône f* — *acquérir (ir)*  
 new merit.—2. Letters and writings have been invented to  
*in mérite m f* *écriture* *inventer* 138  
 speak to the eye.—2. The wicked are always tormented by  
*pl* *méchans* *tourmenter*  
 their own conscience.—2. Virtuous people are esteemed, and  
 — *vertueux personne f* *estimer*  
 the impious despised.—3. My sisters (have been much amused)  
*impie m sont mépriser* 172 *s'amuser*  
 in your company.—3. The accounts (have not been  
*dans* — *guie* *compte m* *se*  
 found) right.—3. Both armies have fought with the greatest  
*trouver juste* *les deux armée se battre (ir)*  
 intrepidity.—4. The letter which I have received is long.—4.  
*intrepidité* *lettre f* *recevoir* —  
 The faults he has committed are pardonable.—4. The house  
*faute f* 83 *commettre (ir)* *pardonnable*  
 which I have bought is new.—4. The horses which you have  
*acheter* *neuf*  
 seen, are very good.—4. The women whom I have  
*vendre* 57  
 seen are young and handsome.

**RULE 144.**—Cases in which the Participle past is invariable.

1. The participle after the auxiliary is invariable when the accusative follows the compound tense; when the verb is impersonal, or in its nature can have no accusative case. Examples:

I have seen a handsome woman. I have learnt a rule.  
*J'ai vu une belle femme. J'ai appris une règle.*

There arose a dispute. The days that I have lived.  
*Il s'est élevé une dispute. Les jours que j'ai vécu.*

2. In applying the foregoing rules, we must discriminate between an accusative governed by the compound tense and one governed by a verb following the participle, as in this example:

The house which I advised you to buy.  
*La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter.*

The compound tense *ai conseillé* does not govern the preceding accusative *que*, but the verb *acheter* does; and the answer to *advised what?* is *you*, in the dative case, for *to you*; adding, to buy the said house.

These two rules, if well understood, will remove one of the greatest difficulties of the French language.

1. Happy the princes, who have always used their  
*heureux* *employer*  
 power for the good of their people. Demetrius being in-  
*pouvoir* *bien* *peuple* *pl* *in-*  
 formed that the Athenians had overthrown his statues; they  
*former* *B* *détruire* *statue*  
 have not, replied he, overthrown the valour which has  
*répliqua-t-il* *valeur*  
 caused them (to be erected) (to me). Your sisters have  
*fait* 57 *ériger* *me* 57  
 made great progress in French. We have dined to-day  
*faire* 8 *progrès dans le* *dîner*  
 sooner than usual. I have written a letter to my father.  
*plus tôt* *à l'ordinaire* *écrire*  
 We have played much to-day.  
*jouer*, 172

2. I must finish the letter which I have begun to write  
*il faut que* 157 *lettre* *f* *commencer*  
 The rules which I had advised you to learn are useful. —  
*conseiller* 135 *apprendre* *utile*  
 (How many) men commit the same faults which they  
*que d'hommes commettre* (*ir*) *faute* *f*  
 had resolved to avoid.  
*B résoudre* (*ir*) *d'éviter*

# RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the PARTICIPLES PRESENT and PAST.

Philip sent deputies to the Scythians desiring a  
*Philippe envoyer c député* 7 *Scythe pour demander*  
 part of the expenses of the siege; the Scythians, alleging  
*partie* *frais* *—m* *alléguer* 140  
 the barrenness of their land, replied, that having no riches  
*stérilité* *terre répondre c* *richesse*  
 sufficient to satisfy so great a king, they thought it  
*—sant* 138 *—faire* *roi* *croire* (*ir*) *B* \*  
 more unfit to pay but a part, than to refuse the  
*moins* *convenable de payer* 128 *partie* 40 *—ser*  
 whole. Groveling geniuses never attain the sublime.  
*105* *rampant* 140 *génie* 120 *s'élever* *a* • —  
 This actor performs with charming taste and  
*acteur représenter* *un* 27 *charmant* 140 *gout*

lignity. As a flower blowing in the morning .  
 —té de même qu' fleur 141 s'épanouir matin répand  
 (sweetly perfumes) the fields around the whole day,  
 un doux parfum dans champ d'alentour jour  
 but fading towards the evening, loses its lively colour.,  
 140 se flétrir vers soir perdre rif 30 couleur  
 languishes and droops its beautiful head; so was the son of  
 languir pancher beau tête f ainsi B  
 Ulysses brought to the gates of death.  
 — arriver porte

All will respect the magistrates who, forgetting  
 tout le monde respecter A . magistrat 140 oublier  
 their own interest, observing the law, favouring virtue, and  
 —ver loi favoriser  
 restraining vice, seek the welfare of their country. The  
 réprimer m chercher bien pays  
 fleet destined to the siege of Troy was composed of 1300  
 flotte f —ner 143 — Troie B —ser 143  
 ships. The Cardinal Richelieu represented to the king  
 de représenter c roi  
 the great pains he had taken and the services he  
 peine f 83 B 143 prendre (ir) —m  
 had done to the state. The books which I have bought  
 B 143 rendre état livre m 143 acheter  
 are well bound. The watch which I have sold is a new  
 —relier montre f 143 vendre \* neuf  
 one. We acquire a greater honour by defending others  
 \* on acquérir (ir) honneur 142 défendre  
 than by accusing them.  
 accuser

## OF THE CONCORD OF VERBS.

RULE 115.—*The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case.*

All the personal verbs agree in French with their nominative case in number and person. Examples :

I speak, thou speakest, he speaks.  
*Jc parle, tu parles, il parle, &c.*

All substantives are of the third person; thus a verb must always be put in the third person singular or plural, when it has a substantive for its nominative case. Examples :

The master teaches. The scholars study.  
*Le maître enseigne—singular. Les écoliers étudient—plural.*

A verb is always put in the third person plural when it applies to two or more substantives in the nominative case, though they should be both in the singular. Example

Demosthenes and Cicero were two great orators.  
*Démosthène et Cicéron étaient deux grands orateurs.*

I read the Bible. Thou speakest too fast. He writes  
*lire (ir) Bible trop vite écrire (ir)*  
 well. We are all mortal. You are young. They are happy.  
*mortel jeune heureux*  
 My brother and sister will dance. Virtue and vice have dif-  
*63 danser m*  
 ferent consequences.  
 31 *effet 7*

RULE 146.—*The Verb with Nominatives of different Persons.*

If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first, in preference to the other two, and with the second, in preference to the third; and is preceded by one of these two pronouns, *nous* and *vous*. Examples:

My brother and I shall go thither.  
*Mon frère et moi nous \*irons.*  
 You and he were speaking of us.  
*Vous et lui vous parliez de moi.*

as if it were, *my brother and I we shall go there*; and so on for others.

You and I will play. You and they were of the same  
*jouer eux B*  
 opinion. You or your father could lend me the two hun-  
*père 165 E prêter*  
 dred pounds I want. You or your brother have  
*cent livre dont j'ai besoin*  
 taken my book. Lewis the fourteenth having said  
*prendre (ir) livre m Louis 11*  
 the earl of Grammont; I know your age, the bishop  
*comte savoir (ir) évêque*  
 of Senlis, who is eighty-four years of age, told me that  
*avoir \* \* 153*  
 you have studied in the same class; that bishop, Sire, re-  
*studier ré-*

\* y is always omitted before *irai*, *irais*, on account of the cacophony.



plied the earl, does not speak right, for neither he nor I  
*pliquer* 150 *accuser juste* ni 119 45  
 have ever studied.

**RULE 147.**—*The Verb after the relative Pronoun qui.*

The relative pronoun *qui* is of every person: thus, the verb which comes after it agrees in number and person with the noun or pronoun antecedent. Example:

It is we who have said it.

*C'est nous qui l'avons dit*—not, *c'est nous qui l'a dit*.

It was I who destroyed the fortifications of that city. It  
*ce C détruire — ville ce*  
 was you who refused my request. It is you, or your  
*C —ser C requête f, ce*  
 brother who have taken my book. It was you who  
 146 *prendre (ir) livre ce C*  
 came last night. It is they who have done it. It is I  
*venir hier, qu soir 171 faire le 57 ce*  
 who have seen him. It is my brothers who have dis-  
*voir (ir) le 171 do.*  
 covered the plot. It will be you who shall go there.  
*couvrir complot aller*

## CHAPTER XV.

### OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. This mood comprehends the present tense, the imperfect, the preterite, the future, and the conditional, with the same number of compound tenses.

**RULE 148.**—*Use of the Present Tense.*

1. The present tense of the indicative mood is used in French to express a thing present. Example:

see a man who sleeps.  
*Je vois un homme qui dort.*

2. A thing which we do habitually, though not in the moment in which we speak. Example:

I walk every day.  
*Je me promène tous les jours.*

## 3. A thing of eternal truth. Example :

God<sup>s</sup> is merciful.  
*Dieu est miséricordieux.*

## 4. A future not distant. Example :

I go to-night to the play.  
*Je vais ce soir à la comédie.*

History is the picture of times and men, and consequently the image of inconstancy and caprice. The rainbow (is formed) by the beams of the sun reflected by drops of rain. I (set out) for France to-morrow, if it be fine weather. I learn French, and my sister Italian. I go to-night to the opera. God is immutable. I (set out) to-morrow for Paris.

*histoire tableau temps 21 consé-*  
*quemment —ce —m arc-*  
*en-ciel se former de rayon soleil réfléchir 143*  
*goutte de pluie • partir 5 demain*  
*faire (ir) • temps apprendre (ir)*  
*Italian ce soir immuable*

RULE 149.—*Imperfect of the Indicative.*

1. The *imperfect* is used to express a past but habitual action, during a time not specified, and then it answers to the English expression *I used to do*. Example :

Cæsar was a great general.  
*César était un grand général.*

2. The *imperfect* expresses also a present with respect to something past, and then it exactly answers to the English expression *I was doing*. Example :

I was dining when I heard that sad news.  
*Je dinais quand j'appris cette fâcheuse nouvelle.*  
 not, j'étais dînant, nor je dinai quand, &c.

1. Orpheus, according to the fable, mingled so agreeably his voice with his lute, that he stopped the course of rivers, calmed tempests, attracted the most savage beasts, and (gave motion) to the trees and rocks.—2. I was writing you a letter when I was informed of your arrival.—2. What

*Orphée selon \* —f mêler agréablement*  
*voix à luth arrêter • cours rivière*  
*calmer tempête attirer • 44 sauvage bête f*  
*émouvoir (ir) • • arbre rocher 21 écrire*  
 57 c —mer arrivée que

were you doing this morning in my room when I found  
*faire ce matin chambre f y ai trouvé*  
 you.—2. I was doing my exercise.  
*thème m*

1. Alfred was a great king; he possessed all the virtues of  
*roi posséder*  
 a wise man, which were so well regulated, that each prevented  
*sage 81 si réglé l'une empêcher*  
 the other from exceeding its proper bounds; he knew  
*sortir de borne savoir (ir)*  
 how to unite the most enterprising spirit with the coolest  
*\* \* unir 44 entreprenant 31 esprit à plus grande*  
 moderation, and the most severe justice with the greatest  
*31 — f à*  
 lenity. The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high  
*douceur mur 36*  
 and fifty broad.

RULE 150.—*Preterite of the Indicative.*

☞ The *preterite* of the indicative is used to express a particular fact or event, happening but once or very seldom in a time quite past, and at the distance of at least a day. Examples :

My father died yesterday. I saw the king last year.  
*Mon père mourut hier. L'année passée je vis le roi.*  
 not, *mon père mourait hier* ; nor, *je voyais le roi l'année passée.*

This tense is by some grammarians called the *historical tense*, because it is chiefly used in historical relations.

Cæsar ascended to the empire by very sanguinary means,  
*parvenir m 31 — naître roic 7*  
 Alexander, with forty thousand men, attacked Darius who  
*Alexandre attaquer*

had six hundred thousand; he gave him battle twice,  
*en 149 livrer lui 57 bataille deux*

defeated him, and made his mother, wife, and daughters  
*fois défaire de 57 faire 63 femme*  
 prisoners. Cato killed himself lest he should fall into the  
*prisonnières tuer se 57 de peur de \* tomber entre*  
 hands of Cæsar.  
*main César*

Hardly was Cæsar entered into the senate, when the con-  
*à peine 92 entrer sénat que*  
 spirators threw themselves upon him, and pierced him  
*— leur jeter se 57 \* lui percer le 57*

with daggers. Marius *was* (ill treated) by fortune; however,  
*de coups de poignards maltraiter de — f cependant*  
 he did not *lose* his courage.  
*perdre*

RULE 151.— *Future and Conditional.*

1. The *future* is used to express a time not yet come.  
 Example:

I shall soon go to France.  
*J'irai bientôt en France.*

2. The *conditional* is used to express something to be done or to take place with dependence upon a condition. Example:

We should be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires.  
*Nous serions heureux, si nous savions fixer nos desirs.*

3. The English often put the verb in the *present*, after the conjunctions *when, as soon as, or after*, when they want to express a thing not yet come; in such cases, the *future* must be used in French. Example:

I will play as soon as I have finished my exercise.  
*Je jouerai aussi-tôt que j'aurai fini mon thème.*  
 not, *aussi-tôt que j'ai fini.*

3. As soon as my education is finished, I shall go to Italy, to visit the Roman antiquities.— 3. When you are ready, we will go and (take a walk).— 3. The Lord said unto Cain, who had killed his brother Abel: When thou tillest the ground, it shall not yield unto thee; a fugitive labourer thou shalt be on the earth.\*  
*Italie 138 voir Romain —té quand prêt aller \* nous promener Seigneur à Caïn . B tuer . frère —ti*  
*sur terre.*

1. There will always be wars among men, as long as they are ambitious.— 2. I would have lent him fifty pounds if I had known he wanted it.— 1. I hope you will not refuse me the favour I beg of you.  
*169 7 entre tant que 3 —tueux prêter cinquante livre G savoir qu'il en avait besoin espérer —ser . faveeur 83 demander \**

\* That is, thou shalt be fugitive, &c.

**RULE 152.**—*Neither future nor conditional after si.*

1. After the particle *si*, if, we use in French the present of the indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the preterite or conditional used in English. Example:

He will become a learned man, if he will study.  
*Il deviendra savant s'il étudie.*  
 not *s'il étudierait.*

2. We use, however, the future and conditional in French as in English, after the particle *si*, if, when it signifies *whether*. Example:

I do not know if he will come, or if he would come.  
*Je ne sais pas s'il viendra, ou s'il viendrait.*

1. If your person were as gigantic as your desires, the whole world could not contain you; your right hand would touch the east, and your left the west (at the) same time; and, if you should have conquered all mankind, you would attempt to subdue nature; said (the Scythian ambassador to Alexander).  
*personne 37 —lesquels désir 31*  
*entier monde contenir 31 droit f*  
*orient gauche occident en même temps*  
*conquérir (ir) la terre*  
*entreprendre (ir) 135 soumettre — l'ambassadeur*  
*des Scythes Alexandre*

2. I do not know if my father would come, if you were to invite him.—1. If I would sell my horse, I could have forty pounds for him.—1. If you would study well, your master would love you, and you would make great progress.—1. I should become rich, if I would continue my trade.—2. I do not know if my brother will consent to it.  
*savoir (ir) venir en cas*  
*que vous l'invitassiez vendre cheval*  
*pouvoir (ir) 8 livre en 57*  
*étudier aimer*  
*faire (ir) progrès 8 devenir riche*  
*continuer mon commerce m*  
*—tir. y*

RULE 153.—*Compound of the Present.*

The *compound of the present*, or *preterite indefinite*, is used in French to express a thing past in a period not yet elapsed, or at a time which is not specified. A period is not yet elapsed when the word *this* is or could be prefixed to it. Example:

I learnt my lesson this morning.

*J'ai appris ma leçon ce matin.*

not *j'appris*, nor *j'apprenais*.

I breakfasted this morning at eight o'clock, and I dined  
*déjeûner matin huit heures dîner*  
 at three in the afternoon. When did you learn your  
*heures après-midi avoir apprendre (ir)*  
 lesson? I learnt it after dinner. Why did you not learn it  
*leçon 143 143 la*  
 before? because I was sick all the morning. Have you  
*auparavant parce que malade matinée*  
 done your exercise? No, I have not done it yet; but I will  
*thème encore 172*  
 do it to-night. Where did you walk out to-day?  
*ce soir où se promener \* aujourd'hui ?*  
 I have not walked out because it was not fine weather.  
*\* parce que 179 B beau temps*

RULE 154.—*Other Compound Tenses.*

1. The *compound of the imperfect* or *pluperfect* is used to express a thing which has happened before another which is also past; but it is employed when the previous action was habitual, or when nothing points out the approximation of the two actions. Example:

I had done my task, when she came to see us.

*J'avais fait ma tâche, quand elle vint nous voir.*

2. The *compound of the preterite* or *preterite anterior* is used to express an action past before another action in a time entirely elapsed, but it points out the end or the approximation of the two actions. Example:

As soon as the king had spoken, every body obeyed.

*Aussi-tôt que le roi eut parlé, tout le monde obéit.*

1. Yesterday I had finished my work before six o'clock.  
*ouvrage. heure*

2. As soon as I had dined, I (went out). He had no sooner  
*dès que sortir 150*

acted in that manner than he repented. When, *he had*  
*aggr de la sorte s'en repentir* 150  
 perceived her error, she was quite ashamed.—1. Darius  
*s'apercevoir de* 150 108 *honteux*  
 in his defeat being obliged to drink water full of mud;  
*défaite f —ge de boire 7 plein boue*  
 assured his soldiers that he had never drunk with more  
*assurer* 150 *dat. soldat plus*  
 pleasure. The king had named an admiral whom he  
*18 plaisir nommer amiral on lui*  
 heard of you.—2. As soon as the parliament had voted  
*parler c aussi-tôt que parlement voter*  
 against the continuation of the war, the peace was made.  
*contre — guerre paix se faire c*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the TENSES  
 of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

William the Conqueror was one of the greatest generals  
*Guillaume Conquérant* 149  
 of his age; in him (were united) activity, vigilance, and  
*siècle m en s'unir* 149 —*té* 9 —  
 intrepidity; he was strict in his discipline, and kept his  
*—té* 149 *strict lu —f tenir* 119  
 soldiers in perfect obedience, yet he preserved their af-  
*dans un parfait obéissance* *conserver* 150  
 fection: he (was perfect master of) the military art; his  
*— 149 posséder à fond militaire* 31 —  
 aspect was noble, his constitution robust, and nobody but  
*— 149 — — —te personne que*  
 himself could bend his bow.  
*lui ne pouvoir (ir) bander arc*

Idomeneus, one of the bravest kings of the Greeks, on  
*Idoménée* 31 *roi Grec sur*  
 the point of being shipwrecked, made a vow to sacrifice  
*— 135 faire naufrage* 150 \* *vœu* 135 *sacrifice*  
 to Neptune, the first object he should meet on his arrival in  
*— objet rencontrer à arrivée*  
 his country, should he escape the present danger; he  
*pays si* 152 *échapper au* 31 —  
 was unhappy enough to meet with his own son; he  
*assez malheureux* 138 *rencontrer \**  
 killed him, and was for that action obliged to quit his  
*150 le pour de quitter*  
 country.  
*pays*

Cæsar and Cato had the same degree of glory, but  
*Cæsar Caton 149 degré gloire*  
 they acquired it by different ways; Cæsar was celebrated for  
*acquérir 154 • 31 • 7 voic 149 célèbre par*  
 his generosity, Cato for his great integrity; in the former, the  
*générosité • intégrité premier*  
 miserable found a sanctuary, in the latter the guilty  
*trouver 149 refuge in dernier coupable*  
 met with certain destruction: Cæsar aimed at the so-  
*trouver 149 \* un 31 — aspirer 149*  
 vereign command, and desired new wars to display  
*30 commandement 149 nouveau guerre 138 déployer*  
 his military talents; as for Cato, his only study was  
*31 — quant à seul étude f 149*  
 moderation, a regular conduct, and a rigorous severity;  
*— régulier 31 conduite f rigoureux 31 •*  
 he contended in bravery with the brave, in modesty with  
*rivaliser 149 en bravoure • — modestie*  
 the modest, and in integrity with the upright.  
*homme — • juste*

After Alexander had conquered Porus, he not only  
*après que 154 vaincre (ir) non-seulement*  
 spared his life, but allowed him to retain his  
*épargner 150 vie permettre (ir) lui 57 135 garder*  
 title of king, and enlarged his dominions. As soon as  
*titre m roi agrandir 150 état aussi-tôt que*  
 the Israelites had passed the Red Sea they forgot the  
*154 passer Rouge 31 Mer oublier 150*  
 miracle that had saved them.  
*— m sauver 143 les 57 •*

## CHAPTER XVI.

### OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

RULE 155.—*Superlatives and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive.*

1. The superlative governs the next verb in the subjunctive, when that verb is preceded by *qui* or *que*, and no genitive case. Example:

He is the most learned man I know in London.  
*Il est le plus savant que je connaisse à Londres.*



2. *Qui* or *que* after the indeterminate pronouns *quelque*, whatever or however; *qui que ce soit*, whosoever; *aucun*, none; *pas un*, not one; *personne*, nobody; *rien*, nothing, govern the next verb in the subjunctive. Example:

There is no one who does it more easily than they.

*Il n'y a personne qui le fasse plus aisément qu'eux.*

3. *Qui* or *que* after the words *l'unique*, *le seul*, the only one, and also generally after the ordinal numbers *le premier*, the first; *le second*, the second; *le troisième*, the third, &c. govern the next verb in the subjunctive. Examples:

There is the only one I have.

*Voilà l'unique, or le seul que j'ai.*

It is the first time he has been mistaken.

*C'est la première fois qu'il se soit trompé.*

1. Homer, who invented the fables of gods and demi-  
 gods, is the most agreeable liar that ever was. The  
 most just comparison that can be made of love  
 is that of a fever; we have no more power over the one,  
 than over the other, on account of its violence and duration.

2. There is no man but would be very sorry, if he  
 knew all that is thought of him, whatever merit  
 he might have. However ingenious the Greeks and Romans  
 were, yet they neither found out the art of printing books,  
 nor of engraving prints.

3. You are the first person I have seen to-day.  
 3. Lucretius and Pliny are the only (natural philosophers)  
 whom the Romans had.

RULE 156.—*Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood, after the Conjunction que.*

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is put in the subjunctive after the verbs which express any doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of the mind; and particularly after the following, *appréhender, avoir peur, craindre, défendre, désirer, douter, être bien aise, être content, être fâché, être surpris, ignorer, nier, ordonner, prier, se réjouir, souhaiter, and vouloir.* Examples :

I will be obeyed. I doubt whether he will come.  
*Je veux qu'on m'obéisse. Je doute qu'il vienne.*

Who doubts that true riches (are placed) in virtue?  
*douter 30 richesse ne consister 162 dans.*

The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants and animals  
*Egyptien 149 27 plante f*

were divinities. In the mean time Eucharis said to Te-  
*ne 162 divinité 7 En \* temps — 150 Té-*  
lemachus, in a jeering tone: Are you not afraid that  
*lémaque d' moqueur 31 ton craindre*

Mentor will chide you for coming a hunting without  
*— ne gronder 57 de venir à la chasse sans*

him? Almost all the East ordered divine honours to be  
*presque Orient 150 que 31 7 honneur 162*

rendered, and temples to be built to Jason; but many  
*rendre que 7 — bâtir à — mais*

years after, Parmenio ordered them (to be pulled down),  
*Parménion faire 150 les abattre 134*

lest the name of (any one) should be greater than  
*de peur que 158 nom quelqu'un ne*  
that of Alexander.

76 *Alexandre*

RULE 157.—*Impersonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb preceded by *que* is always put in the subjunctive after the impersonals, *il faut, il est juste, il est injuste, il est fâcheux, il importe*, and in general after all the impersonal verbs, not mentioned in rule 160. Example:

You must do it.  
*Il faut que vous le fassiez.*

It is an unjust thing, that those who deserve well of their  
*\* injuste mériter*  
country are not rewarded. It concerns the public that the  
*pays 162 récompenser 143 importe du*

wicked be punished. There is no state which *pourrait*  
*méchans* *puir* 169 *état* *ne pouvoir* (ir)  
 be utterly overthrown by civil wars. It (is enough) that  
*totalemt détruire* *guerre* *suffire*  
 we do not neglect any thing that can contribute to  
 98 *négliger rien de ce qui pouvoir* (ir) — *buer*  
 the success of an undertaking; disappointments ought not  
*succès* *entreprise* *les* *contre-temps* *devoir* A 134  
 to lessen the merit of it. If you (are desirous) of being  
*diminuer* *mérite en* 57 *vouloir* (ir) 134  
 esteemed, you must be obliging, polite, and affable to  
*estimer* *il faut que vous* — *geant poli* — 34  
 every body.  
*tout le monde*

RULE 158.—*Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.*

A verb is always put in the subjunctive after the following conjunctions, *àin que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *bien que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *en cas que*, *encore que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *loin que*, *malgré que*, *nonobstant que*, *non que*, *non pas que*, *pourvu que*, *pour que*, *quoique*, *sans que*, *soit que*, and *supposé que*. Example:

I shall be ready before they arrive.  
*Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient venus.*

(Keep a strict watch) over all your senses, lest \*  
*veillez avec soin* *sur* *sens* *de peur que*  
 intemperance (get the master of) you, and lest your senses be  
 — *maîtriser* *vous* 57. *que* *ser-*  
 the instruments of polluting your soul. Although Antio-  
*vir d'* — *pour souiller* *âme* *quoique*  
 chus approved of Hannibal's advice, yet he would  
 — *approuver* \* *Annibal* 17 *avis* *vouloir* (ir) 8  
 not act according to it, lest the victory should be  
*agir en conséquence de peur que* *victoire*  
 attributed to Hannibal, not to him.  
*et non pas à lui*

We despise the world when we know it thoroughly,  
*mépriser* *monde in* *connaître* *parfaitement*  
 but we give ourselves to it before we know it, and the  
*livrer* *nous* *y* 58 *avant que* *le*

---

\* *A moins que*, *de crainte que*, and *de peur que*, require the particle *ne* before the next verb, as we have said before. Rule 127.

heart is lost, before reason has enlightened it. You  
*cœur perdre avant que raison* 162 *éclairer* le 57  
 will learn very well, provided you take pains.  
*apprendre pourvu que prendre de la peine*  
 with study (so much), that I hope I shall speak French.  
*étudier tant espérer Français*  
 before it is long, though I am convinced that it is  
*longtemps quoique convaincre (ir)* ce  
 a difficult language.  
*difficile* 31 *langue* f

VERBS and CONJUNCTIONS which govern sometimes the  
 INDICATIVE and sometimes the SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 159.—Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one sense,  
 and the Indicative in another.

The following verbs, *assurer, avouer, conclure, croire, déclarer, dire, espérer, juger, oublier, penser, prêter, prévoir, promettre, soutenir, savoir, supposer, voir*, and in general all those which express belief or certainty, govern most commonly the subjunctive, when they are used interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally; but they govern the indicative in other circumstances. Examples :

- I think she will do it, if she can.

*Je crois qu'elle le fera, si elle peut*—*affirmat. indic.*

*Croyez-vous qu'elle le fasse?*—*interrog. subj.*

*Je ne crois pas qu'elle le fasse*—*negativ. subj.*

*Si vous croyez, qu'elle le fasse*—*condit. subj.*

I think my father will come. I do not think he will  
*croire (ir)* *venir*

come. Do you think he will come? I perceive that you have  
*s'apercevoir*

deceived me. If I find you frequent bad company,  
*trouver s'apercevoir* 83 *fréquenter* 8 —*gnie*

you will lose my friendship. I hope they will make  
*perdre amitié espérer on faire*

peace this year. Do you hope they will make peace? Let us  
*paix année on*

go, if you think it will be fine weather. I thought this  
*partir* 179 *croire* 153

morning it would be fine weather, but now I do not think  
*matin à prés*

it is, because it begins to rain.

*cela être* 136

« RULE 160.—*Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The impersonal verbs with an adjective denoting evidence, certainty, or probability, such as, *il est clair, il est certain, il est probable, il est évident, &c.* govern the subjunctive when they are used in a negative, interrogative, or conditional manner, and the indicative, when they are not. Examples:

It is certain that he is in the wrong.

*Il est certain qu'il a tort*—indic.

*Il n'est pas certain qu'il ait tort*—subj.

*Est-il certain qu'il ait tort?*—subj.

*S'il est certain qu'il ait tort*—subj.

It is certain that unforeseen evils are more grievous than others. *impévu 31 mal fâcheux*  
 It is not certain that a man can be happy in a desert. *autre certain*  
 It is evident, that a nation cannot be happy under a tyrannical government. *désert*  
 It is not certain that a republic is the best government for a great nation. *sous*  
*—que gouvernement république*  
 It is probable he will do it. *f. meilleur*  
 It is probable she will do it. *—*  
 It is not probable they will do it.

RULE 161.—*Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

These four conjunctions, *de manière que, de sorte que, tellement que, sinon que*, govern the indicative, when the sentence positively affirms that such a thing is or will be; and the subjunctive, when the thing in question is not certain, but rather wished for. Examples:

I have nothing to tell you except that I do my duty.

*Je n'ai rien à vous dire sinon que je fais mon devoir*—indic.

I ask nothing except that you do your duty.

*Je ne demande rien sinon que vous fassiez votre devoir*—subj.

Employ all the days of your youth, so that you may fulfil honourably all the duties of your station. *employer H jeunesse de manière que*  
*remplir honorablement devoirs état*  
 Your conduct is such a manner that he gains general  
*se conduire de \* \* manière gagner 31*

esteem. I ask nothing from you except that you *estime f* *demandez* 118 \* *vous* 57 *sinon que*  
 your task, and obey your master. I have nothing  
*tâche f* *que vous obéir à.* rien  
 tell you, except that I have done, and shall always do  
*à* 57 *sinon que* *que je*  
 what religion commands all Christians.  
 74 *der à* *Chrétien*

RULE 162.—Which Tense must be used.

✎ A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules, is usually put in the *present*, when the time of its action is present or future; and in the *preterite*, when that time is past or only conjectural. Examples :

I do not think they will write to-day.  
*Je ne crois pas qu'ils écrivent aujourd'hui—future.*  
 I did not think they would write to your sister.  
*Je ne croyais pas qu'ils écrivissent à votre sœur—past:*

A man ought to conduct himself so honourably, that no  
*devoir A se conduire si* 121  
 motives should be able to induce him to an action un-  
*motif pouvoir (ir)* — in-  
 worthy of his rank. The apostles received the gift of  
*digne rang apôtre recevoir c don*  
 tongues, that they might preach the gospel to all  
*langue afin que pouvoir (ir) prêcher évangile*  
 the nations of the earth. If you are assiduous and  
 — *terre* — *du et que vous*  
 take pains, you will succeed. Before I form any  
 96 *de la peine réussir.* *avant que former*  
 plan, I shall wait till things have a more tranquil ap-  
 — *attendre que* 31 *ap-*  
 pearance. David (gave orders) that his subjects should be  
*parence — ordonner c qu'on sujet faire le*  
 numbered\*, which excited the displeasure of God.  
*dénombrement de ce qui —ter c déplaisir*  
 Do you think they will do it? Did you think they would do  
*penser* B  
 it? I did not think they would come to-day.  
 B

\* That is : that they should make the survey of his subjects.

RULE 163.—*Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.*

When it is meant to express an action past in a time anterior to the action expressed by the first verb, the second verb is usually put in the compound of the present of the subjunctive in French, when the first verb is in the present or the future in English; but it is put in the compound of the preterite, when the first verb is in any other tense. Examples.

I fear they have said it.

*Je crains qu'ils ne l'aient dit*—present tense.

I did not fear they had said it.

*Je ne craignais pas qu'ils l'eussent dit*—preterite.

I doubt whether any philosophers have ever known the  
*douter que* *s* *—phés* *jamais*  
 origin of the winds. I wonder you have refused the em-  
*—ne* *vent être surpris* *—ser*  
 ployment that has been offered you. I never could have  
*place* *143 offrir* *57* *pouvoir* *167*  
 thought that the Emperor would have submitted to such  
*penser* *Empereur* *se soumettre (ir)* *si*  
 hard conditions. Garrick was perhaps the best tragic  
*dur* *31* *—7* *peut-être* *tragique*  
 actor which the world has ever produced.  
*acteur* *153* *monde m* *produire*

RULE 164.—*Cases in which the Preterite of the Subjunctive is used.*

The second verb is always put in the preterite of the subjunctive, or its compound, when there is any conditional expression, though the first be in the present or future. Example:

I do not think they would have come, if I had not gone  
*Je ne crois pas qu'ils fussent* *venus si je n'avais été*  
 to fetch them.  
*les chercher.*

It is not probable you could have obtained the con-  
*—* *83* *obtenir* *con-*  
 sent of your father, if I had not spoken in your favour.  
*sentement* *B* *faveur*  
 I do not think that the French revolution would ever  
*croire (ir)* *31* *ré—*  
 have happened, had Lewis the Sixteenth vigorously op-  
*être arriver si Louis* *Seize* *172* *se fût op-*

posed the first innovations? Do you think your brothers  
*posé* *ait.* — *penser*  
 would learn French, should I teach them?  
*apprendre (ir)* *si* *l'enseigner* *B leur* 57

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the Use of the  
 SUBJUNCTIVE.

There is no grief which length of time does not  
 169 *point chagrin* 18 \* \*  
 lessen. Erostratus set on fire the temple of Diana, that  
*diminuer* — *le mettre* *le feu à* — *m Diane* *afin*  
 his name might be spread through the whole  
*que* 158 *nom* *se répandre* *par*  
 earth. Philosophers are composed of flesh and bones as well  
*—phé* 143 *—ser* *chair* *os aussi-bien*  
 as other men; and, however sublimated, their theories  
*que* 109 *élevé* *théorie*  
 may be; they are liable to frailties, as well as other mortals.  
*snjet* *faiblesse* 7  
 The bark of trees was used to write upon before paper  
*de l'écorce* *arbre* 98 *se servir* *B pour* \* 158 *papier*  
 was invented.  
 —*ter*

• The Emperor Caligula wished that all the citizens of  
*empereur* — *désirer* *B* 156 *citoyen*  
 Rome had but one neck, that he might behead them  
 128 *—cou* *m afin que* 158 *pouvoir décapiter*  
 all at once. Whatever riches we may have, and however  
*à la fois* 155 *richesse*  
 unsuccessful may be our literary productions, we are never  
*malheureux* *littéraire* 31 — 120  
 contented with our fortune, nor dissatisfied with our under-  
*content* 32 — *mécontent* 32 *es-*  
 standing. A man who has no friends has nobody he can  
*pré* *point* 18 155  
 rely upon, nor from whom he may expect any fa-  
*compter sur qui* 174 *de qui* *pouvoir attendre*  
 vour.

The love of our enemies must have no bounds in  
*amour* *ennemi* *ne doit point* 18 *borne*  
 the heart; though in the outward behaviour, it may  
*cœur* *quoique* 158 *extérieur* 31 *conduite* *f il pouvoir*  
 have some limitation. Lightning appears before the thunder  
 7 *limites* *éclair* *paraître* 158 *tonnerre* *m*



is heard. Unless a book be instructive or enter-  
 98 *entendre à moins que* 158 *ne* — *lif* *amu-*  
 taining, I do not care to read it. Though ambition is  
*sant se spacier* 135 158 —  
 a vice, it is nevertheless the foundation of many virtues.  
 — *néanmoins base f bien* 13

Though an honourable title may be conveyed  
*quoique* 158 *honorable* 31 *titre m pouvoir se transmettre*  
 to posterity, yet the ennobling qualities, such as great-  
*qui anoblissent* 141 — *telles que gran-*  
 ness of the soul, cannot be transferred. Christopher Colum-  
*deur à me se transmettre — phe Colomb*  
 bus, by an effort of genius and intrepidity, the most successful  
 — *génie* 20 *intrépidité* *heureux*  
 that is recorded in the annals of mankind, opened  
 150 98 *trouver annales du genre humain ouvrir* 150  
 to his contemporaries the way to a new world.  
 — *rains chemin de monde m*

## CHAPTER XVII.

### OF THE IRREGULARS *would, could, should, &c.*

RULE 165. — *would, could, should, expressed by vouloir, pou-  
 voir, devoir.*

The words *will* and *would* are expressed in French by the  
 verb *vouloir*, when they imply an explicit will: *could* and  
*might* are expressed by *pouvoir*, when they denote possibi-  
 lity; and *should* by *devoir*, when it denotes necessity or duty.  
 Example:

He will not obey his superiors.  
*Il ne veut pas obéir à ses supérieurs.*

Why do you not speak French? Because I cannot;  
*pourquoi Français parce que pouvoir (ir)*  
 if I could, I would.\* We are born for society; we should.  
*le* 152 *le faire (ir) e* *nés* A

\* *Would, could, should, and, might, are not expressed in  
 other cases, and are only the mark of a tense, as je parlerais, I  
 would speak.*

therefore contribute to the advantage of the community. If

*donc* —buer bien —naul  
 you could lend me your horse, you would oblige me (very  
 152 *prêter* —gr E beau-  
 much). I am sorry I cannot to-day; if I could, I  
*coup* *fâché de \* le* *aujourd'hui* *le* 152

certainly would not refuse you; if you had asked for  
*certainement* 172 *refuser* E 152 \*

it yesterday, you could have had it then, or if you could  
*le hier* 167 *alors* 152

wait till to-morrow, it would be at your disposal.  
*attendre jusqu'à* *demain* E *service*

Marshal Turenne would not take (any thing) from mer-  
*Le maréchal de* — B *prendre rien* *mar-*  
 chants upon trust, lest they might lose a part of it,  
*chand* *à crédit de peur que* 158 *perdre partie en* 57  
 should he be killed in battle.

*s'il* B *tuer* *bataille*

RULE 166.—would, could, &c. not followed by a Compound Tense.

If the auxiliaries *would*, *could*, *should*, and *might* are not followed by a compound tense, they are expressed in French by the imperfect, the preterite of the indicative, the conditional, or the preterite of the subjunctive, of the verbs *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, &c. according as the sense requires it. Examples :

I could do it yesterday. I could do it formerly.

*Je pouvais le faire hier.* *Je pus le faire autrefois.*

I could, if I would. I do not think I could.

*Je le pourrais, si je voulais.* *Je ne crois pas que je le pusse.*

RULE 167.—would, could, &c. followed by a Compound Tense.

If the auxiliaries *would*, *could*, *should*, and *might* are followed by a compound tense, the sentence is rendered by the imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, *dû*, or *voulu*, if you speak of something already done; and by the conditional of *pouvoir*, *devoir*, or *vouloir*, and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive, if you speak of something not yet done. Examples :

You should have written to me, as you knew my direction.

*Vous auriez dû m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.*

I *could* have finished my letter before him.

*Je pourrais avoir fini ma lettre avant lui.*

I *could* have done my exercise as soon as you if I  
*faire thème aussi vite que*  
*would*; but then it would not have been done so well as it is.

152 *mais* *faire si bien qu'il l'est*  
 If you *would* have studied French, you *might* have learnt it  
*si* 152 *étudier* *apprendre*

in a short time when you were in France. Cities *could* not  
 \* *peu de temps* *B* *ville*

have been built without an assembly of men. I think that  
*bâtir assemblée croire (ir)*

if our general *would* have pursued the enemy, he *might*  
*général* 152 *poursuivre (ir)* *ennemi pl*

have taken their ammunition. I *could* have lent you two  
*prendre (ir)* *munition pl* *prêter*

hundred pounds yesterday, but I do not think I can at  
*livre hier* *croire* 83 *je le puisse*

present, because I have bought a horse this morning.

*— parce que acheter matin*

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut, il y a, &c.*

RULE 168.—*il faut*, it must.

☞ The verb *must* is expressed in French by the impersonal *il faut que*. The nominative of *must* becomes the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood. Examples :

Your brother must come here to-morrow.

*Il faut que votre frère vienne ici demain.*

They must do it.

*Il faut qu'ils le fassent.*

as if it were, It must that your brother come.

\* If you are at a loss in which tense to put *i.* French these irregular *would, could, should, &c.* turn them by the verb to be willing, to be able, or to be obliged, and then put *vouloir, pouvoir, or devoir i.* the same tense as is the verb to be in English, and you will never be mistaken.

Children *must* obey their parents. Men *must* practise  
*obéir* 130 — *pratiquer*  
 virtue. I *must* have a new hat. A woman *must* have  
*neuf* 31. *chapeau*  
 (a great deal) of circumspection when speaking of herself. I  
*beaucoup* *retenu* *en*  
 have sold my house: I *must* buy another. You *must*  
*vendre* *en acheter*  
 have a new book. They *must* have new stockings. They  
*neuf* *bas*  
*must* answer. You *must* go there.  
*pondre* *y*

• RULE 169.—*il y a*, there is.

1. The impersonals, *there is*, or *there are*; *there was*, or *there were*, &c. are expressed in French by *il y a* for the present tense, *il y avait* for the imperfect, *il y eut* for the preterite, *il y aura* for the future, *il y aurait* for the conditional, *il y eût* for the present subjunctive, and *il y eût* for the preterite. Example:

There is no talent more shining than that of speaking.  
*Il n'y a point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.*

2. The impersonal *il y a* is also used to ask the distance from one place to another; then it answers to the words *how far*. Example: *combien y a-t-il de Douvres à Calais?* how far is Dover from Calais?—to ask the number of inhabitants, years, months, cities, &c.; then it answers to the words *how many*. Example: *combien y a-t-il de villes en Angleterre?* how many towns are there in England?—to ask the time since any thing happened; then it answers to the words *how long*? Example: *combien y a-t-il qu'elle est morte?* how long has she been dead? and in this case the following verb (when it expresses something still existing) is put in the present of the indicative.

1. There is no less eloquence in the tone of the voice,  
*pas moins* 18 *dans* *ton* *voix*  
 in the eyes and the gesture, than in the choice of words.  
*geste* *en* *que* *choix* *mot*  
 There is in true virtue a candour which nothing can  
*leur* 118 *pouvoir* (ir)  
 counterfeit.—2. *How long* have you been in England?—These  
*contrefaire* *combien* *Angleterre* \*  
 five years.—2. *How long* has your father been dead?—2. *How*  
*ans* *mort*

long have you learnt geography?—2. How far is Rouen  
*apprendre géographie* *combien*  
 from Paris?—2. How far is London from Vienna?—2. How  
 — *—dres* — *—ne*  
 many inhabitants are there in France?—2. How many towns  
 18 *habitant* *en* " 18 *villes*  
 are there in England?—1. There is nothing made by the  
*Angleterre* *rien de*  
 hands of men, which time does not destroy.  
*main* *temps* *détruire* 165

RULE 170.—*Distinction between c'est and il est.*

☞ 1. The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* is usually expressed by *il est, il était, il fut, &c.* when it is followed by an adjective, without reference to any thing expressed before. Example:

It is very difficult to please every body.

*Il est très-difficile de plaire à tout le monde*—not *c'est*.

2. *It is, it was,* is expressed by *c'est* or *c'était*, when it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb. Example:

It is my brother who says so. It is you who have seen him.

*C'est mon frère qui le dit.* *C'est vous qui l'avez vu.\**

not *il est mon frère qui le dit*; nor, *il est vous qui l'avez vu*.

2. *It is* a certain mark of fortitude to preserve the soul  
 31 *marquer* *courage* 135 *son âme*  
 from pride in prosperity, and to shun (depressing anxi-  
*orgueil* *prosperité* *d'éviter* *le décourage-*  
 etics) in adversity.—1. *It is* more glorious to conquer  
*ment* *glorieux* 135 *se vaincre*  
 oneself than to conquer an enemy.—2. *It was* envy which  
*soi-même* *ennemi* 150 *envie*  
 caused the death of Abel.—2. *It is* you who have spoken of it.  
*causer* *mort* *parler en* 57  
 —2. *It is* the character of a great genius to intimate  
*caractère m* *génie* 135 *exprimer*  
 many things in few words.—1. *It is* certain that men  
*beaucoup* 18 *peu* 38 *not*  
 could not live long in society without civil laws.  
*pouvoir (ir)* *E* *longtemps* 31 *loi* 7 •

\* *It is, is usually expressed by il est or il était (and not by c'est) when it is followed by a substantive which has reference to time: as, il est temps de partir, it is time to set out; not, t'est temps de partir.*

It is, late; it is time to go to bed. What o'clock is it?  
*tard* 135 *aller se coucher* *heure*  
 It is past ten; it is almost eleven.  
*plus de* *presque*

RULE 171.—*c'est, ce sont, it is.*

☞ The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *ce sont* when it is followed by a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles* in the nominative case. Examples:

*It is they who speak. It is they who have seen him.*  
*Ce sont eux qui parlent. Ce sont elles qui l'ont vu.*  
 not, *il est*, nor, *c'est eux qui parlent*, &c.

2. The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *c'est* in all other cases, even before a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, if they are not in the nominative case. Examples:

*It is you who say so. It is for them to speak.*  
*C'est vous qui le dites. C'est à eux à parler—not, c*

1. It is the Phœnicians who invented the art of writing.  
*Phénicien —ter 153*  
 —1. It is not those who speak much, who are the most  
*ceux beaucoup*  
 esteemed.—2. It is for you to obey.—2. It was to your  
*estimer à d'obéir 150*  
 brothers I lent that money.—2. It is to them I speak  
*frère 83 prêter argent eux 83*  
 —1. It is your ancestors, who by their virtue have trans-  
*ancêtre trans-*  
 mitted you the titles you enjoy; it is they who have  
*mettre (ir) titre dont jouir eux*  
 rendered your name great; imitate them if you wish to  
*rendre imiter H vouloir (ir)*  
 be worthy of their name.†  
*digne nom*

\* The word *heure* is always expressed after the cardinal numbers, unless two or more are in the same part of a sentence:  
*de, depuis six heures jusqu'à huit, et depuis neuf jusqu'à onze.*  
 † I have not put a recapitulatory exercise to these chapters, because they are easily understood.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE 172.—*Adverbs after the Verbs.*

Adverbs are placed in French after the verb when it is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle when it is in a compound one: they are never put, as in English, between the nominative and the verb. Example:

They never say what they think.

\* *Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.*

not, *ils ne jamais disent.\**

We seldom repent of talking little, but very often  
*on rarement se repentir 135 parler peu souvent*  
 of talking (too much). Homer sometimes slumbers (in the  
*trop Homère quelquefois sommciller au*  
 midst) of gods and heroes. Your exercise is not well done,  
*milieu dieu 14 h6ros th6me*

you have done it hastily. Never reproach any one  
*57 6 la h6te 173 reprocher 6 personne*  
 with the services you do him. Courtiers often pass their

\* — in 83 *rendre lui 57 courtisan passer*  
 life in the hope of acquiring what they never obtain.  
*esp6rance 135 acqu6rir 74 obtenir*

The love of earthly things is always accompanied with an  
*terrestre 31 bien accompagner 32*  
 indifference towards heavenly. What is made with  
 — *pour les bien c6lestes ce qui se fait avec*  
 pleasure, is generally well made.  
*plaisir ordinairement*

RULE 173.—*Place of Adverbs.*

The following adverbs of time, *aujourd'hui, demain, hier*, the adverbs compounded of several words, and those which govern a noun after them, are usually placed after the participle, and even after the words it may govern. Examples:

He has acted conformably to his principles.

*Il a agi conform6ment 6 ses principes.*

\* The adverbs, *bien, well, mieux, better, mal, ill*, are generally placed before the verb, when in the infinitive.

He has prudently managed that business.

*Il a conduit cette affaire avec prudence.*

not, *il a conformément agi à ses principes*; nor, *il a avec prudence conduit.*

If you had acted conformably to reason and justice,  
 152 *agir conformément* . . . *raison* f 177  
 nobody would have condemned your conduct. He has  
*condamner conduite.*  
 often spoken well of you. As I wanted to (go out  
 172 *parler en bien* . . . *comme avoir besoin de sortir*  
 this morning, I have done my exercise hastily. You have  
*matin faire thème à la hâte*  
 given me (too much) bread. I shall have done to-morrow.  
 .18 *pain finir*

## CHAPTER. XX.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE 174.—Place of Prepositions.

☞ The prepositions are always placed in French before the words which they govern, and never after, as they are sometimes in English. Examples:

What's that for? Whom do you complain of? . . .  
*Pourquoi cela? de qui vous plaignez-vous?*  
 not, *qui cela pour?* nor, *qui vous plaignez-vous de?*  
 Whom do you speak to? What does he complain of?  
*qui quoi se plaindre*  
 Whom shall I apply myself to? As magistrates are  
*adresser me 57 de même que —tratt*  
 above the people, so the laws are above magistrates.  
*au-dessus du peuple ainsi loi*  
 We fancy that the antipodes are under us, they think that  
*s'imaginer — sous croire (ir)*  
 we are under them; but all are upon the earth, for no part of  
*eux sur 121 partie*  
 a surface can be upon another part of the same surface.  
*pouvoir (ir) — une autre*

#### RULE 175.—How to express from followed by to.

1. When the prepositions from and to are used to express the distance, or the going from one place to another, from is



expressed by *de*, and *to* by *à*, if we speak of a particular place. Examples:

I go from Rouen to Caen in one day.

*Je vais de Rouen à Caen en un jour.*

He wanders from the cellar to the garret,

*Il va de la cave au grenier.*

2. But *to* is expressed by *en* instead of *à* before the name of a country, or when the same substantive is repeated. Examples:

We have travelled from Italy to Switzerland.

*Nous avons voyagé d'Italie en Suisse.*

I go from house to house, from street to street, &c

*Je vais de maison en maison, de rue en rue.*

1. I can go in one day from Calais to Paris, and  
*pouvoir (ir) en jour — —*  
 in two hours from Paris to Versailles.—2. I like to travel;  
*heure — — aimer 136 voyager*

I went from Germany to Russia, and from Russia to  
*aller 183 Allemagne Russie*

Sweden.—1. (How far) is it from London to Winchester  
*Suède combien 169 Londres*

and from Winchester to Salisbury?—2. You spend all the  
*passer*

day in going from house to house, from street to street, and  
*à aller — — rue*

from place to place. 1. How many miles from Chelsea  
*— — Combien y a-t-il de*

to the Tower? It is not far from his house to the river.

*Tour 169 loin rivière*

RULE 176.—*depuis, jusqu'à*, from, to.

When the prepositions *from* and *to* are used to express a duration of time, *from* is expressed by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*. Example:

I have been sick from Christmas to Easter.

*J'ai été malade depuis Noël jusqu'à Pâques.*

A poor ploughman, who works from morning to night,  
*laboureur travailler matin soir*

\* The preposition *to*, is always expressed by *jusqu'à* when it signifies so far as. Example: *je le poursuivrai jusqu'au bout*; I will prosecute him to the end.

when he is well paid for his labour, lives as content as  
*payer de travail vivre (ir)*  
 a king. I have drunk the cup to the dregs.  
*boire (ir) calice* *il* *he sing*  
 walk every day from ten to twelve, and I study  
*se promener dix heures midi étudier*  
 from six of the afternoon to eight, sometimes to nine.  
*six heures après-midi huit quelquefois neuf*

RULE 177.—*Prepositions repeated.*

The prepositions *de*, *à*, *en*, *contre*, and *sans*, are usually repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb, whether they are repeated or not in English. Example :

He is in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust.  
*Il est dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.*

The other prepositions are repeated before words of different significations, but not when they are before words of similar import.

Forcigners take pleasure in admiring at Amster-  
*étranger prendre (ir) plaisir à admirer à* —  
 dam the singular mixture formed by the ridges of houses,  
*singulier 31 mélange former tout*  
 the tops of trees, and the flags of ships, which present,  
*cime f pavillon vaisseau 74*  
 in the same place, an idea of the sea, the city, and the coun-  
*— idée mer ville cam-*  
 try. Heroes formerly sacrificed themselves for their  
*pagne héros autrefois 172 sacrifier se 57*  
 country, or their mistresses ; at present, nothing is done but  
*pays maîtresse se faire que*  
 for fortune or pleasure.

Jesus Christ came into the world to redeem men, and to  
*venir 153 monde 138 racheter*  
 destroy the empire of the devil. Charity does nothing without  
*détruire démon charité rien sans*  
 consideration and order. Our laws do not condemn any per-  
*ni ordre condamner*  
 son without having heard and examined him.  
*139 entendre examiner le*

## CHAPTER XXI. OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

RULE 178.—to be expressed *by* avoir.

The verb *to be* is expressed by the verb *avoir* when it is followed, 1. By a word of dimension (see Rule 36). 2. By the words *hungry, dry, or thirsty*. 3. By the words *hot, warm, or cold*.\* 4. By the words *in the right, in the wrong, ashamed, or afraid*. 5. By *in vain*. 6. In speaking of the age of a person, or animal.

### EXAMPLES.

- |                         |                                  |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Il a six pieds,      | he is six feet high.             |
| 2. Avez-vous faim ?     | are you hungry ?                 |
| 3. Avez-vous froid ?    | are you cold ?                   |
| 4. Vous avez raison,    | you are in the right.            |
| 5. Vous avez beau dire, | it is in vain for you to say so. |
| 6. Quel âge avez vous ? | how old are you ?                |
| J'ai quinze ans,        | I am fifteen.                    |

1. Some whales are a hundred feet long, their tails are  
*baleine pied 35 queue*  
 more than twelve feet in circumference, and their fins are  
*de circonférence nageoire*  
 about seven feet long.—6. How old was your father when  
*environ 35 quel âge n 65*  
 he died ?—He was seventy.† And your mother ?—she  
*mourir c 149 soixante-dix ans 65*  
 was almost eighty.—2. I do not remember to have ever  
*près de quatre-vingts se ressouvenir 135 jamais*  
 been so thirsty as I was yesterday.—3. Warm yourself, if you  
*si soif que c hier se chauffer*  
 are cold; my feet are not cold, because I have walked much,  
*froid*  
 but my hands are so cold, that I cannot write.—1. There  
*si froid pouvoir (ir) 169*

\* The part of the body which is cold or hot is preceded in French by *au, à la, or aux*, as *j'ai froid aux pieds*.

† The word *an, year*, when speaking of age, must always be used in French after the cardinal number, though it be not expressed in English.

are some walks in our park which are three hundred feet long.—4. You are in the wrong, and he is in the right.

*tort*

*raison*

5. It is in vain for you to ask money from a miser, he never will give you any.—6. How old is your daughter? she will be eighteen next March. I did not think she was more than fifteen.—4. When we heard that your coach had been stopped by some ruffians, we were afraid they would have murdered you.—Are your feet cold? No, on the contrary, they are very warm; but my hands are cold.

*demander*

*à avaré*

*donner*

*en 58*

*quel âge*

*65*

*dix-huit*

*au mois de*

*Mars prochain*

*croire 83*

*was*

*more*

*than*

*fifteen.—4.*

*When*

*we*

*heard*

*that*

*your*

*coach*

*had*

*been*

*stopped*

*by*

*some*

*ruffians,*

*we*

*were*

*afraid*

*they*

*would*

*have*

*murdered*

*you.—Are*

*your*

*feet*

*cold?*

*No,*

*on*

*the*

*contrary,*

*they*

*are*

*very*

*warm;*

*but*

*my*

*hands*

*are*

*cold*

*the*

*contrary,*

*they*

*are*

*very*

*warm;*

*but*

*my*

*hands*

*are*

*cold*

*the*

*contrary,*

*they*

*are*

*very*

*warm;*

*but*

*my*

*hands*

*are*

*cold*

*the*

*contrary,*

*they*

*are*

*very*

*warm;*

*but*

*my*

*hands*

*are*

*cold*

*the*

*contrary,*

*they*

*are*

• RULE 179.—to be expressed by faire.

The verb *to be* is usually expressed by *faire*, before the words *soleil*, *vent*, *chaud*, *froid*, and in general when we speak of the kind or disposition of the weather Example:

It is fine weather.

*Il fait beau temps.*

Is it cold this morning?—Yes, sir it is very cold; however I do not think it is quite so cold as it was yesterday. The weather is very inconstant; it was hot yesterday, it is cold to-day; it rained this morning; it is fine weather now, but perhaps it will rain again before night. If it be fine weather to-morrow, I will go to the play, but if it be bad weather, I shall not go. When I was in the country, it was very bad weather; now I am come to town it is very fine weather, and if I was to return into the country, I fear it would be bad weather again.

*matin*

*oui*

*très*

*however*

*I*

*do*

*not*

*think*

*it*

*is*

*quite*

*so*

*cold*

*as*

*it*

*was*

*yesterday.*

*The*

*weather*

*is*

*very*

*inconstant;*

*it*

*was*

*hot*

*yesterday,*

*it*

*is*

*cold*

*to-day;*

*it*

*rained*

*this*

*morning;*

*it*

*is*

*fine*

*weather*

*now,*

*but*

*perhaps*

*it*

*will*

*rain*

*again*

*before*

*night.*

*If*

*it*

*be*

*fine*

*weather*

*to-morrow,*

*I*

*will*

*go*

*to*

*the*

*play,*

*but*

*if*

*it*

*be*

*bad*

*weather,*

*I*

*shall*

*not*

*go.*

*When*

*I*

*was*

*in*

*the*

*country,*

*it*

*was*

*very*

*bad*

*weather;*

*now*

*I*

*am*

*come*

*to*

*town*

*it*

*is*

*very*

*fine*

*weather,*

*and*

*if*

*I*

*was*

*to*

*return*

*into*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

*fear*

*it*

*would*

*be*

*bad*

*weather*

*again.*

*the*

*country,*

*I*

RULE 180.—to be expressed *by se p.....*

☞ The verbs *to be* or *to do*, used in English to enquire after, or to speak of the health of somebody, are expressed in French by the reflected verb *se porter*. Example:

How does your father *do*? — He *is* very well,  
*Comment se porte monsieur votre père? — Il se porte très-bien,*  
 thank GOD.  
*Dieu merci.*

How do you *do* this morning? — I *am* very well, I  
*comment* *mañ* *bien*  
 thank you. And how does your sister *do*? — She *is* not  
*remercier* 65 92

well; she (has been) ill for these two months, and I  
*A malade depuis \* mois*

fear she will never *be* well again. And your brothers,  
*craindre* 126 \* 65

how *are* they? — the youngest *is* very well, but I do not  
*plus jeune* *mais*

know how the eldest *docs*, because we have not  
*savoir (ir)* *ainé* 92 *parce que*  
 heard of him for these two months; he *was* very well  
*entendu parler depuis \**  
 when he wrote to us last.  
*quand écrire c la dernière fois*

RULE 181.—*il en est de*, it is with.

☞ The impersonal *it is with*, *it will be with*, &c. is rendered in French by *il en est de*, for the present tense; *il en était de*, for the imperfect; *il en fut de*, for the preterite, &c. Example:

It is with you as with other men.  
*Il en est de vous comme des autres.*

*It is with* the diseases of the heart as with those of the  
*maladie* 76  
 body, some are real, and some imaginary. *It is with*  
*quelques-unes réel d'autres —naire*  
 (men of learning) as with ears of corn; they raise their heads  
*savant épis blé lever la tête*  
 while they are empty, and when they are full, they begin  
*tant que vide —plein commencer*  
 to droop. *It is with* your son as with other children. I do  
 136 *pencher*  
 not think *it will be with* my son as *it was with* yours.  
*croire* 159 153

RULE 182.—to have, expressed by être.

The auxiliary *to have* is expressed in French by the verb *être* in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs, and also of the following, *aller, arriver, décéder, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, sortir, tomber, venir*, and their compounds. Examples:

I rose at six o'clock. He has arrived before us.  
*Je me suis levé à six heures. Il était arrivé avant nous.*

The Amazons have made themselves famous by their courage in war. If you had risen an hour sooner this morning, you would have embarked with the others. If I had (been awake), I would have risen. Why have you deviated from the road which you had begun to follow?—I have often repented not having followed your advice.

*Amazones f rendre 143 se 57. fameux*  
*la guerre 152 se lever plus tôt*  
*s'embarquer 152*  
*s'éveiller se lever s'écarter*  
*route f commencer 144 à suivre (ir)*  
*se repentir avis*

My father has arrived an hour sooner than you. I would not have come this morning, if I had not received a letter from you yesterday. You would not have fallen from your horse, if you had not galloped. I have walked in the garden before you were up. Why have you complained of me? I have (got a cold) this morning. He has distrusted every body.

*arriver plus tôt*  
*venir 152*  
*173 tomber de \* cheval*  
*152 galoper se promener*  
*avant que 158 levé se plaindre*  
*s'enrhumer se défier de*

RULE 183.—avoir mal à.

We make use of the verb *avoir mal* in speaking of any illness. The part of the body affected with some pains is put in the dative case, and, instead of the possessive pronouns, it is preceded by *au, à la, à l,* or *aux*, according as the gender and number require it. Examples:

I have the head-ach. She has the tooth-ach.  
*J'ai mal à la tête. Elle a mal aux dents.*

as if it were, I have a pain to the head, she has a pain to the teeth: and so for other sentences of the same kind.

I have great pain in my side. He has sore eyes. Have  
*bien mal côté mal yeux*  
 you the stomach-ach? He has a sore foot. My lips are  
*estomac mal pied lèvres*  
 sore. She had the tooth-ach yesterday, now she has the  
 149  
 head-ach; to-morrow, perhaps, she will have a bad leg.  
*peut-être cr jambe*  
 When I was young, I often had the head-ach.  
*jeune souvent* 172 149

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the FRENCH IDIOMS.

Why do you not eat, if you are hungry? I am not very  
*manger* 178 *faim* 178 *très*  
 hungry, I can wait till (dinner-time), but I am very thirsty,  
*attendre \* le dîner* 178 *soif*  
 and I will thank you for a glass of wine. It is very  
*prier de me donner verre in vin* 179  
 cold to-day. It was cold yesterday. It will be hot soon.  
*froid* 179 179 *chaud bientôt*  
 I am thirsty. He is hungry. My sister is not well, she has  
*178 soif 178 faim 180 bien*  
 not been well for these three weeks, she has the head-ach  
*180 depuis \* semaine* 183  
 to-day. At what o'clock did you rise this morning?  
*quelle heure 153 se levé* 183

It is in vain for you to say so, I do not believe  
*178 dire le 57 croire (ir)*  
 you. It is with my brother as with yours. How old is  
*181* 89 178  
 your son?—He is almost nineteen. And your daughter?—  
*près de*  
 She will be fifteen next Christmas. What weather is it  
*à 31 Noël* 179  
 this morning?—It is fine weather. I hope it will be fine  
*179 espérer* 179  
 weather to-morrow. Why?—Because if it be fine weather  
*parce que* 179  
 we shall go into the country, my brother and I; but if it be  
*campagne f* 45 179  
 bad weather, we shall stay at home.  
*rester quaison*

How far is your house from the chapel? How old was  
 169 *de* *à* *chapelle* *quel âge* 178  
 your father when he died? How old were you when you  
 65 *quand mourir* 150 . . . 178 182  
 married?—I was thirty. How old are you now?—I shall  
*se marier* 153 178 . . . 178  
 be fifty next April.  
 178 *au mois d'Avril prochain*

It is in vain for us to bury ourselves in obscurity;  
*s'enfoncer* —*le*  
 nothing protects us against the persecutions of malignity;  
 118 *mettre à couvert des poursuites* *méchanceté*  
 nothing shelters us from the darts of envy.  
*mettre à l'abri* *traits*

What weather is it to-day? I do not know; I have  
 179 *savoir* (*ir*)  
 not (been out), but I think it is very cold. If it be  
 182 *sortir* . . . *croire* (*ir*) 179 179  
 cold, I shall not (go out), because I fear to get cold. I  
*sortir* . . . *craindre de m'enrhumer*  
 never drink unless I am thirsty.  
*boire* (*ir*) *à moins que* 158 127 *soif*

How do your children do?—They are all very well, I  
 180 . . . 180  
 thank you. And your mother?—She is not well; she  
*remercier* 65 . . . 180  
 had the tooth-ach yesterday, and she told me this morning  
 183 . . . *dire* 153  
 she had the head-ach. Is it cold? Are you cold? It is  
 183 . . . 179 *froid* 178 179  
 not cold. I am not cold. Your brother will not be well  
 178 *froid* 180  
 till he is twenty.  
*jusqu'à ce que* 158 178 *vingt ans*.



## FREE EXERCISES.\*

## 1. THE TWO BEES.

On a fine morning in May, two bees (set forward) in  
*dans* *matinée de Mai* *partir*  
 quest of honey; the one wise and temperate, the  
*aller chercher* *sobre*  
 other careless and extravagant. They soon arrived at a  
*négligent* *prodigue* *dans*  
 garden enriched with aromatic herbs, the most fragrant  
*odoriférant*  
 flowers, and the most delicious fruits. They regaled them-  
 selves for a time on the various dainties that were  
*\* quelque de différent mets délicat*  
 spread before them; the one louching his thigh at intervals  
*étaler* *patte pl de temps*  
 with provisions for the hive against the distant  
*en temps* *afin de s'en nourrir pen-*  
 winter, the other revelling with sweets, without (regard  
*dant l'hiver* *s'enivre de*  
 to any thing but) his present gratification. At length they  
*songer qu'à* *satisfaction*  
 found a large-mouthed phial, (that hung) beneath the bough  
*à large ouverture* *suspendu* *une branche*  
 of a peach-tree, filled with honey ready tempered, and exposed  
*\* tout clarifié qui s'offrait*  
 to their taste in the most alluring manner. The thought-  
*de* *atrayant*  
 less epicure, in spite of all his friend's remonstrances,  
*épicurienne malgré\**  
 plunged headlong into the vessel, resolving to indulge him-  
*vase résolu se livrer*  
 self in all the pleasures of sensuality. The philosopher, on  
*à* *f*  
 the other hand, sipped a little with caution; but (being  
*en goûter*

\* In the following Exercises the rules will be no more indicated, as the pupils must know them well enough to apply them by themselves.

suspicious) of danger, . . . flew off to fruits and  
*soupçonner* . . . *prendre son essor vers*  
 flowers; where, by the moderation of his meals, he (in-  
 proved his relish for the true enjoyment of them). In  
*sobriété* . . . *repas f*  
*ménager le plaisir d'y trouver toujours un nouveau goût* vers  
 the evening, however, he (called upon) his friend to  
*aller trouver* . . . *lui*  
 enquire whether he would return to the hive; but found  
*demandar* . . . *f*  
 him surfeited in sweets, which he was as unable to leave,  
*gorgé de* . . . *hors d'état de*  
 as to enjoy. (Clogged in his wings), enfeebled in his  
*d'en* . . . *les ailes collées* . . . *les patés affai-*  
 feet), and (his whole frame) totally enervated, he (was but  
*blies* . . . *tout le corps* . . . *n'avoir*  
 just able) to bid his friend adieu, and to lament  
*que la force* . . . *reconnaître avec dou-*  
 (with his) latest breath, that, though a taste of  
*leur en rendant le* . . . *soupir* . . . *en effleurant le*  
 pleasure, might quicken the relish of life, (an  
*on pouvoir rendre plus vif* . . . *jouissance pl* . . . *en*  
 unrestrained indulgence) is inevitable destruction.  
*s'y livrant sans mesure* . . . *on court à une*

II. RESPECT PAID BY THE LACEDÆMONIANS TO OLD AGE.

*rendre* . . . *Lacédémoniens*

It happened at Athens, during a public representation of  
 some play exhibited in honour of the commonwealth, that  
*qui se donnait au théâtre*  
 an (old gentleman) came too late for a place suitable  
*vieillard* . . . *pour trouver*  
 to his age and quality. Many of the young gentlemen, who  
 \* \* \* *gens*  
 observed the difficulty and confusion he was in, made  
*embarras* . . . *où*  
 signals to him that they would accommodate him, if he came  
*signe sing.* . . . *céder une place dat.*  
 where they sat: the (good man) bustled through the  
*être assis* . . . *vieillard* . . . *percer* . . . \*  
 crowd accordingly; but when he came to the seats (to  
*arriver* . . . *ban-*  
 which) he was invited, the jest was to (sit close) and  
*où* . . . *on se faire un jeu de se serrer*

expose him to the whole audience, when he stood,  
*la rusée de l'assemblée tandis que être debout*  
 (out of countenance). The frolic went round all the  
*tout décontenance ; ce badinage passer de banc en*  
 (Athenians' benches). But on those occasions there were  
*banc parmi les Athéniens dans*  
 also particular places assigned for foreigners: when the  
*destiné dat.*  
 (good man) skulked towards the seats appointed for  
*vieillard étant allé se cacher bancs marqué*  
 the Lacedæmonians, that honest people, more virtuous than  
*gens pl*  
 polite, rose up all to a man, and with the greatest  
*poluë \* jusqu'au dernier*  
 respect received him among them. The Athenians, being  
 suddenly touched with a sense of the Spartan virtue and  
*sentiment spartiate*  
 their own degeneracy, gave a thunder of applause,  
*dépravation des applaudissemens redoublés*  
 and the old man cried out: "The Athenians understand  
*connaître*  
 what is good, but the Lacedæmonians practise it."—  
*bien*  
*Sneculus*

### III. PÆTUS AND ARRIA

In the reign of Claudius, the Roman emperor, Arria, the  
*sous*  
 wife of Cecinna Pætus, was an illustrious pattern of magna-  
*cremple*  
 nimity and conjugal affection.

It happened that her husband and her son were both, at  
 the same time, attacked with a dangerous illness. The son  
 died. He was a youth endowed with every quality of  
*co*  
 mind and person which could endear him to his parents.  
*corps rendre cher*  
 His mother's heart was (torn with all the anguish of grief);  
*navré de douleur*  
 yet she resolved to conceal the distressing event from her  
*ce cruel à*  
 husband. She prepared and conducted his funeral so pri-  
*sc-*  
 vately, that Pætus did not know of his death. When-  
*crètement*

ever she came into her husband's bedchamber, she pretended her son was better, and (as often as) he enquired after his health, would answer, that he had rested well, or had eaten with appetite. When she found that she could not longer retain her grief, but her tears (were gushing out), she would leave the room, and having given vent to her passion, return again with dry eyes, and a serene countenance, as if she had left her sorrow behind her at the door of the chamber.

Camillus Scribonianus, the governor of Dalmatia, having taken up arms against Claudius, Pætus joined himself to his party, and was soon after taken prisoner, and brought to Rome. When the guards were going to put him on board the ship, Arria besought them (that she might be permitted) to go with him. "Certainly," said she, "you cannot refuse a (man of consular dignity) (as he is), a few attendants to (wait upon) him; but, if you will take me, I alone will perform their office." This favour, however, was refused: upon which she hired a small (fishing vessel), and boldly ventured to follow the ship.

Returning to Rome, Arria met the wife of Scribonianus in the emperor's palace, who pressing her to discover all that she knew of the insurrection—"What?" said she, "shall I regard thy advice, who saw thy husband murdered in thy very arms, and yet survivest him?"

Pætus being condemned to die, Arria formed a deliberate resolution to share his fate, and made no secret of her in-



profess the spite and revenge which moved him to it.  
*l'émouvoir* *porter*

The sentinel bore it without resistance; but frequently  
*soldat* said he would die to (be revenged) of that tyrant.

They had spent whole months in this manner, the one  
*mourrait volontiers* *se venger*  
 injuring, the other complaining; when in the  
*commettant des outrages*

midst of this rage towards each other, they were com-  
 manded upon the attack of the castle, where the corporal

received a shot in the thigh; and fell. The French  
*coup de feu à*

(pressing on), and Unnion expecting to be (trampled to  
*les servant de près* *s'attendre* *écrasé sous*  
 death), he called out to his enemy, "Ah, Valentine can  
*les pieds*

you leave me here?" Valentine immediately ran back,

and in the midst of a thick fire of the French, took  
*ses pas* *roulant*

the corporal upon his back, and brought him through all  
 that danger as far as the abbey of Saltine, where a cannon-  
 ball took off his head: his body fell under his enemy whom  
 he was carrying off. Unnion immediately forgot his wound,  
 rose up, tearing his hair, and then threw himself upon the  
 bleeding carcass, crying: "Ah, Valentine! was it for me,  
*sanglant cadavre*

who have so barbarously used thee, that thou hast died?  
 I will not (live after) thee." (He was not by any means

would survive) from the body, but (was removed with  
*vouloir survivre* *il n'y eut pas moyen de*  
*l'arracher* *cadavre* *on l'enleva le tenant*

it bleeding) in his arms, and attended with tears by  
*tout sanglant* *accompagné des* *de*  
 all their comrades who knew their enmity. (When he

was) brought to a tent, his wounds were dressed by  
*dans* *panser*

force; but the next day, still calling upon Valentine,  
*malgré lui*

and lamenting his cruelties to him, he died in the pangs  
*déplorer* *envers* *tourment*  
 of remorse. — *Taï*

## V. MULY MOLUC.

When Don Sebastian, king of Portugal, (had invaded) the territories of Muly Moluc, emperor of Morocco, in order to dethrone him, and set his crown upon the head of his nephew, Moluc (was wearing away with) a distemper which he himself knew was incurable. However, he prepared (for the reception of) so formidable an enemy. He was indeed so far spent with his sickness, that he did not expect to live out the whole day; but knowing the fatal consequences that would happen to his children and his people, in case he should die before he put an end to that war, he commanded his principal officers, that if he died during the engagement, (they should conceal) his death from his army, and (that they should ride up) to the litter in which his corpse was carried, under pretence of receiving orders from him as usual. Before the battle began, he was carried through all the ranks of his army in an open litter, as (they stood drawn up in array), encouraging them to fight valiantly in defence of their religion and country. Finding afterwards the battle to turn against him, though he was very near his last agonies, he threw himself out of his litter, rallied his army, and led them on to the charge, which afterwards ended in a complete victory on the side of the Moors. He had no sooner brought his men to the engagement, but finding himself

utterly spent, he was again replaced in his litter, where laying his finger on his mouth, to enjoin secrecy to his *mettre* officers, who stood about him, he died a few moments after in that posture.—Spectator.

## VI. DIONYSIUS THE TYRANT.

Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily, showed how far he was *Denis* from being happy even whilst he was abounding in riches, *avait en abondance des* and all the pleasures which riches can procure. Damocles, one of his flatterers, was complimenting him upon his power, his treasures, and the magnificence (of his royal state), and affirming, that no monarch ever was greater or happier than *qui l'enlourait* he. (Have you a mind), Damocles says the king, to taste *voulez-vous* this happiness, and know by experience what my enjoyments are, of which you have so high an idea? Damocles gladly accepted the offer: upon which the king ordered, that a royal banquet should be prepared, and a gilded couch *festin* 98 *qu'on lit* placed for him, covered with rich embroidery, and side-boards 152 *buffet* loaded with gold and silver plate of immense value. Pages *vaisselle* of extraordinary beauty were ordered to (wait on) him at *eurent ordre* *servir* table, and to obey his commands with the greatest readiness, *promptitude* and the most profound submission. Neither ointments, *ni* chaplets of flowers, nor rich perfumes were wanting. The *guirlande* table was loaded with the most exquisite delicacies of every kind. Damocles fancied himself amongst the gods: In the *croix* midst of all this happiness, he sees, (let down) from the roof *descendre* *plafond* over his head, a glittering sword hung by a single hair. The *suspendu à* sight of destruction thus threatening him, soon (put a stop to) *mort* *interrompre*



his joy and revelling. The pomp of his attendants, and the  
*plaisir pl* *serviteur pl*  
 glitter of the carved plate, gave him no longer any pleasure.  
*brillant ciselé*  
 He dreads to (stretch forth) his hand to the table. He throws  
*craindre* *porter*  
 off the chaplet of roses. He hastens to (remove from) his  
*quitter*  
 dangerous situation, and at last begs the king to restore him  
 to his former humble condition, (having no desire) to  
*précédent* 31 30 *ne désirant pas*  
 enjoy (any longer) such a dreadful kind of happiness.  
*plus longtemps*

## VII. DAMON AND PYTHIAS.

Damon and Pythias (or the Pythagorean sect in philosophy)  
*philosophes de la secte de Pythagore*  
 lived (in the) time of Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily. Their  
*B du Denis*  
 mutual friendship was so strong, that they were ready to die  
 for one another. One of the two (for it is not known which)  
 being condemned to death by the tyrant, obtained leave to go  
 into his own country, to settle his affairs, on condition that  
 \* *à*  
 the other should consent to be imprisoned in his stead, and  
 put to death for him, if he did not return before the day of  
 execution. The attention of (every one), and especially of  
 \* \* \* *chacun* \*  
 the tyrant himself, (was excited to the highest pitch); as  
*était dans la plus grande attente* \*  
 every body was curious to see what should be the event of so  
*étant* *issue*  
 strange an affair. When the time was almost elapsed, and  
 \* *B* *écoulé*  
 he who was gone did not appear, the rashness of the other,  
*parti* \* *B*  
 whose sanguine friendship (had put him upon running)  
*à qui sa vive* *avait fait courir*  
 (so seemingly desperate a hazard), was universally blamed.  
*un danger en apparence si inévitable* le 98  
 But he still declared that he had not (the least shadow of)  
*persistait à soutenir* *le plus léger*  
 doubt (in his mind) of his friend's fidelity. The event showed

how well he knew him. He came in due time and (suffer-  
*que* rendered himself) to that fate of which he had no reason to  
*soumettre* *une destinée* *sujet* think he should escape, and which he did not wish to  
*éviter* *à laquelle* escape by leaving his friend to suffer it in his place. Such  
*échaper* *subir* fidelity softened even the savage heart of Dionysius himself.  
*farouche* He pardoned the condemned. He gave the two  
*à celui qui avait été condamné* *remet* friends to one another; and (begged that they  
*dans les bras l'un de l'autre* *les pria de l'admettre* would take himself in for a third).  
*en tiers dans leur amitié*

## VIII. DESTRUCTION OF THE ALEXANDRIAN LIBRARY.

à Alexandrie.

When Alexandria was taken by the Mahometans, Amrus,  
*—dne f* their commander, found there Philoponus, whose conversation  
*chef* highly pleased him, as Amrus (was a lover of) letters, and  
*beaucoup* *aimer* Philoponus was a learned man. On a certain day Philoponus  
*\** said to him: "You have visited all the repositories or public  
*dépôt* warehouses in Alexandria, and you have sealed up  
*de* *mettre* *la scellé* *sur* (things of every sort) that (are found) there. As to those  
*les différens objets* *se trouver* things that may be useful to you, I presume to say nothing;  
*prétendre* but as to things of no service to you, some of them  
*qui ne vous sont d'aucun usage* may (be more suitable to me)." Amrus said to him:  
*E* *me convenir davantage* "And what is it you want?" "The philosophical books,"  
*vouloir* *E* replied he, "preserved in the royal libraries." "This," said  
*déposés* Amrus, "is a request upon which I cannot decide. You de-  
*demande*

sure a thing where I can issue no orders, till I have leave  
*sur laquelle donner*  
 from Omar, the commander of the faithful." Letters were  
 accordingly written to Omar, informing him of what  
*on écrivit pour —mer*  
 Philoponus had said; and (an answer was returned by Omar  
*Omar répondit*  
 to the following purpose :) "As to the books of which you  
*en ces termes*  
 have made mention, if (there be contained in them what)  
*ce qu'ils contiennent*  
 accords with the book of God (meaning the Koran),  
*c'est-à-dire*  
 there is without them, in the book of God, all that is suf-  
*on trouve*  
 ficient. But if there is any thing in them repugnant to  
*\* \* de contraire*  
 that book, we (in no respect) want them. Order them there-  
*nullement faites*  
 fore to be all destroyed." Amrus upon this  
*\* \* détruire " d'après cette réponse*  
 ordered (them to be dispersed) through the baths of Alex-  
*qu'on les distribuât dans*  
 andria, and to be there burnt (in making the baths warm).  
*qu'on les y brûlât pour chauffer les bains*  
 After this manner, in the space of six months, they were all  
*de*  
 consumed. Thus ended this noble library; and thus began,  
*superbe pl*  
 if it had not begun sooner, the age of barbarism and  
*pl*  
 ignorance.

#### IX. THE ADVANTAGES OF A GOOD EDUCATION.

I consider a human soul without education like marble in  
*l'âme de l'homme*  
 the quarry, which shows none of its inherent beauties,  
 until the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours,  
*talent marbrier en fusse sortir en*  
 makes the surface shine, and discovers every (ornamental  
*nuance*  
 cloud), spot, and vein, (that runs through the body of it).  
*dont il est parsemé*  
 Education, (after the same manner), when it works upon a  
*de même opérer*

noble mind, (draws out to view) every latent virtue and per-  
*âme mettre au jour*  
 fection, which, without such helps, are never able (to make  
*son sing*  
 their appearance.)  
*paraître*

If my reader will (give me leave) to change so soon the  
*vouloir me permettre de*  
 allusion upon him, I shall (make use) of the same instance,  
*se servir comparaison*  
 to illustrate the force of education, which Aristotle has  
*faire sentir*  
 brought to explain his doctrine of substantial forms, when he  
*employer*  
 tells us that a statue lies hid in a block of marble, and the  
*être*  
 art of the statuary only clears away the superfluous mat-  
*ne fait qu'enlever*  
 ter, and removes the rubbish. The figure is in the stone,  
*écarter immondices pl*  
 and the sculptor only finds it. What sculpture is to a block of  
*n'a qu'à la trouver*  
 marble, education is to a human soul. The philosopher, the  
 saint, or the hero; the wise, the good, or the great  
*homme de bien*  
 man; very often lie hid, and concealed in a plebeian, which a  
*être caché enfoui et*  
 proper education might have disinterred, and have brought  
*le \* le mettre*  
 to light. I am therefore much delighted with reading  
*au jour prendre beaucoup de plaisir à*  
 the accounts of savage nations, and with contemplating those  
*histoire sing.*  
 virtues which are wild and uncultivated; to see courage  
*grossier*  
 exerting itself in fierceness, resolution in obstinacy, wisdom in  
*se manifester opiniâtreté*  
 cunning, patience in sullenness and despair.  
*ruse f chagrin*

Men's passions operate variously, and appear in different  
 kinds of actions, according as they are more or less rectified  
 and swayed by reason. When one hears of negroes, who  
*gouverner*  
 upon the death of their masters, or upon changing their  
*à lorsqu'ils changent de*  
 service, hang themselves upon the next tree, as it fre-  
*condition a premier*

quently happens in our American plantations, who can forbear  
 admiring their fidelity, though it expresses itself in so  
 dreadful a manner? What might not that savage  
 greatness of soul, which appears in these poor wretches on  
 many occasions, (be raised to), were it rightly cultivated?  
 And what colour of excuse can there be for the contempt  
 with which we treat this part of our species; (that we should  
 not) put them upon the common foot of humanity; (that  
 we should only set) an insignificant fine upon (the man)  
 who murders them; nay, (that we should, as much as in us  
 lies, cut them off from) the prospects of happiness in another  
 world, as well as in this, and denying them that which we  
 (look upon) as the proper means for attaining it?

It is therefore an unspeakable blessing to be born in those  
 parts of the world where wisdom and knowledge flourish;  
 though it must be confessed there are, even in these parts,  
 several poor uninstructed persons, who are but little above  
 those nations of which I (have been here) speaking; as those  
 who have had the advantages of a more liberal education, rise  
 above one another by several different degrees of perfection.  
 For, to return to our statue in the block of marble, we see it  
 sometimes only begun to be chipped, sometimes rough-  
 hewn, and but just sketched into a human figure; sometimes  
 we see the man appearing distinctly in all his limbs and  
 features; sometimes we find the figure wrought up to  
 great elegance; but we seldom meet with any to which

the hand of a Phidias or a Praxiteles could not give several (nice touches and finishings):—*Spectator.*  
*touche propre à l'embellir et à la rendre parfaite*

## X. DIGNITY OF HUMAN NATURE.

In forming our notions of human nature, we are  
*les notions que nous nous formons*  
 very apt to make comparison betwixt men and animals,  
*porté une*  
 which are the only creatures endowed with thought, that fall  
*idée*  
 under our senses. Certainly this comparison is very favourable to mankind; on the one hand, we see a creature,  
*espèce humaine*  
 whose thoughts are not limited by any narrow bounds, either  
*idée* *borne* \*  
 of place or time; who carries his researches into the  
*lieu* *jusque dans*  
 most distant regions of this globe, and beyond this globe, to  
*jusqu'à*  
 the planets and heavenly bodies; looks back to consider the  
*qui*  
 first origin of the human race; casts his eyes forward to  
 \* *qui porter regard*  
 see the influence of his actions upon posterity, and the judgments which will be formed of his character a thousand  
*dans*  
 years hence: a creature who traces causes  
*examine l'enchaînement des*  
 and effects to great lengths and intricacy,  
*dans toute son étendue* *dans tous ses détours*  
 extracts general principles from particular appearances,  
*qui tirer*  
 improves upon his discoveries, corrects his mistakes, and  
*qui perfectionner* \*  
 makes his very errors profitable. (On the other hand, we  
*mettre même* *à profit*  
 (are presented) with a creature the very reverse of this;  
*trouver* \* *qui est tout l'opposé*  
 limited in its observations and reasonings to a few sensible  
*borné* *quelque*  
 objects which surround it, without curiosity, without a foresight, blindly conducted by instinct, and arriving in a very  
 short time at its utmost perfection, beyond which it is never  
*peu de*

able to advance a single step. What a difference is there  
*de* betwixt these creatures, and how exalted a notion must we  
 entertain of the former, in comparison of the latter! — *Quelle haute \* idée de son*  
*avoir*  
*Essays.*

#### XI DETACHED SENTENCES.

There is an heroic innocence as well as an heroic courage.

It is wiser to prevent a quarrel beforehand, than to revenge it afterwards.

No revenge is more heroic, than that which torments *en* by doing good.

A contented mind, and a good conscience, will make a man happy in all conditions. He knows not how to fear, who dares to die.

There is but one way of fortifying the soul against all gloomy presages and terrors of the mind; and that is, by securing to ourselves the friendship and protection of that Being, who disposes of events, and governs futurity.

Without a friend, the world is but a wilderness.

A man may have a thousand intimate acquaintances, and not a friend among them. If you have one friend, think yourself happy.

Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them.

Ingratitude is a crime so shameful, that the man was never yet found who would acknowledge himself guilty of it.

By others' faults wise men correct their own.

The prodigal robs his heir, the miser robs himself.

Though a man may become learned by another's learning, he can never be wise but by his own wisdom.

Men are sometimes accused of pride, merely because their accusers would be proud themselves if they were in their place.

The difference there is betwixt honour and honesty seems to be chiefly in the motive. The honest man does that from duty which the man of honour does for the sake of character.

A man should never be ashamed to own he has been in the wrong; which is but saying in other words, that he is wiser to-day than he was yesterday.

Complaisance renders a superior amiable, an equal agreeable, and an inferior acceptable.

Excess of ceremony shows want of breeding. That civility is the best which excludes all superfluous formality.

Truth is born with us, and we must do violence to nature to shake off our veracity.

There cannot be a greater treachery, than first to raise a confidence and then deceive it.

It is as great a point of wisdom to shun ignorance, as to discover knowledge.

Custom is the plague of wise men, and the idol of fools.

As to be perfectly just is an attribute of the divine nature to be so to the utmost of our abilities, is the glory of men.

Anger may glance into the breast of a wise man, but rests only on the bosom of a fool.

To cry is human: to forgive, divine.

We should take a prudent care for the future, but so as to enjoy the present. It is no part of wisdom, to be miserable to-day, because we may happen to be so to-morrow.

He that is truly polite knows how to contradict with respect, and to please without adulation; and is equally remote from an insinuating complaisance and a low familiarity.

THE END.



LONDON:  
PRINTED BY SPOTTISWOODE AND CO.  
NEW-STREET SQUARE.

# ELEMENTARY GRAMMATICAL WORKS.

## HAMEL'S FRENCH GRAMMAR and EXERCISES.

Entirely New Edition in One Volume. Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and arranged in conformity with the last edition of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and in conformity with the last edition of the French Grammar of the University of France. By N. LAMBERT. 12mo. price 5s. 6d. bound.

KEY, price 4s. bound.

*Extract from Preface.*—To a few of the leading improvements I beg here to direct the reader's attention. 1. The Grammar and Exercises, which, in the old editions, formed two separate volumes, have been incorporated into one; and, though containing a great deal of new and important information, the works will now be sold conjointly at less than the original price of the separate volumes. 2. The rules for Pronunciation have been greatly enlarged, and modified agreeably to the best and most recent Parisian authorities. 3. As the French, like the English nouns, have no change of termination to mark a variety of state in the object, the declensions, &c. have been abolished as unnecessary, and as not being recognised by the French Academy and the University of France. 4. The verbs have been thoroughly revised, increased, and arranged in four conjugations, in conformity with the Grammars of the University of France. 5. The table of the government of prepositions has been completely altered according to the rules of the French Academy. 6. New Exercises have been written, and the second person singular of verbs has been introduced—an arrangement which, it is hoped, will greatly lighten the labour of the pupil. 7. A new and complete alphabetical table of the genders—one of the greatest difficulties in the French language—has been substituted for that of Hamel; so that the pupil will now be enabled at once to see the rule by which the gender of hundreds of words, *with few*, or no exceptions, will be determined. Such are a few of the leading improvements which have been introduced into this volume; but the whole work has been subjected to a most careful and unsparring revision, and numerous emendations have been made, which the reader, on comparing this with former editions, will discern at a glance. In conclusion, I may state, that all these improvements and emendations have been recognised by the French Academy and the University of France, which, it must be remembered, exercise as much authority over the French language as the Parliament of England over the law of the British empire. It must not be said of any French teacher, as of the abbot of Chancer,—

—“*I rônche she spake ful favre and felisly,  
After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe,  
For I renne of Paris was to hire unknowe.*”

### II

A NEW UNIVERSAL FRENCH GRAMMAR: being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, greatly improved. 12mo. 1s. 4s. bound.

### III

CLEF; ou, Thèmes traduits d'après la Grammaire Comparée de Nicolas Hamel (*Édition princeps*). Nouvelle Edition. 12mo. price 3s. bound.

### IV

Les AVENTURES de TÉLÉMAQUE, FILS d'ULYSSE. Par Fénelon. Nouvelle Edition, avec la Signification des Mots les plus difficiles en Anglais au bas de chaque page: à laquelle on a ajouté un petit Dictionnaire Mythologique et Géographique. Le tout soigneusement revu et corrigé par M. VINCENT WANOS-TROCHÉ. 12mo. price 4s. 6d. bound.

London: LONGMAN, BROWN, and CO., Paternoster Row.

*Elementary Grammatical Works.*

**A NEW DICTIONARY in FRENCH and ENGLISH**  
and ENGLISH and FRENCH: combining the Dictionaries  
of ROYER and DRELETANVILLE. With various Additions, Cor-  
rections, and Improvements, by J. BOILEAU and A. PICQUOT.  
New Edition, revised and corrected by the 1<sup>st</sup> edition of the  
Dictionary of the French Academy. 8vo. price 1<sup>rs</sup>. bound.

**VII**  
**NUGENT'S POCKET DICTIONARY** of the FRENCH  
and ENGLISH LANGUAGES: in Two Parts. 1. French  
and English; 2. English and French. Containing the follow-  
ing Additions and Improvements: 1. New Words in General  
Use in each Language. 2. Examples and Phrases, to facilitate  
the reading of Modern Writers, but especially composing in  
French. 3. Directions as to the Choice to be made of the  
French word best adapted to express the idea of the writer or  
speaker. 4. Prepositions annexed to the French Verbs and  
Adjectives, showing what case they govern. New Edition  
carefully revised and corrected. By J. C. TARVER, French  
Master, Eton College. 18mo. price 4s. 6d. bound.

**VII**  
**NUGENT'S FRENCH-ENGLISH and ENGLISH,**  
**FRENCH DICTIONARY.** Edited by J. OUISSEAU, M.A.  
New Edition, printed in large type. Square 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound

**VIII**  
**RABENHORST'S POCKET DICTIONARY** of the  
GERMAN and ENGLISH and ENGLISH and GERMAN  
LANGUAGES. By G. H. NOEHDEN, LL.D. Ph.D. New  
Edition, materially improved by D. BOILEAU. Square 12mo  
price 5s. 6d. bound.

\* This New Edition of Dr. Rabenhorst's standard Dictionary has been carefully  
revised; and, having been reduced in price to 5s. 6d. it still forms the cheapest, the  
most complete, and the most portable German and English Dictionary.

**ix**  
**A GRAMMAR of the GERMAN LANGUAGE.** By  
GEORGE H. NOEHDEN, Ph.D., &c. New Edition, corrected  
and revised by the Rev. C. H. F. BIALLOBLOTZKY, Ph.D.  
Examiner in German to the University of London, &c. 12mo  
price 7s. 6d. bound.

**x**  
**EXERCISES for WRITING GERMAN,** according to the  
Rules of Grammar. By G. H. NOEHDEN, Ph.D., &c. Seventh  
Edition, corrected and revised by the Rev. C. H. F. BIALLO-  
BLTZKY, Ph.D., &c. 12mo. price 6s. boards.

**xi**  
**A KEY to Dr. NOEHDEN'S EXERCISES for WRITING**  
**GERMAN.** By J. R. SCHULTZ. New Edition, corrected and  
improved, with Explanatory Notes. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. boards

London: LONGMAN, BROWN, and CO., F.ternoster Row.





